

https://t.me/to_explain1



GUIDE

الصف الثالث الثانوى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

English

By a group of supervisors

الجدید المنهج

تطبيق
المعاصر التفاعلى



FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE



3rd
SEC.
2026
FIRST TERM



GUIDE

English

By a group of supervisors



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

www.gpseducation.com

☎ 15014



3rd SEC.

FIRST TERM

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا
صَدَقَ اللَّهُ الْعَظِيمَ

بطاقة فهرسة

فهرسة أثناء النشر إعداد الهيئة العامة
لدار الكتب والوثائق القومية

El Moasser Guide based on English &

The Count of Monte Cristo

By A Group of Supervisors

Cairo : GPS for Printing, Publishing and Distribution,

2025 - 2026

2 Vols. ; 28 cm.

For 3rd sec. First term

I.S.B.N : 978 - 977- 970 - 158 - 5

1. English language - study and teaching (Secondary)

2. Education, Secondary

420.7

رقم الإيداع : ١١٤٠٩ / ٢٠٢٥

تطبيق GPS التفاعلي

التطبيق التفاعلي من سلسلة كتب ...

الامتحان المعاصر



كيفية الاستخدام: ١. نزل التطبيق. ٢. أنشئ حسابك. ٣. أدخل الكود الموجود على ظهر الغلاف.



استمتع
بجميع مزايا
التطبيق
لجميع المواد الدراسية

تصنيف بلوم للمستويات المعرفية



ملاحظة: تم تصنيف الأسئلة بداخل كل تمرين طبقاً لمستويات هرم بلوم والإشارة لها كالتالي:

● تذكر ● فهم ● تطبيق ● حل مشكلات (تحليل أو تقويم أو ابتكار)

دليل الحاسب



عرض جديد للمفردات اللغوية يشتمل على المفردات اللغوية الأساسية والمفردات اللغوية الواردة في كتاب الطالب والتعريفات والتعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر والملاحظات اللغوية.

2 Exercise On Vocabulary

تدريبات على المفردات اللغوية.

Mini Test Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We need to move from animals for meat and milk.
 - a. raise
 - b. call
 - c. use
 - d. arrive
- If any problem,
 - a. discuss
 - b. discuss
 - c. discuss
 - d. discuss
- The speech has great interest among the audience.
 - a. interest
 - b. interest
 - c. interest
 - d. interest
- After finishing the project, he's moved to the new task.
 - a. move
 - b. move
 - c. move
 - d. move
- My cousin plans to move to a new apartment next week near his workplace.
 - a. move
 - b. move
 - c. move
 - d. move
- It took years of hard work before Mrs. Nida finally felt in her career.
 - a. move
 - b. move
 - c. move
 - d. move
- The bottle was completely with cold water.
 - a. move
 - b. move
 - c. move
 - d. move
- Care Stadium was of late by the time the match started.
 - a. move
 - b. move
 - c. move
 - d. move

READING & LISTENING

1. Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 13

A Day in the Life of a Hospital Nurse

Every morning, Nurse Sarah kicks off "her day with a strong cup of coffee before her 12-hour shift begins. She is always preparing herself mentally for the challenges ahead.

As soon as she arrives, she checks patients' charts and reviews updates from the night shift. The hospital is **bursting** with activity - doctors **rushing** to see patients, and patients waiting.

Sarah's first task is **administering** "medication" to her patients. Some have been waiting anxiously, while others are feeling dizzy.

She has cared for many patients over the years, but each day brings new surprises. One elderly patient, Mr. Barry, has been **recovering** from "surgery" and needs extra attention. Sarah makes sure he is comfortable before **moving** on.

Unit One Inside the World of Care 31

PAST TWO 3 • Tired Hands, Caring Hearts

10 pages 18 & 19

I LISTENING

on Lesson 3 SB page 18

Doctors and nurses work hard every single day to care for patients. Their job is never easy. They spend long hours in hospitals, and they often miss meals or sleep. Many doctors visit patients, write reports, and make quick decisions "that can save lives. Nurses give medicine, check charts, and comfort patients. They know their work is important, but it is also very tiring. Hospitals have become really busy recently. Over the years, doctors have faced many challenges, and they have learned how to stay strong.

Right now, many doctors are missing patients in crowded clinics "while others are performing operations. "Nurses are walking from one room to another, answering questions and giving support. They are always on their feet, and they rarely rest during their shifts. Sometimes they feel exhausted, but they continue because patients depend on them. In fact, they have been working long shifts recently, and they have treated hundreds of patients this week alone.

Doctors and nurses also suffer emotionally. "They see people in pain "and they sometimes lose patients even after trying their best. This makes them sad, but they still smile and encourage families. They know their sacrifices "bring hope and healing. For years, they have been showing true dedication "and compassion "and their efforts have inspired many young people to choose medicine as a career.

II LANGUAGE

1. Present Perfect Simple / Active and Passive

1. Active

I	have / has	done
You	have / have	done
We	have / have	done
They	have / have	done

2. Passive

Object	have / has	been
A film	has been	written (by me)
Some CDs	have been	bought (by Omar)

Unit One Inside the World of Care 19

3 Reading - Listening

عرض شامل
لـ (Listening - Reading) مع التنويه عن المفردات
اللغوية وترجمتها على جانب الجدول.

4 Lesson 3

شرح مفصل للقواعد اللغوية مع تدريبات
تطبيقية على كل جزئية.

SKILLS

WRITING SKILL: HOW TO WRITE A BLOG POST

What is a blog post?

A blog post is an article or a piece of writing published on a blog (an online journal or website). Blog posts are usually:

- Informal or semi-formal:** Like talking to a friend, but maybe a bit more organized.
- Engaging:** They want to catch the reader's attention.
- About a specific topic:** They share information, opinions, or personal experiences.
- Not too long:** Easy to read online.

Steps to write a blog post

1. Choose Your Topic (Headline)

Purpose: To make people want to click and read!

2. Introduction

Purpose: To introduce your topic and hook the reader.

3. Main Body

Purpose: To develop your ideas, provide details, and explain your point.

Paragraph 1 (First): One of the best parts of my trip was the food. I tried soups, rice, and lentils. The rice was especially delicious because...

Paragraph 2 (Second): Apart from food, I was fascinated by the traditional culture. I visited ancient temples and saw a real ceremony.

Unit One Inside the World of Care 32

General Exercises on Unit 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Reverend means giving a sense of achievement or satisfaction.
 - a. Reverend
 - b. Reverend
 - c. Reverend
 - d. Reverend
- The lecture began to
 - a. complete
 - b. complete
 - c. complete
 - d. complete
- The teacher had to
 - a. attention
 - b. attention
 - c. attention
 - d. attention
- Malik had a rewarding day helping others. The word "rewarding" here is an adjective of
 - a. satisfying
 - b. satisfying
 - c. satisfying
 - d. satisfying
- The new manager will take
 - a. off
 - b. off
 - c. off
 - d. off
- The athlete felt hard and
 - a. attached
 - b. attached
 - c. attached
 - d. attached
- "It is to "surrender" as "surrender" is to "lead".
 - a. Hums
 - b. Hums
 - c. Hums
 - d. Hums
- The boy's mother rushed
 - a. on
 - b. on
 - c. on
 - d. on
- Hadi has read two chapters of "A Tale of Two Cities" since the
 - a. came
 - b. came
 - c. came
 - d. came
- He has
 - a. having
 - b. having
 - c. having
 - d. having
- It's a long time
 - a. since
 - b. since
 - c. since
 - d. since
- Once she has got her visa, she
 - a. booked her plus ticket
 - b. booked her plus ticket
 - c. booked her plus ticket
 - d. booked her plus ticket
- As soon as he finishes the report, he
 - a. submitted it to the manager
 - b. submitted it to the manager
 - c. submitted it to the manager
 - d. submitted it to the manager
- Which of the following is structurally correct?
 - a. I love her since five years
 - b. I love her since five years
 - c. I love her since five years
 - d. I love her since five years
- He has had his car for a decade. This means he
 - a. bought
 - b. bought
 - c. bought
 - d. bought
- They have just eaten lunch. This means
 - a. they are about to eat lunch
 - b. they are about to eat lunch
 - c. they are about to eat lunch
 - d. they are about to eat lunch
- They finished eating lunch a long time ago
 - a. they finished eating lunch a long time ago
 - b. they finished eating lunch a long time ago
 - c. they finished eating lunch a long time ago
 - d. they finished eating lunch a long time ago
- They will not launch soon
 - a. they will not launch soon
 - b. they will not launch soon
 - c. they will not launch soon
 - d. they will not launch soon

Unit One Inside the World of Care 33

5 Skills

عرض جديد للمهارات اللغوية.

6 General Exercises on Unit

تدريبات عامة على كل وحدة

Now

enjoy learning English



يمكنك تعلم نطق الكلمات من
خلال قاموس المعاصر الناطق.

الآن

لوعايز

تتعلم نطق الكلمات صح
يبقى قاموس المعاصر
الناطق.





BE READY

60

**Translation
items**

35

**Reading
comprehension**

35

**Writing Texts
samples**



قد يواجه بعض الطلاب صعوبات في الأسئلة الآتية



**Translation
items**

صعوبة التعامل مع
سؤال الترجمة

**Reading
comprehension**

صعوبة التعامل مع
سؤال قطعة الفهم

**Writing Texts
samples**

مهاراة الكتابة



مفتاح الحل

جزء خاص بسؤال

**Translation
items**

يمكن الطالب من التعامل
مع هذا السؤال
بعد كل درسين في الجزء
الثالث من الوحدة وجزء
المهارات في
بنك الأسئلة

جزء خاص بسؤال

**Reading
comprehension**

يمكن الطالب من التعامل
مع هذا السؤال
في الجزء الثالث من
الوحدة وجزء المهارات في
بنك الأسئلة

جزء خاص بسؤال

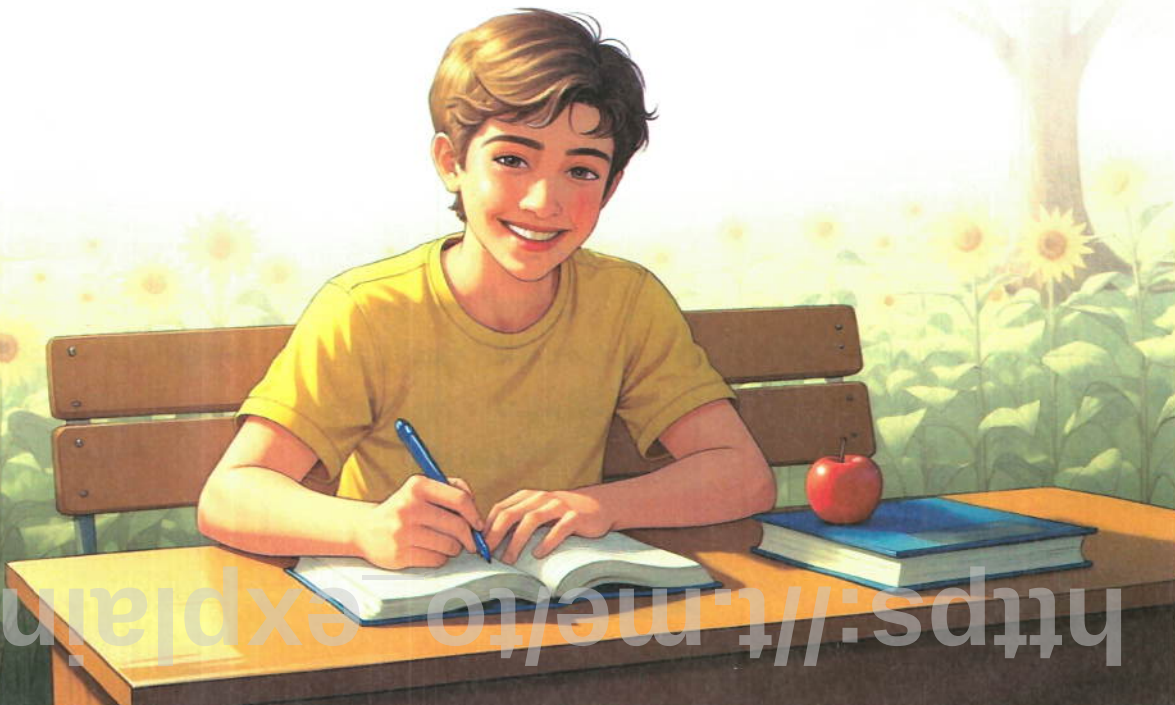
**Writing Texts
samples**

يمكن الطالب من التعامل
مع هذا السؤال
في الجزء الثالث من الوحدة
وجزء المهارات في
بنك الأسئلة

CONTENTS

UNIT	1	Inside the World of Care	9
UNIT	2	The Power of Machines	61
UNIT	3	Protect Nature, Protect Future	114
Review 1			167
UNIT	4	Marine Life	176
UNIT	5	From Muscles to Mindset	228
UNIT	6	Let's Hang Out !	283
Review 2			335
Writing Skill			343

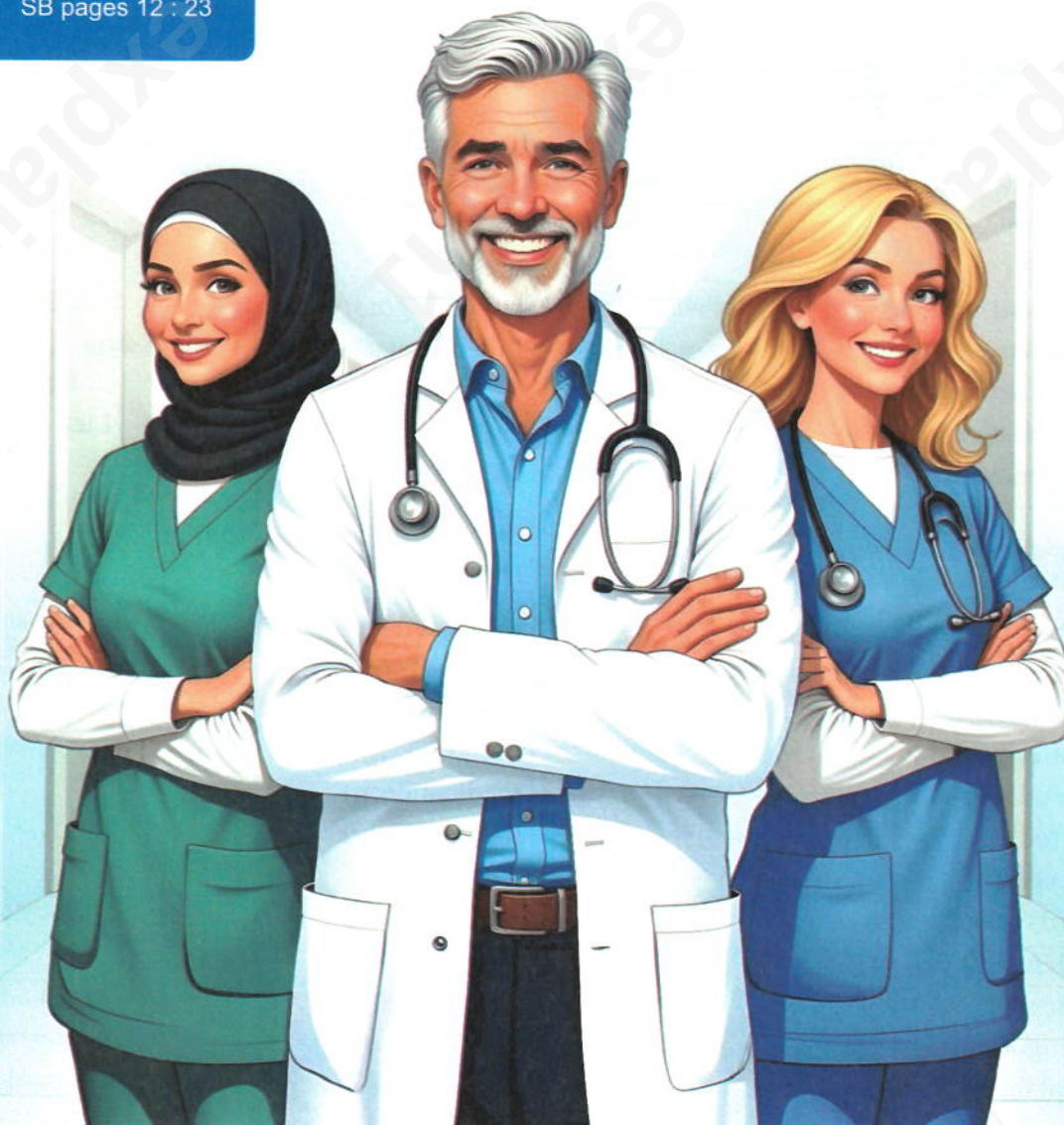
• علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب المدرسة



UNIT 1

SB pages 12 : 23

Inside the World of Care



Learning Outcomes

• Reading

- Read short texts, articles, and conversations about healthcare roles, emergencies, and personal experiences with illness
- Extract key details, understand idioms, and answer comprehension questions

• Language

- Use and differentiate between the Present Perfect Simple and Present Perfect Continuous

• Listening

- Understand and extract key information from an audio conversation, specifically an emergency call

• Writing

- Write a blog post about a personal experience, following a specified structure

• Speaking

- Understand the importance of interprofessional communication and teamwork in healthcare settings, recognizing how clear reporting contributes to patient safety and coordinated care



SB pages 13 : 17

PART ONE

Lessons

1 & 2

My Day
in the Hospital
Emergency Call

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

administer(ed) (v)	يُعطي دواء - يُدير - يُنظّم	grab(bed) (n - v)	شُدّة / جَذْبَة - يمسك بشدة
attention(n)	اهتمام - انتباه	heartbreaking(adj)	مؤلم - مُخزّن
chaos(n)	فوضى	paramedic(n)	مُسجّف
chest(n)	صدر	pulse(n)	النبض
collapse(d) (n - v)	انهيار - ينهار / يتهاوي	rewarding(adj)	مُرضي - مُجزي
consciousness(n)	الوعي - الإدراك	rollercoaster(n)	قطار ملاهي - موقف متأرجح - تقلبات شديدة
CPR (Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation)	الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	shift(n)	دوام (وردية عمل)
emergency(n)	حالة طوارئ	victim(n)	ضحية

2 Important Vocabulary

alarm (n)	منبه / جهاز إنذار	fulfilled (adj)	شاعر بالرضا - قانع
anxiously(adv)	بتوتر - بقلق	handle(d) (n - v)	مقبض - يتعامل مع
arise - arose - arisen (v)	يبدأ - ينشأ	heart attack	أزمة قلبية
assist(ed) (v)	يساعد - يُعين	lifeguard (n)	منقذ (السباحة)
beep(ed) (n - v)	يُصَفّر / يصدر صوت صغير	medication(n)	أدوية
buzz(ed) (n - v)	يصدر أزيزاً - ضجة أو نشاط	mentally(adv)	ذهنياً
calmness(n)	الهدوء - السكينة	patience(n)	الصبر
care(d) (n - v)	رعاية / عناية - يربي	pleasure(n)	سعادة / سرور
challenge(d) (n - v)	تحدّي - يتحدّى	procedure(n)	إجراء
chart(n)	جدول - كُشف	progress(ed) (n - v)	تقدّم / تحسّن - يتقدّم / يتحسن
colleague(n)	زميل عمل	regain(ed) (v)	يستعيد - يسترد
complain(ed) (v)	يشكو	relieve (d) (v)	يخفف (الألم)
compression(n)	ضغط	review(ed) (n - v)	يراجع - مراجعة
contaminated (adj)	ملوث / فاسد	rush(ed) (n - v)	يندفع / يُسرّع - استعجال
confusion(n)	جيرة / ارتباك	satisfaction(n)	الرضا / القناعة
disorder(n)	اضطراب / ارتباك	surgery(n)	الجراحة - عملية جراحية
document(ed) (v)	يُوثّق - يُسجّل	teamwork(n)	العمل الجماعي
elderly(adj)	كبير السن	typical(adj)	مُتألّف - نموذجي
emergency operator(n)	مشغل طوارئ	weakness(n)	ضعف
ensure(d) (v)	يضمن - يتأكد	witness (ed) (v)	يشهد
exhausted(adj)	مُرهق	wrist (n)	معصم اليد

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- The nurse had to the correct dosage of antibiotics before the patient's fever worsened.
a. grab b. arise c. administer d. regain
- Mr Ashraf asked Leen to pay close while he was demonstrating the main points.
a. attention b. consciousness c. calmness d. compression
- The movie about the war orphans was truly
a. heartbreaking b. rewarding c. exhausted d. typical
- Saving a patient's life can be one of the most experiences for a doctor or nurse.
a. heartbreaking b. rewarding c. exhausted d. typical
- During the night, the nurse checked on each patient twice.
a. chaos b. shift c. care d. procedure
- The team are now ready for the sudden in the ambulance.
a. emergency b. patience c. challenge d. progress
- Rodayna described her experience as an emotional of highs and lows.
a. weakness b. satisfaction c. CPR d. rollercoaster
- He is a of his bad health habits.
a. view b. value c. victim d. villain
- The emergency room was full of noise, movement, and complete
a. chaos b. shift c. care d. procedure
- When the alarm rang, Mariam had to her bag quickly and rush to the emergency room.
a. grab b. administer c. arise d. regain
- The paramedic checked the patient's to see if he was awake and aware of his surroundings.
a. attention b. consciousness c. calmness d. compression
- The athlete began to from dehydration and was carried away.
a. collapse b. assist c. handle d. care
- Mr Ayman performed on the unconscious man until help arrived.
a. USA b. ARE c. CPR d. HR
- The helped calm down the patient before reaching the hospital.
a. paramedic b. colleague c. victim d. farmer
- After severe pain in the, the man was taken to the hospital.
a. challenge b. pulse c. heart attack d. chest
- The doctor placed two fingers on the patient's wrist to check his
a. challenge b. pulse c. heart attack d. chest

2 Important vocabulary

- After several weeks of physical therapy, Uncle Omar began to strength in his injured arm.
a. grab b. administer c. arise d. regain

18. During emergencies, showing is essential to make clear and effective decisions.
a. carelessness b. consciousness c. calmness d. compression
19. Surgeon Alaa explained the step-by-step before the operation began.
a. chaos b. shift c. care d. procedure
20. It's important to get ready before handling high-stress situations.
a. anxiously b. mentally c. elderly d. friendly
21. The nurse handed the correct to the doctor during the procedure.
a. subject b. poison c. victim d. medication
22. This hospital provides excellent for elderly patients.
a. pulse b. victim c. emergency d. care
23. When the alarm went off, everyone had to to the emergency room.
a. ensure b. document c. rush d. review
24. The teacher praised Sama for her during exams.
a. emergency b. compression c. chance d. progress
25. The team were in when two alarms sounded together.
a. satisfaction b. surgery c. teamwork d. confusion
26. Unexpected complications may during any surgical operation, so doctors must always be prepared.
a. grab b. arise c. administer d. regain
27. To stop the bleeding, the paramedic applied direct to the wound using a clean cloth.
a. conservation b. consciousness c. conversation d. compression
28. Nurses must treat all patients with kindness and
a. chaos b. shift c. care d. procedure
29. This hospital offers special services for patients who may need extra assistance.
a. anxiously b. waiting c. elderly d. fulfilled
30. Please, that the patient receives the right dosage of medicine at the right time.
a. ensure b. document c. rush d. review
31. Treating burn victims is a difficult medical
a. emotion b. patience c. challenge d. progress
32. The surgeon recommended an immediate to remove the tumor مور.
a. disorder b. surgery c. teamwork d. confusion
33. The intercom loudly, which alerted the staff to check Room 3 immediately.
a. complained b. buzzed c. slept d. progressed
34. After a 12-hour shift at hospital, the nurse felt completely
a. heartbreaking b. rewarding c. exhausted d. typical
35. We waited for the doctor to return with the test results.
a. anxiously b. mentally c. totally d. typically
36. CPR was performed immediately to save the patient from a
a. challenge b. pulse c. heart attack d. chest
37. Nurse Aziza felt great seeing the patient recover.
a. weakness b. satisfaction c. dependence d. correction
38. Mrs Eman works with her to finish the task in time.
a. paramedics b. colleagues c. victims d. enemies

39. Doctors must know how to pressure in life-threatening cases.
a. collapse b. assist c. handle d. care
40. Doctor Mustafa the patient's charts before beginning surgery.
a. ensured b. documented c. rushed d. reviewed
41. Nurse Sara monitored the patient's every hour.
a. emergency b. patience c. challenge d. progress
42. Cooperation is a key to successful during emergencies.
a. disorder b. surgery c. teamwork d. confusion
43. The machine loudly when the heart rate dropped.
a. complained b. grabbed c. beeped d. progressed
44. A/An day in an emergency room usually involves tens of patients and fast decisions.
a. heartbreaking b. rewarding c. exhausted d. typical
45. After years of helping students, Mr Mohammed finally felt in his career.
a. anxiously b. mentally c. elderly d. fulfilled
46. Working in the emergency is a daily for many medical staff.
a. challenge b. pulse c. heart attack d. chest
47. Uncle Omar felt sudden in his muscles and had to sit down immediately.
a. weakness b. satisfaction c. surgery d. challenge
48. Nurses surgeons by preparing the tools.
a. collapse b. assist c. handle d. care
49. Nurses must all treatments in the patient's file.
a. ensure b. document c. rush d. assist
50. Brain are often caused by a lack of chemical balance.
a. disorders b. surgeries c. teamwork d. confusion

3 A bit Tricky

51. The government announced a sudden policy that confused many departments.
a. administer b. attention c. shift d. collapse
52. The actor forgot his lines when the director called for his full during rehearsal.
a. attention b. administer c. shift d. collapse
53. The stock market experienced a sharp after the global crisis.
a. attention b. shift c. administer d. collapse

II VOCABULARY STUDY

هذا الجزء هام جدًا سواء على مستوى تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية أو التميز في الامتحانات

تنويه

1 Definitions التعريفات

administer(ed) (v)	يُعطي دواء	to give medicine or treatment to someone
attention(n)	اهتمام - انتباه	care or notice given to someone or something
buzz	ضجة / حركة / نشاط	the sound of many people talking or machines working
chaos(n)	فوضى	a state of complete confusion and disorder

chest(n)	صدر	the front part of the body between the neck and the stomach
collapse(d) (v)	ينهار / يتهوي	fall down suddenly, usually because of illness or weakness
consciousness(n)	الوعي - الإدراك	the state of being awake and aware of what is happening around you
CPR (Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation)	الإسعاف القلبي الرئوي	an emergency procedure that uses chest compressions to help someone whose heart has stopped
emergency(n)	حالة طوارئ	a serious and unexpected situation that needs quick action
grab(bed) (v)	يمسك بشدة	take or hold something quickly and strongly
heartbreaking(adj)	مؤلم - مُخزّن	very sad or upsetting
paramedics(n)	مُسجفين	medical professionals who give emergency care and take people to hospital by ambulance
pulse(n)	النبض	the regular beating of the heart that you can feel on your wrist or neck
rewarding(adj)	مُرضي - مُجزّي	giving a feeling of satisfaction or pleasure because you helped someone or achieved something good
rollercoaster (n)	موقف متأرجح - تقلبات شديدة	a situation or experience with many ups and downs, often emotional
shift(n)	دوام (وردية عمل)	a set period of time that a person works (especially in hospitals, factories, etc.)
victim(n)	ضحية	a person who has been hurt, killed, or affected by something bad like an accident or crime

Mini Test 1 Definitions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- To is to suddenly fall down, often because of illness or exhaustion.
a. grab b. collapse c. administer d. beep
- A/An is the front part of the human body between the neck and the stomach.
a. chest b. consciousness c. emergency d. paramedic
- is a state of total confusion and lack of order.
a. Attention b. Chaos c. CPR d. Pulse
- The act of focusing or carefully listening or watching is known as
a. attention b. chaos c. CPR d. pulse
- A/An is a trained medical professional who provides emergency care outside the hospital.
a. oculist b. engineer c. psychologist d. paramedic
- To is to give medicine or treatment to someone.
a. grab b. collapse c. administer d. beep

7. is the state of being awake and aware of your surroundings.
 a. Chest b. Consciousness c. Emergency d. Paramedic
8. A life-saving technique involving chest compressions and rescue breathing is called
 a. attention b. chaos c. CPR d. pulse
9. To is to take or hold something quickly, especially with your hands.
 a. grab b. collapse c. administer d. beep
10. means causing deep emotional pain or sadness.
 a. Rewarding b. Heartbreaking
 c. Cardiopulmonary d. Emergent
11. is a serious and sudden situation requiring immediate attention.
 a. Kick off b. Crime c. Emergency d. Support
12. To is to make a short high sound, often from a machine or device.
 a. grab b. collapse c. administer d. beep
13. is a regular beat of the heart felt through the skin.
 a. Attention b. Dance c. Glance d. Pulse

2 Derivatives المشتقات

attention		
attention (n)	انتباه	Pay attention to the instructions.
attentive (adj)	مُنْتَبِه / مُنْتَبِهَة	Be attentive to the instructions.
inattentive (adj)	غير مُنْتَبِه / مُهْمِل	Don't be inattentive to the instructions.
consciousness		
conscious (adj)	واعٍ	- She was not conscious after the accident.
unconscious (adj)	فاقد الوعي	- She was unconscious after the accident.
consciousness (n)	الوعي/ الإدراك	- She lost consciousness after the accident.
emergency		
emergency (n)	حالة طارئة	- Be ready to any emergency .
emergent (adj)	ناشئ / جديد	- The doctor studied the emergent symptoms of the disease.
grab		
grab (v)	يمسك بسرعة / يخطف	- Start with a sentence that grabs the readers' attention.
grabbing (adj)	جذاب	- The newspaper has grabbing headline today.
grabber (n)	شيء جاذب - خاطف للانتباه والاهتمام	- The headline was a real attention grabber .
reward		
reward (v)	يكافئ	- He was rewarded for his honesty.

reward (n)	مكافأة	- He received a reward for his honesty.
rewarding (adj)	مُجْزٍ / مُرضٍ	- Volunteering is a rewarding experience.
victim		
victim (n)	الضحية	- The victim was taken to the emergency room.
victimize (v)	يخدع / يلحق الأذى	- The unfair law victimized many people.
victimized (adj)	تم اضطهاده / تعرض للظلم	- He felt victimized by the unfair treatment.
victimization (n)	اضطهاد / تعرض للظلم	- Bullying is a form of victimization .

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Please, pay due to the safety procedures before you begin.
a. attentively b. attention c. attentive d. inattentive
- The staff remained calm during the
a. emergence b. emergently c. emergency d. emergent
- My grandma lost after falling and hitting her head.
a. conscious b. unconscious c. consciously d. consciousness
- That opening sentence was a real attention
a. grab b. grabbed c. grabber d. grabs
- Mr Rashedy wanted to students' attention via brainstorming.
a. grab b. grabbing c. grabber d. grabbed
- The athlete received a for helping the injured opponent.
a. rewarding b. reward c. rewarded d. rewards

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

administer	medication	يعطي الدواء	make	a good nurse	يساهم في إعداد ممرضة جيدة
check	pulse	يتحقق من النبض		a difference	يُخِذُت فرقا
do / start / perform	CPR	يقوم بالإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	reflect	on the day	يتأمل اليوم/يفكر فيما حدث
document	progress	يوثق التقدم أو تطور الحالة	regain	consciousness	يسترد الوعي
kick off	the day	يبدأ اليوم	review	updates	يراجع المستجدات
take	medication	يتناول الدواء			

Mini Test 3 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- A nurse has to medication to the patients carefully.
a. make b. reflect c. administer d. document
- Joury her day with a healthy breakfast.
a. kicks off b. regains c. checks d. does
- After the accident, I had to CPR to an injured child.
a. make b. administer c. do d. reflect

4. Athletes should always their pulse after violent exercise.
a. make b. check c. take d. document
5. Patience, kindness and skills help a great nurse over time.
a. reflect b. do c. make d. kick
6. At the end of the day, Rodayna likes to on what she has gone through during the day.
a. reflect b. regain c. start d. check

4 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
administer (v)	يُعطي دواء - يُنظّم
attention(n)	اهتمام - انتباه
chaos(n)	فوضى
collapse (v)	ينهار / يتهاوي
consciousness(n)	الوعي - الإدراك
emergency(n)	(حالة) طوارئ
grab (v)	يمسك بشدة / يجذب بشدة
heartbreaking(adj)	مؤلم - مُحزن
pulse(n)	النبض
rewarding(adj)	مُرضي - مُجزي
shift(n)	دوام (وردية عمل)
victim(n)	ضحية
	give, apply, provide, dispense
	focus, concentration, notice
	disorder, confusion, turmoil
	fall down, faint, pass out
	awareness, alertness, wakefulness, responsiveness
	crisis, urgent situation, catastrophe
	seize, snatch, clutch
	distressing, tragic, upsetting, painful
	heartbeat, beat, rhythm
	fulfilling, satisfying, worthwhile
	work period, duty time, rotation, schedule
	casualty, prey

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
attention(n)	تشتت - إهمال
chaos(n)	نظام - انسجام / تناغم
collapse (v)	ينهض - يتعافى
consciousness(n)	الإغماء - الغيبوبة
emergency(n)	الوضع العادي
grab (v)	يترك - يفلت
heartbreaking(adj)	مُريح - سار
rewarding(adj)	مُحبط - عقيم
	distraction, inattention, disregard
	order, organization, harmony
	rise, stand, recover
	unconsciousness, coma, insensibility
	routine, normality, calmness
	release, let go, drop
	uplifting, heartwarming, comforting
	unrewarding, disappointing, fruitless

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

- Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :
1. "Sama paid close attention to what I said." The word 'attention' here is a synonym of
a. ignorance b. focus c. silence
d. mess e. concentration
2. "The emergency room is no place for chaos." The word 'chaos' here is an antonym of
a. harmony b. panic c. order
d. storm e. confusion

3. "Omar collapsed on the floor after running." The word 'collapsed' here is an antonym of
 a. fainted b. stumbled c. recovered
 d. rose e. fell
4. "The patient finally regained consciousness." The word 'consciousness' here is a synonym of
 a. sleep b. awareness c. alertness
 d. dizziness e. blackout
5. "They acted fast in the emergency." The word 'emergency' here is an antonym of
 a. normalcy b. disaster c. routine
 d. urgency e. danger
6. "Ahmed quickly grabbed the falling glass." The word 'grabbed' here is a synonym of
 a. threw b. seized c. clutched
 d. ignored e. let go

Idiom Tip

An idiom is a fixed, multi-word expression whose meaning can't be deduced from the literal meanings of its individual words.

التعبير الإصطلاحي (Idiom) هو تعبير ثابت مكون من أكثر من كلمة، لا يمكن استنتاج معناه من المعاني الحرفية لكلماته منفردة.

e.g.: "spring into action" → it means to suddenly begin working or responding quickly
 معناه أن تبدأ العمل أو الاستجابة بسرعة.

6 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a feeling of satisfaction	شعور بالرضا	handle an emergency	يتعامل مع حالة طوارئ
aware of	على علم بـ	look like	يُشبه - يبدو مثل
buzz with activity	يضج بالنشاط	press gently	يضغط بلطف
critical condition	موقف حرج	remain calm	يبقى هادئاً
everything runs smoothly	تسير الأمور على ما يرام	spring into action	ينطلق للعمل
feel exhausted but fulfilled	يشعر بالإرهاق ولكنه راضٍ	start first aid	يبدأ بعمل إسعافات أولية
a 12-hour shift	وردية لمدة 12 ساعة	Teamwork makes the dream work.	العمل الجماعي يصنع النجاح (مثل مشهور)
ups and downs	النجاحات والإخفاقات	trade it for	يستبدل / يقايض ... بـ
run smoothly	يعمل بشكل جيد	within minutes	في خلال دقائق

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

buzz with	يُعبّج بـ - ملي بـ	kicks off	يبدأ - ينطلق
cared for	يرعى - يهتم بـ	move on	ينتقل لعمل آخر
complain of/about	يشكو من	recover from	يتعافى من
fall down	يسقط أرضاً	reflects on	يتأمل - يُمعن التفكير في
focus on	يركّز على	rely on	يعتمد على

Mini Test 5 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- After helping all her patients, Mariam felt exhausted but
a. upset b. fulfilled c. dizzy d. sleepy
- When the accident happened, the hospital staff had to immediately.
a. wait b. spring into action c. fall back d. relax
- Mariam always says, "....." as she values cooperation.
a. Patience is power b. Be calm and carry on
c. Teamwork makes the dream work d. Practice makes perfect
- The emergency room buzzes activity during the midday shift.
a. at b. on c. with d. in
- The nurse cared the injured man until the doctor arrived.
a. to b. under c. for d. across
- Several patients complained severe headaches after taking the medication.
a. in b. of c. at d. over
- He slipped on the wet floor and fell instantly.
a. under b. down c. above d. through
- After losing the final match, the team decided to move and focus on the future events.
a. off b. up c. on d. in
- The meeting usually kicks at exactly 8 p.m.
a. out b. off c. down d. over
- Before making a decision, I always reflect past experience.
a. in b. on c. at d. from
- In difficult times, true friends are the ones you can rely for support.
a. from b. at c. on d. up

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

kick

• kick - kicked - kicked (v)

- In football, players **kick** the ball.

يركل (يضرب بالقدم)

• kick off (phr. verb) = start/begin

- When does the school year **kick off**?

يبدأ - يشرع في

- I **kicked off** the meeting with a short speech.

move

• move - moved (v)

- He said goodbye and **moved** out.

- I couldn't **move** the heavy box alone.

يتحرك - يُحرّك

• move in (phr.)

- The new flat is ready. We will **move in** soon.

ينتقل لمنزل أو مقر جديد (بدون مفعول)

• move into (phr.)

- The new flat is ready. We will **move into** it soon.

ينتقل لمنزل أو مقر جديد + (مفعول)

• move away (phr.)

- Watch out! **Move away**. The dog is dangerous.

يتبعد / يعزل من مكان (بدون مفعول)

• move away from (phr.)

- Watch out! **Move away from** the dog. It is dangerous.

يتبعد عن + (مفعول)

• **move on (phr.)**

ينتقل لعمل/نشاط/موضوع/وضع جديد - يواصل (بدون مفعول)

- I had to finish the tasks in hand before I **move on**.

• **move on to (phr.)** ينتقل للقيام بـ ...

- I had to finish the tasks in hand before I **move on to** the new one.

rise – raise – arise – arouse

rise - rose - risen (v) (فعل لازم لا يأخذ مفعول)

• **rise** تشرق الشمس

- The sun **rises** at 6 a.m.

• **rise** يرتفع/يزداد

- Prices have **risen** lately.

• **rise** ينهض

- I **rose** from my chair to welcome my guests.

raise - raised - raised (v) (فعل متعدي يأخذ مفعول)

• **raise** يرفع

- Mr Hussein **raised** his arm. He wants to make a comment.

• **raise** يجمع (مال)

- This charity **raises** money for homeless children.

• **raise** يُربي (يرعى)

- Parents work hard to **raise** their children.

arise - arouse - arisen (v) (فعل لازم لا يأخذ مفعول)

• **arise = happen, occur, take place** ينشأ - يحدث

- Problems **arise** every now and then.

arouse - aroused - aroused (v) (فعل متعدي يأخذ مفعول)

• **arouse = cause a feeling, interest, reaction ...** يُثير - يُسبب (مشاعر)

- The way she talks **arouses** laughter.

spring

• **spring - sprang - sprung (v) = jump** يقفز

- Ahmed **sprang** out of bed and ran to the kitchen.

• **spring into action = start acting quickly** يتصرف بسرعة

- As the man was badly injured, the doctors **sprang** into action.

full – filled - fulfilled

• **full of (adj.) = filled with** ملئ بـ

- This young man is **full of** energy.

- This bottle is **filled with** tap water.

• **fulfilled (adj.) = feeling satisfied or rewarded** شاعر بالرضا أو القناعة

- After finishing the task, Sama was tired but **fulfilled**.

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- We need to more farm animals for meat and milk.
a. raise b. rise c. arise d. arouse
- If any problem, call me immediately.
a. raises b. arises c. arouses d. rises
- Her speech has great interest among the attendants.
a. risen b. arisen c. aroused d. raised
- After finishing the project, let's move to the next task.
a. in b. on c. into d. onto
- Mr Ayman plans to move a new apartment next week near his workplace.
a. on b. onto c. into d. up
- It took years of hard work before Mrs Noha finally felt in her career.
a. full b. filled c. fulfilled d. failed
- The bottle was completely with cold water.
a. full b. failed c. filled d. fulfilled
- Cairo Stadium was of fans by the time the match started.
a. filled b. failed c. full d. fulfilled

III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Text

• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

A Day in the Life of a Hospital Nurse

Every morning, Nurse Sarah **kicks off**⁽¹⁾ her day with a strong cup of coffee before her 12-hour shift begins. She is always preparing herself mentally for the challenges ahead.

As soon as she arrives, she checks patients' charts and reviews updates from the night shift. The hospital is buzzing with activity – doctors **rushing**⁽²⁾, monitors beeping, and patients waiting.

Sarah's first task is **administering**⁽³⁾ **medication**⁽⁴⁾ to her patients. Some have been waiting anxiously, while others are resting quietly.

She has cared for many patients over the years, but each day brings new surprises. One elderly patient, Mr. Ramy, has been **recovering from**⁽⁵⁾ **surgery**⁽⁶⁾ and needs extra attention. Sarah makes sure he is comfortable before **moving on**⁽⁷⁾.



أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) يبدأ - ينطلق
- (2) يُسرع - يندفع
- (3) يُعطي دواء
- (4) أدوية
- (5) يتعافى من
- (6) جراحة - عملية جراحية
- (7) ينتقل إلى

By midday, **emergencies**⁽⁸⁾ **arise**⁽⁹⁾ – a car accident victim is rushed in, and the team **springs into action**⁽¹⁰⁾. Sarah **assists**⁽¹¹⁾ the doctors, **ensuring**⁽¹²⁾ everything runs smoothly. Despite the **chaos**⁽¹³⁾, she remains calm and **focuses on**⁽¹⁴⁾ her duties. “Teamwork makes the dream work,” she often says, **relying on**⁽¹⁵⁾ her **colleagues**⁽¹⁶⁾ for support.

By evening, Sarah has checked on all her patients and has **documented**⁽¹⁷⁾ their **progress**⁽¹⁸⁾. She feels exhausted but **fulfilled**⁽¹⁹⁾. As she heads home, she **reflects on**⁽²⁰⁾ the day – some moments were **heartbreaking**⁽²¹⁾, but many were **rewarding**⁽²²⁾.

Nursing is a never-ending **rollercoaster**⁽²³⁾, but Sarah wouldn't trade it for anything.

- (8) حالات الطوارئ
(9) يبدأ - ينشأ
(10) ينطلق للعمل
(11) يساعد - يُعين
(12) يضمن - يتأكد
(13) الفوضى
(14) يركز علي
(15) يعتمد علي
(16) زملاء عمل
(17) يُوثق - يُسجل
(18) تقدّم - تَحْضُن
(19) راضٍ - قانع
(20) يتأمل - يُمعِن التفكير في
(21) مؤلم - مُخِزِن
(22) مُرضي - مُجزي
(23) به تقلبات شديدة

2 Listening Text

• on Lesson 2 SB page 16

Emergency Call

Operator : 123, what's your emergency?

Caller : My neighbor has **collapsed**⁽¹⁾! He was walking downstairs when he suddenly **grabbed**⁽²⁾ his **chest**⁽³⁾ and fell down. I have never seen him like this before!

Operator : Have you checked his pulse ?

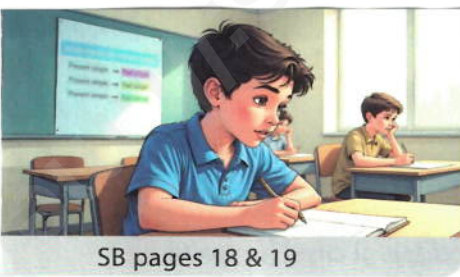
Caller : His **pulse**⁽⁴⁾ has been checked, but he hasn't been breathing, so **CPR**⁽⁵⁾ has been started. His wife said he **complained**⁽⁶⁾ about chest pain earlier, and his **medication**⁽⁷⁾ hadn't been taken.

Operator : Hold on...Help is being sent. Has he **regained**⁽⁸⁾ **consciousness**⁽⁹⁾?

Caller : No! By the time the ambulance has arrived, I'll try again.

Operator : Don't worry. The ambulance is on the way already and the **paramedics**⁽¹⁰⁾ will **take over**⁽¹¹⁾ the situation.

- (1) يسقط أرضاً - يغمي عليه
(2) يمسك بشدة
(3) صدر
(4) النبض
(5) الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي
(6) يشكو
(7) دواء
(8) يستعيد - يسترد
(9) الوعي - الإدراك
(10) مسعفين
(11) يتولى مسئولية



SB pages 18 & 19

PART TWO

Lesson

3

► Tired Hands, Caring Hearts

I LISTENING

• on Lesson 3 SB page 18

Doctors and nurses work hard every single day to care for patients. Their job is never easy. They spend long hours in hospitals, and they often miss meals or sleep. Many doctors visit patients, **write reports** ⁽¹⁾, and **make quick decisions** ⁽²⁾ that can save lives. Nurses give medicine, check charts, and **comfort patients** ⁽³⁾. They know their work is important, but it is also very tiring. Hospitals have become really busy recently. Over the years, doctors have faced many challenges, and they have learned how to stay strong.

Right now, many doctors are seeing patients in **crowded clinics** ⁽⁴⁾, while others are **performing operations** ⁽⁵⁾. Nurses are walking from one room to another, answering questions and giving support. They are always on their feet, and they rarely rest during their shifts. Sometimes they feel exhausted, but they continue because patients depend on them. In facts, they have been working long shifts recently, and they have treated hundreds of patients this week alone.

Doctors and nurses also **suffer emotionally** ⁽⁶⁾. They see people **in pain** ⁽⁷⁾, and they sometimes lose patients even after trying their best. This makes them sad, but they still smile and encourage families. They know their **sacrifices** ⁽⁸⁾ bring hope and **healing** ⁽⁹⁾. For years, they have been showing true **dedication** ⁽¹⁰⁾ and **compassion** ⁽¹¹⁾, and their efforts have inspired many young people to choose medicine as a career.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) يكتب تقارير
- (2) يتخذ قرارات سريعة
- (3) يهدئ المرضى
- (4) عيادات مكتظة
- (5) يجري عمليات جراحية
- (6) يعاني عاطفياً
- (7) في ألم / وجع
- (8) تضحيات
- (9) شفاء
- (10) تفاني / إخلاص
- (11) رحمة / تعاطف

II LANGUAGE

1

Present Perfect Simple : Active and Passive

المضارع التام البسيط : المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول

1 Active المبني للمعلوم

I
You
We
They

+ have ('ve) + p.p. ...

- I **have watched** a film.

He
She
It

+ has ('s) + p.p. ...

- Omar **has bought** some CDs.

2 Passive المبني للمجهول

Object المفعول + have / has + been + p.p. ...

- A film **has been watched** (by me).

- Some CDs **have been bought** (by Omar).

استخدامات المضارع التام البسيط Uses of the Present Perfect Simple

١ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف غير منتهية (بدأت في الماضي و لم تنتهي حتى الآن):

- I've studied English since 2013. (*I still study English*)

٢ التعبير عن مواقف حدثت في الماضي دون ذكر وقت حدوثها ، و هذا يشتمل علي:

أ. التعبير عن الخبرات و التجارب السابقة :

- She has worked in this school for years.
- I've never played squash.

ب. التعبير عما أنجزه أو حققه الفاعل (حتى الآن):

- My daughter has learned to speak English. (*She can speak English now*)

ج. أحداث متظرة أو متوقعة:

- The train hasn't arrived at the station yet.

٣ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف في الماضي و لها أثر على الحاضر (جملة الأثر تكون في المضارع):

- I've eaten a lot of food, so I feel very full.

٤ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار (يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية ممتدة مثل):

this week | this month | this morning | today | tonight | in the last year

- I have drunk two cups of coffee today. (*I can drink more cups of coffee today*)

٥ التعبير عن المستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية (يمكن استخدام المضارع البسيط لنفس الغرض):

- After my father has left (leaves) home, I'll ask mum to give me more money.

٦ لاحظ ما يلي جيداً:

have / has been to ذهب وعاد

have / has gone to ذهب ولم يعد بعد

have / has been in مكان for لمدة .. مدة زمنية ذهب ومكث في ... لمدة .. مدة زمنية

- I've been to Paris three times. I want to go there again.
- Ahmed has gone to the club. You can join him there now.

Mini Test 1

● Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I bought some flour.

a. have b. has

c. have been

d. has been

2. Some flour bought.

a. have b. has

c. have been

d. has been

3. She fed the babies.

a. have b. has

c. have been

d. has been

4. The babies fed.

a. have b. has

c. have been

d. has been

5. He physics for the last two hours.

a. has been studied b. was studied

c. has studied

d. was studying

٥ يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (since) إذا كان فاعل العبارة التي بعدها هو نفس الفاعل في العبارة التي قبلها:

- She has been very busy since she had her second baby.
= She has been very busy since having her second baby.

٦ تذكر أن (since) تستخدم أحيانًا بمعنى (because):

- He is tired since he has been working all day.

٧ لاحظ أن :

- يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية للسؤال عن وقت بداية الحدث :

- Since when + have / has + subj. فاعل + p.p. ?
- Since when have you lived in Aswan, Omar ? (عمر ما زال يعيش في أسوان)

- يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية للسؤال عن المدة التي استغرقتها الحدث :

- For how long + have / has + subj. فاعل + p.p. ?
= How long + have / has + subj. فاعل + p.p. for ?
- For how long have you lived in Aswan, Omar ? (عمر لا يزال يعيش في أسوان)
- How long have you lived in Aswan for, Omar ? (عمر لا يزال يعيش في أسوان)

- ولاحظ أن :

- How long ago + did + subj. فاعل + inf. ?
- How long ago did you live in Aswan, Omar ? (عمر لم يعد يعيش في أسوان)

2 The difference between the present perfect and the past simple

الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضي البسيط

المضارع التام Present Perfect	الماضي البسيط Past Simple	
الاهتمام بنتيجة الحدث. - They have lost their money. (أصبحوا مفلسين)	الاهتمام بالحدث نفسه (حدث ماضى ليس له علاقة بالحاضر). - They lost their money.	١
حدث من فترة قصيرة للغاية. - He has just arrived.	حدث تم من فترة معينة في الماضي. - He arrived two hours ago.	٢
حدث قد يتغير. - I haven't met Mohammed Salah. (محمد صلاح مازال حيًا و قد تقابله)	حدث يستحيل تغييره. - I didn't meet President Sadat. (لأن الرئيس السادات توفي)	٣
حدث تم في فترة لم تنتهي بعد. - It hasn't rained this morning. (لم ينتهي الصباح بعد وقد تمطر)	حدث تم في فترة وانتهت. - It didn't rain this morning. (انتهى الصباح ولم تمطر)	٤
حدث أو عادة مستمرة. - He has always been fit. (مستمر على حاله ولم يتغير)	حدث أو عادة غير مستمرة. - He was always fit. (هو كان ولكن الآن أصبح غير لائق بدنيًا)	٥
حدث وقع في زمن غير محدد في الماضي. - He has traveled to America.	حدث وقع في زمن محدد في الماضي. - He traveled to America yesterday.	٦

Mini Test 2

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He has arrived home. Let him relax for a few minutes before you talk to him.
a. just b. ever c. never d. yet
2. I have met some old friends
a. yet b. lately c. recently d. b & c
3. I haven't heard from her ages. I hope she is better.
a. at b. since c. for d. a & c
4. I haven't heard from her last April. I hope she is better.
a. at b. since c. for d. a & c
5. I have watched football matches as long as I can remember.
a. so b. such c. since d. for
6. I have watched football matches my childhood.
a. so b. such c. since d. for
7. We haven't met since we to our new villa.
a. moved b. move c. were moved d. has moved
8. when have you waited for her?
a. For b. Since c. Ago d. a & c
9. how long have you waited for her?
a. For b. Since c. Ago d. a & c
10. How long did you start waiting for her?
a. for b. since c. ago d. a & c

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

1 First Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن المرور بموقف أو تجربة لأول مرة:

- Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... before (now).
- Ahmed has **never** visited Paris **before (now)**.
- This is the first time + subj. + have/has + (ever) + p.p. ...
- **This is the first time** Ahmed **has (ever) visited** Paris.
- This is the first time + for + ضمير مفعول / فاعل + to + inf. ...
- **This is the first time** for Ahmed **to visit** Paris.

2 A different Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية لتمييز موقف أو تجربة عن مواقف سابقة :

- جملة تفضيل + subject + have/has + ever + p.p. ...
- This is **the cleverest** student **I have ever seen**.
- That is **the most delicious** food **we have ever eaten**.
- Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... such (a / an) + صفة + اسم.
- I have **never** seen **such a clever** student.
- We have **never** eaten **such delicious** food.

- Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... (a / an) + اسم + صفة + like
 - I have **never** seen **a clever student like this (one)**.
 - We have **never** eaten **delicious food like that**.
- Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... (a / an) + اسم + as + صفة + as +
 - I have **never** seen a student **as clever as this (one)**.
 - We have **never** eaten food **as delicious as that**.
- Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... (a / an) + اسم + صفة مقارنة + than
 - I have **never** seen a student **cleverer than this (one)**.
 - We have **never** eaten food **more delicious than that dish**.

3 Last Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن آخر حدوث للموقف أو التجربة:

- Subj. + haven't / hasn't + p.p. ... + since / for ...
 - Zamzam **hasn't gone out since Monday**.
- Subj. + last + تصريف ثان + in / on / at + تعبير زمني ماضي
 - Zamzam **last went shopping on Monday**.
- The last time + subj. + تصريف ثان + was + in / on / at + تعبير زمني ماضي
 - **The last time** Zamzam **went shopping was on Monday**.
- Subj. + haven't / hasn't + p.p. ... + since + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط
 - Ahmed **hasn't met** his grandmother **since he was in Assuit**.
- Subj. + last + تصريف ثان + when + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط
 = Ahmed **last met** his grandmother **when he was in Assuit**.

4 Starting point / duration

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن وقت بداية الحدث أو المدة التي استغرقتها:

- Subject + have / has + p.p. ... + for + period
 - Mohammed **has lived** in Aswan **for 21 years**.
- Subject + have / has + p.p. ... + since + a point in time
 - Mohammed **has lived** in Aswan **since 2005**.
- Subject + started / began + (to + inf. / gerund) + period + ago
 - Mohammed **started** to live (living) in Aswan **21 years ago / in 2004**.
- It is / has been + period + since + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط
 - **It is 21 years** since **Mohammed started to live in Aswan**.

Mini Test 3

● Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She has never travelled abroad

a. already

b. ago

c. now

d. before now

2. This is the first time I have seen a real kangaroo.
a. never b. ever c. just d. always
3. This is the first time for me a real kangaroo.
a. see b. have seen c. to see d. to seeing
4. Amira is student I have ever seen.
a. a clever b. clever c. cleverer d. the cleverest
5. I have never seen a student Amira.
a. as clever as b. cleverer than c. the cleverest d. a & b
6. I have never seen a clever student Amira.
a. like b. as c. such d. similar
7. She me at five.
a. has just called b. had just called c. last called d. never call
8. The last time she called me five.
a. at b. was at c. in d. was in
9. She hasn't called me I returned home.
a. when b. after c. before d. since
10. She last called me I returned home.
a. when b. while c. for d. since
11. She to work here two months ago.
a. has started b. hasn't started c. started d. starts
12. It is a week I last went to the club.
a. for b. since c. while d. after

3

The Present Perfect Continuous

المضارع التام المستمر

Form تكوينه

I / You / We / They + **have ('ve)** + **been** + **(inf. + ing)**

- I **have been waiting** for half an hour.

He/ She / It + **has ('s)** + **been** + **(inf. + ing)**

- Rokaya **has been studying** English for two years.

Uses of the present perfect continuous استخدامات المضارع التام المستمر

١ حدث بدأ في الماضي وامتد حتى الوقت الحاضر غالبا مع **since / for**, (لاحظ أن المضارع التام يمكن أن يُستخدم لنفس الغرض):

- Ayman and Ashraf **have been talking** for the last two hours.
- Radwa **hasn't been working** for that company for long.
- **Has** Mr Mohammed **been teaching** at this school for a long time?
- What **have** the children **been doing** for the last few minutes?

٢ في حال عدم وجود **(since / for)** يكون المضارع التام المستمر أكثر عمومية ليعني في التونة الأخيرة:

- Recently, he **has been feeling** unwell.
- Sara **has been watching** too much television lately.
- Hassan **has been feeling** a little worried about his job.
- Lisa **has not been doing** exercise.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. She to the market. She will be here soon.
a. has been b. has gone c. was going d. had been
2. She any meetings since she came here.
a. wasn't attending b. doesn't attend c. won't attend d. hasn't attended
3. In the last two hours, I my lessons.
a. had revised b. have revised c. revise d. was revised
4. So far, many schools in rural and urban areas.
a. will have been built b. are building c. have been built d. were built
5. Oh! I my mobile. What can I do?
a. broke b. had broken c. was broken d. have broken
6. He to the bank to draw some money. He will be back in half an hour.
a. has been b. has gone c. had been d. was going
7. Dr Tamer four patients so far this morning.
a. had seen b. has seen c. saw d. was seen
8. Nothing like this to her.
a. had happened b. has never happened c. has ever happened d. happened
9. I haven't travelled to my hometown by bus my early childhood.
a. when b. lately c. for d. since
10. This is the most difficult problem I challenged.
a. had ever been b. have ever c. had ever d. have ever been
11. Leen in all her assignments and is going to start at university next month.
a. has succeeded b. has been succeeding c. succeeds d. will be succeeding
12. Haytham broke his arm and has to stay in bed, so he watching a lot of programs recently!
a. is b. has been c. was d. will be
13. Cairo streets are muddy because it all day.
a. had rained b. had been raining c. has been raining d. will be raining
14. He is still doing the homework. He it for four hours now.
a. has done b. has been doing c. had been doing d. was doing
15. Scientists in China researching the side effects of COVID-19 for years; they are still doing this task.
a. had been b. have c. have been d. were
16. A long time has passed I saw him.
a. as long as b. because c. since d. until
17. Rania as a doctor for the last ten years.
a. has been working b. worked c. had worked d. is working
18. We our old friends for a year. They are too busy.
a. hadn't met b. have met c. haven't met d. haven't been met

2 Special Cases

19. Although he to France twice this year, he's going again next week.
a. goes b. has gone c. has been d. have gone
20. They each other for a long time.
a. have known b. have been knowing
c. had been knowing d. are knowing
21. A terrible accident place on the highway from Benha to Mansoura.
a. was taken b. has taken c. has been taken d. had taken
22. You needn't make a food delivery. I a good meal already.
a. was cooking b. have cooked c. was cooked d. had cooked
23. It's been four months since we our friend Ahmed in Dubai.
a. had visited b. visited c. was visited d. visit
24. My friend a health problem since he lived in a town surrounded by three factories.
a. has had b. had had c. had d. has been
25. Sorry for being late, Sir. Please, let me in; I stuck in heavy traffic.
a. have been b. have gone c. was been d. had been
26. I haven't met the boss It's my first time to meet him.
a. yet b. before c. already d. never
27. My uncle as a teacher for 15 years. Now, he is an accountant in a small company.
a. worked b. was working c. has worked d. works
28. I haven't seen Leen the last time we met in the café.
a. while b. when c. for d. since
29. He wanted to know I have been a member in this sports club.
a. since how long b. for how long c. for when d. how long ago
30. My car down, so I have to call a mechanic at once.
a. was broken b. has broken
c. had broken d. has been breaking
31. I the kitchen all morning and mum says it's still dirty.
a. have cleaned b. clean
c. am cleaning d. have been cleaning
32. What your mother for her birthday tomorrow?
a. have you been buying b. have you bought
c. you bought d. had you bought
33. I started my job, I have met important people from all over the world.
a. For b. Since c. Until d. When
34. The committee members' disagreement caused a serious problem.
a. has b. have c. was d. were

3 Check your understanding

35. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
- a. I haven't seen him for the last time we met in the club.
 - b. I haven't seen him since the last time we met in the club.
 - c. I haven't seen him since the last time we have met in the club.
 - d. I didn't see him since the last time we met in the club.
36. Which of the following is structurally correct?
- a. He is exhausted because he hadn't been working all day.
 - b. He was exhausted because he has been working all day.
 - c. He is exhausted because he has been working all day.
 - d. He is exhausted because he had worked all day.
37. Ali last caught fish when he was in Alexandria. This means that
- a. Ali didn't catch fish since he was in Alexandria.
 - b. Ali didn't catch fish when he was in Alexandria.
 - c. Ali hasn't caught fish since he was in Alexandria.
 - d. Ali has been catching fish since he returned from Alexandria.
38. My friend arrived at school a moment ago. This means that he
- a. has just arrived
 - b. just has arrived
 - c. hasn't arrived
 - d. will arrive
39. Which of the following is structurally correct?
- a. Have you already traveled to Luxor by plane?
 - b. Have you ever traveled to Luxor by plane?
 - c. I haven't already traveled to Luxor by plane.
 - d. I haven't traveled to Luxor by plane already.
40. Which of the following is structurally correct?
- a. Since years, I haven't played handball.
 - b. It's years since I have last played handball.
 - c. It's years since I played handball.
 - d. I had played handball years ago.
41. She has been to America. This means that she there.
- a. is still
 - b. is no longer
 - c. will be
 - d. won't be
42. Mai has never flown before this time. This means
- a. it is the first time for Mai to fly
 - b. Mai has flown once before this time
 - c. we do not know if Mai has flown before or not
 - d. Mai has flown before that time
43. Rodayna is the cleverest girl I have ever known. This means
- a. Rodayna is as clever as some girls I have known before
 - b. Rodayna is less clever than some girls I have known before
 - c. Rodayna is cleverer than some girls I have known before
 - d. Rodayna is cleverer than all girls I have known before
44. I have never eaten such a delicious meal. I mean that
- a. I am not enjoying the meal I am eating
 - b. I am enjoying the meal I am eating
 - c. the meal I am eating is not delicious
 - d. the meal I am eating is not as delicious as meals I have eaten before

45. I have never gone fishing. This means
 a. this is the first time for me to go fishing. b. I haven't ever gone fishing.
 c. I went fishing but I can't remember. d. I have ever gone fishing.
46. My wife hasn't gone out since Friday. This means that
 a. my wife last went out on Friday. b. my wife didn't go out on Friday.
 c. my wife has gone out on Friday. d. my wife hasn't gone out on Friday.
47. I have lived in Edfu since 1999. This means
 a. I lived in Edfu in 1999. b. I have been lived in Edfu since 1999.
 c. I started to live in Edfu in 1999. d. I left Edfu in 1999.

4

The difference between the present perfect simple and continuous

الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

١ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للدلالة على حدث تم وله أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت علي اكتمال أو تمام الحدث):

- He's **had** his meal, so he **is** full.
- Rokaya **has done** the housework, so she **can watch** TV now.

٢ يُستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للدلالة على حدث له أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت عن الحدث وليس تمامه):

- I've **been having** my meal so there **are** plates, spoons and cups all over the table.
- Rokaya **has been doing** the housework, so she **looks** very tired.

٣ يُستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتركيز على أثر الاستمرارية أو المدة الزمنية على الحدث:

- Wake up, Nada. You **have been sleeping** for 10 hours.

٤ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط فقط وليس المضارع التام المستمر عند ذكر العدد أو الكم، ومن الكلمات الدالة على ذلك:

مفعول جمع + two / three / many / a few / few / several / a lot of / lots of / all / plenty of ...

- He **has been drinking** three cups of tea this evening. ❌
- He **has drunk** three cups of tea this evening. ✔️
- He **has been drinking** at least a litre of tea this evening. ❌
- He **has drunk** at least a litre of tea this evening. ✔️
- I **have been meeting** many customers recently. ❌
- I **have met** many customers recently. ✔️

٥ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط فقط و ليس المضارع التام المستمر مع الأفعال اللحظية أو الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الإدراك والمشاعر و الحواس والتملك... الخ):

- A fast car **has been crashing** into a rock by the road. ❌
- A fast car **has crashed** into a rock by the road. ✔️
- We **have been owning** this flat for 15 years. ❌
- We **have owned** this flat for 15 years. ✔️
- She **has been knowing** these friends for a year. ❌
- She **has known** these friends for a year. ✔️

General Exercises On Language

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

- I Oliver Twist all day. It's very interesting, but I'm only on chapter 2.
a. have been reading b. had read c. had been reading d. have read
- Your clothes are really dirty. What ?
a. had you been doing b. had you done
c. have you been doing d. will you be doing
- My father travelled abroad; he prefers to spend his time sitting calmly in his village.
a. has ever b. has never c. has already d. had never
- I miss Leen so much; I her for ages!
a. won't see b. hadn't seen c. haven't been seeing d. haven't seen
- Since the beginning of the Russian-Ukrainian War, the world economy greatly affected.
a. has b. had been c. has been d. had
- doing your home assignment yet?
a. Have you finished b. Had you finished
c. Will you finish d. Are you finishing
- They the road to our street recently.
a. had paved b. have been paved
c. have been paving d. had been paving
- He hasn't been able to play tennis he sprained his ankle.
a. since b. for c. go d. when
- You can't meet Rokaya because she the science fair.
a. has been to b. has gone to c. has gone d. has been
- They in Benha since 2005. They are still living there.
a. had lived b. have lived c. have been living d. had been living
- My sister at university for three years. She comes home every weekend.
a. is b. has been c. is being d. had been
- Naguib Mahfouz's books into many languages.
a. have translated b. had translated
c. were translating d. have been translated
- Dr Barakat is funny. He has always to his clinic by scooter.
a. come b. been coming c. came d. comes
- Dr Barakat is funny. He always to his clinic by scooter.
a. come b. been coming c. came d. comes
- The forest fires for three weeks now. We need a lot of rain to put them out.
a. has burnt b. have been burning c. has been burning d. have burnt
- The forest fires for three weeks. Now, there are no trees.
a. has burnt b. have been burning c. has been burning d. have burnt
- She's three letters this afternoon.
a. written b. been writing c. wrote d. writes

18. They're angry. They for us for ages.
 a. had been waiting b. waited
 c. have waited d. have been waiting
19. They were angry. They for us for ages.
 a. had been waiting b. waited
 c. have waited d. have been waiting
20. He was in hospital because he an accident.
 a. has had b. has been having
 c. had had d. had been having
21. He's in hospital because he an accident.
 a. has had b. has been having
 c. had had d. had been having
22. I've this page four times and I still don't understand it all.
 a. reading b. not read c. been reading d. read
23. I'm dead tired. I for ten hours now.
 a. had worked b. 've been working
 c. 've worked d. had been working
24. I was dead tired. I for ten hours then.
 a. had worked b. 've been working
 c. 've worked d. had been working

2 Special Cases

25. Leen is still working; she doing that task yet.
 a. hadn't finished b. hasn't finished c. won't finish d. has finished
26. She a complete cleaning of the house. Everything is glowing.
 a. had done b. had been doing c. has been doing d. has done
27. Hurgada before? - Yes, I went there last summer.
 a. Are you visiting b. Have you visited
 c. Have you been visited d. Will you visit
28. You the hall; it looks lovely!
 a. were decorating b. will decorate c. have decorated d. had decorated
29. I the movie you recommended. I'm still watching it.
 a. have watched b. had watched
 c. have been watching d. had been watching
30. He three glasses of tea since he returned home.
 a. had drunk b. has drunk
 c. is drinking d. has been drinking
31. I reading the book you gave me, so we can go out now.
 a. had finished b. have finished
 c. have been finishing d. had been finishing
32. I my friend, Tony, since we were in Liverpool.
 a. have known b. had known
 c. are knowing d. have been knowing

49. He a match for two months now.

- a. hasn't been watching
- c. hadn't watched

- b. hadn't been watching
- d. hasn't watched

50. I last October.

- a. haven't seen my cousin since
- c. a & b

- b. didn't see my cousin for
- d. haven't been seeing my cousin since

4 Feedback Exercise

51. She dinner for one hour before her children returned home.

- a. had prepared
- c. has been preparing

- b. has prepared
- d. had been preparing

52. My aunt in Aswan for 15 years only. Now, she is living in Giza.

- a. has lived
- b. had lived
- c. has been living
- d. lived

Stop Here !

تدريب تلقائي على القواعد اللغوية

• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. Yasser started painting at 10 am. Now, it's 4 pm and he's still painting now. (for)
2. Rodayna last saw her cousin two weeks ago. (hasn't)
3. Ayman and his family began living here in 2010 and still live here. (since)
4. Ayman and his family began living here in 2010 and still live here. (for)
5. This is the first time Yasmeen has ever travelled on her own. (never)
6. Walid started reading that book an hour ago, and he is still reading it. (has been)
7. I am tired because I ran for an hour. (have been)
8. Aya started working here in 2002 and she still works here. (since)
9. Amira started studying at 7 am and hasn't stopped. (all morning)
10. Radwan is still trying to fix the car. He started two hours ago. (has been)
11. It's a long time since I last saw Rodayna. (haven't)
12. We finished lunch a moment ago. (just)
13. My father went to France once. (has)
14. Lujain is still working on the research she began last year. (yet)

A bit advanced

15. Radwan is still trying to fix the car. He started two hours ago. (It is)
16. I have known Mr Ashraf for a long time. (since)
17. Fatma is still doing homework. (hasn't)
18. The manager isn't in the office. (has)
19. I am still waiting for your reply. (haven't)
20. Zeina started looking for her keys ten minutes ago and she is still looking. (hasn't)



PART THREE

Lessons

4 & 5

► Beyond the White Coat
► My Blog Post

SB pages 20 : 23

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

clutch(ed) (v)	يمسك / يقبض علي	panicked (adj)	مصاب بالذعر
forehead(n)	جبهة / جبين	scope(n)	منظار
groan(ed) (n - v)	يتألم - يتألم	stitch(ed) (n - v)	غُرزة - يُخِيط / يُغَزِّز
moan(ed) (n - v)	أين - ين	worsen(ed) (v)	يتفاقم - يسوء

2 Important Vocabulary

appointment(n)	موعد	remind(ed) (v)	يُذَكِّر
beyond (adv, prep.)	خلف / وراء	retrieve(d) (v)	يسترجع / يستعيد
choking(n) (adj)	اختناق / مسبب للاختناق	serious(adj)	خطير - جاد
clinic(n)	عيادة طبية	severe (adj)	شديد / بالغ
cold(n)	زكام / دور برد	soaked(adj)	مُبلَّل
construction(n)	بناء	sore(adj)	ملتهب
cough(ed) (n - v)	كُحَّة / سعال - يكح	staff(n)	طاقم العاملين
ER = Emergency Room	غرفة الطوارئ	sterile(adj)	مُعَقَّم
experience(d) (n - v)	تجربة / موقف - يعايش	stethoscope(n)	سماعة الطبيب
flexible(adj)	مَرِن	swallow(ed) (v)	يبتلع
gratitude(n)	شكر / عرفان	symptoms(n)	أعراض
ghost(n)	شَيْح	tears (n)	دموع
hesitation(n)	التَرَدُّد	throat(n)	الْحَلْق (الزور)
miserable(adj)	بانس - شقي	toddler(n)	طفل صغير يتعلم المشي
nonstop (adj, adv)	بلا توقف	urgency (n)	حالة مستعجلة - ضرورة / إلحاح
pain (n)	ألم / وجع	viral(adj)	فيروس
pale(adj)	شاحب	weep - wept (v)	يبكي / يُذْرِف الدمع
prescription(n)	وصفة طبية - روصة	wipe(d) (n - v)	منشفة - يمسح
proudly (adv)	بفخر - بكبرياء	withdrawn (adj)	منعزل / انطوائي
relief(n)	ارتياح		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- The soldier was bleeding from a cut on his, just above his eyes.
a. throat b. forehead c. collarbone d. antiseptic
- The woman was when she lost her child on the busy beach.
a. pure b. panicked c. steady d. viral

3. He began to when the doctor touched his wound.
a. moan b. stitch c. bark d. retrieve
4. The technician prepared the before the examination.
a. appointment b. scope c. ghost d. hesitation
5. The man his injured arm to stop the bleeding.
a. experienced b. worsened c. clutched d. wept
6. Rodayna started to as the dentist started to take off the bad tooth.
a. groan b. swallow c. wipe d. remind
7. Emam broke his shortly after the opening match had started.
a. throat b. forehead c. collarbone d. antiseptic
8. The surgeon used a needle to the deep wound.
a. moan b. stitch c. bark d. retrieve

2 Important vocabulary

9. I felt pain in my after singing a lot in the wedding.
a. throat b. forehead c. collarbone d. antiseptic
10. The injured man looked as pale as a/an
a. scope b. appointment c. hesitation d. ghost
11. His health began to after he had ignored the doctor's advice.
a. worsen b. weep c. experience d. clutch
12. A surgeon must keep hands during an operation.
a. serious b. steady c. unresponsive d. polluted
13. The doctor covered the with a bandage.
a. pride b. cut c. prescription d. miracle
14. The doctor used a to examine my pulse and lungs.
a. symptoms b. toddler c. cough d. stethoscope
15. Sama had no umbrella, so she came home after the rain.
a. soaked b. sore c. believable d. nonstop
16. The of this hospital took more than five years.
a. cold b. relief c. construction d. scene
17. The nurse applied spray to the wound.
a. throat b. forehead c. collarbone d. antiseptic
18. The doctor used a special tool to the coin from the child's throat.
a. moan b. stitch c. bark d. retrieve
19. Malak started to when she heard the sad news.
a. worsen b. weep c. clutch d. experience
20. The wound should be cleaned with a/an solution.
a. serious b. steady c. sterile d. unresponsive
21. Mr Ashraf cheered when his team won the match.
a. proudly b. panickily c. totally d. meaningfully
22. A child finds it difficult to a pill.
a. groan b. swallow c. wipe d. remind
23. Fever and sore throat are common of flu.
a. coughs b. toddlers c. symptoms d. stethoscopes

24. As a result of coughing all day, my throat feels very
 a. miserable b. nonstop c. sore d. soaked
25. A good plan is and can be altered easily.
 a. pale b. flexible c. beyond d. swiftly
26. My mother caught a after leaving the window open.
 a. relief b. construction c. cold d. scene
27. Covid-19 is a/an infection.
 a. viral b. pure c. frantic d. unflappable
28. I booked a/an to see the dentist.
 a. appointment b. scope c. ghost d. hesitation
29. Getting sick while on holiday in Sharm was a terrible situation to
 a. weep b. clutch c. experience d. worsen
30. Wasting your time is a/an problem.
 a. serious b. steady c. sterile d. unresponsive
31. I asked the doctor not to include painkillers in the
 a. pride b. miracle c. prescription d. wound
32. I had to my brother to bring his keys. He has a poor memory.
 a. swallow b. groan c. remind d. wipe
33. It is not safe to let a go down the stairs on their own.
 a. stethoscope b. toddler c. cough d. symptom
34. Mariam felt for a week due to the flu.
 a. miserable b. flexible c. soaked d. nonstop
35. The woman was after hearing the bad news.
 a. proud b. flexible c. pale d. calm
36. I answered the investigators questions without
 a. appointment b. hesitation c. scope d. ghost
37. The child was and didn't even blink his eyes.
 a. steady b. unresponsive c. terrible d. sterile
38. I had a bad during the night.
 a. cough b. symptom c. toddler d. stethoscope
39. The hospital alarms rang throughout the emergency.
 a. soaked b. miserable c. sore d. nonstop
40. The situation is control. There's nothing I can do.
 a. pale b. beyond c. swiftly d. flexible
41. The mother felt great when her baby opened its eyes.
 a. relief b. scene c. construction d. cold

3 A bit Tricky

هذا الجزء يعرض أفكار أسئلة التمييز الخاصة بالطلبة الفائقين في الامتحان

تنويه

42. After surgery, the nurse carefully removed the one by one.
 a. wounds b. clutches c. stitches d. retrieves
43. The rescue dog was trained to lost items buried in mud.
 a. wound b. stitch c. retrieve d. clutch

II VOCABULARY STUDY

هذا الجزء هام جداً سواء على مستوى تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية أو التمييز في الامتحانات

تنويه

1 Definitions التعريفات

clutch (v)	يمسك/ يقبض علي	to hold something tightly, often because of fear, pain, or urgency
forehead(n)	جبهة/ جبين	the flat part of the face above the eyebrows
panicked(adj)	مدعور - مرتبك	acting quickly and wildly due to fear, worry, or panic
groan (v)	يتأوه	to make a deep sound of pain or discomfort
moan (v)	ين	to make a soft, low sound to express pain, sadness, or complaint
scope(n)	منظار - مدى	- a medical tool for looking inside the body; - range or extent
stitch (v)	يُخيط/ يُغرز	to close a wound using a needle and thread
worsen(ed) (v)	يتفاقم - يسوء	to become worse or make something more serious

Mini Test 1 Definitions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- To means to hold something tightly, especially in fear or pain.
a. clutch b. groan c. stitch d. worsen
- The is the flat bone located between your neck and shoulder.
a. collarbone b. forehead c. scope d. throat
- Someone who is is acting wildly with fear, anxiety, or panic.
a. miserable b. unresponsive c. panicked d. withdrawn
- To means to make a low, deep sound expressing pain or discomfort.
a. clutch b. groan c. stitch d. worsen
- The is the part of the face just above the eyebrows.
a. collarbone b. forehead c. scope d. throat
- To means to use a needle and thread to close a wound.
a. clutch b. groan c. stitch d. worsen
- A medical is a device used to look deep into the body.
a. collarbone b. forehead c. scope d. throat

2 Derivatives المشتقات

clutch		
clutch (v)	يُفبِك بقوة	- He clutched strongly at the rope, so he did not fall.
clutch (n)	قبضة	- His strong clutch at the rope stopped him from falling.

panicked	
panicked (adj) مذعور - مكروب	- He was panicked when he looked at the laboratory report.
panickily (adv) بهلع / بذعر	- He looked panickily at the laboratory report.
groan	
groan (v) يتأوه (دهشة)	- The fans groaned when the ball missed the goal.
groan (n) تأوه	- There was a groan from the fans when the ball missed the goal.
moan	
moan (v) يئن (حزنًا)	- The patient moaned all night because of the pain in her chest.
moan (n) أنين	- The moan of the patient made us feel sorry for him.
stitch	
stitch (v) يخط جرح	- The surgeon stitched the wound.
stitch (n) غُرزة (خياطة طبية)	- The wound needed three stitches .
worsen	
worse (comp. adj.) أسوأ	- Her health is now worse than before.
worsen (v) يتفاقم - يسوء	- Her health has worsened .
worsening (n - adj.) تدهور - التفاقم - متدهور	- She suffers from worsening health.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I tried to my bag as the bus jerked forward.
a. clutched b. clutching c. clutch d. a clutch
- The wound in your leg was deep and required several to close.
a. stitching b. stitch c. stitches d. stitched
- The baby began to when he dropped his toy.
a. moaned b. moaning c. moans d. moan
- A loud echoed through the hall after the power went out.
a. groans b. groan c. groany d. groaned
- Amir's condition began to after he ignored the symptoms.
a. worsened b. worsening c. worsens d. worsen

3 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

feel	miserable	يشعر بالتعاسة	rush in	a victim	يُدخل مصابًا بسرعة
give	a prescription	يقدم وصفة طبية	save	lives	ينقذ الأرواح
have	a sore throat	يعاني من التهاب في الحلق	see	a doctor	يذهب للطبيب
hide	tears	يخفي دموعه / حزنه	soak	to the skin	يصبح مبتل تمامًا
make	an appointment	يحجز موعدًا	take	X-rays	يقوم بعمل أشعة إكس
rain	cats and dogs	تُمطر بغزارة		temperature	يقيس درجة الحرارة

Mini Test 3 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The doctor asked the technician to the boy for X-rays.
a. save b. rush c. take d. give
- You should a doctor if the headache continues.
a. make b. bark c. see d. hide
- Paramedics had to the crash victim to save his life.
a. feel b. rush in c. give d. rain
- Walid got to the skin in the heavy rain.
a. bark b. save c. soaked d. make
- I'll an appointment to see my dentist.
a. rain b. make c. feel d. rush
- In order not to look weak, most men always their tears in front of others.
a. bark b. give c. hide d. take

4 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
clutch (v) يُمْسِك بقوة، يقبض بإحكام	grasp, grip, seize, hold tightly
panicked مُضطرب، في حالة ذعر	frantic, agitated, frenzied, anxious
groan (v) ينن، يتأوه	moan, sigh, grumble, cry
stitch (v) يُخيط - جرح	suture, sew, mend
worsen (v) يتدهور، يزداد سوءاً	deteriorate, decline, aggravate, intensify

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
clutch (v) يُمْسِك بقوة، يقبض بإحكام	release, let go, drop, free يُفَلِّت، يترك
panicked مُضطرب، في حالة ذعر	calm, relaxed, untroubled هادئ، مرتاح
groan (v) ينن، يتأوه	cheer, laugh, exclaim يهتف، يضحك، يفرح
moan (v) يلوخ، يتذمر	praise, celebrate, rejoice يمدح، يُشيد، يفرح
worsen (v) يتدهور، يزداد سوءاً	improve, heal, recover, strengthen يتحسن، يشفى، يتعافى

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

• Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "Joury began to clutch her mother's hand tightly." The word 'clutch' here is a synonym of
a. release b. grab c. drop
d. ignore e. seize
- "Ahmed gave a loud groan when he saw the amount of homework." The word 'groan' is an antonym of
a. praise b. cheer c. laugh
d. whisper e. sleep

3. What does moan mean in: "The patient began to moan softly in pain"?
- a. Praise b. Cry out c. Giggle
d. Sigh e. Applaud
4. "The nurse started to stitch the wound carefully." The word 'stitch' is a synonym of
- a. tear b. sew c. fasten
d. slice e. cut
5. "His condition began to worsen overnight." The word 'worsen' is an antonym of
- a. improve b. recover c. pain
d. drop e. damage

6 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

come to an end	ينتهي	saving lives	إنقاذ الأرواح
feel much better	يشعر بتحسن كبير	sore throat	التهاب في الحلق
pale as a ghost	شديد الشحوب	weep with relief	يبكي فرحاً
return to calm	يعود إلى هدوءه	soak to the skin	مغمور بالماء
running nose	سيلان الأنف	It rains cats and dogs	تمطر بغزارة
jump into action	يبادر بالفعل		

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

burst in (phr. verb)	يقتحم / يندفع	get over	يتعافى من المرض
check up on	يتحقق من - يراقب	hurry into	يسرع إلى داخل
come down with	يُصاب بـ (مرض)	rush in	يُدخل/يُدخل بسرعة

Mini Test 5 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The phrase "raining" means it's raining very heavily.
a. lightly b. gently c. cats and dogs d. sometimes
- The idiom "soaked" means to be completely wet.
a. with tea b. to the skin c. from feet d. up top
- The expression "burst" means to enter suddenly and with energy.
a. into b. behind c. up d. in
- The idiom "pale" describes someone who looks extremely scared or unwell.
a. like milk b. from sun c. as a ghost d. in color
- The paramedics rushed with the injured man on a stretcher.
a. out b. away c. in d. off
- Dr Islam was checking the patient's chart when the emergency call came in.
a. off b. over c. up on d. through

III READING

Reading Texts

on Lesson 4 SB page 20

Last night, paramedics rushed in with a man **injured**⁽¹⁾ in a **car crash**⁽²⁾. He had broken his leg before arrival, and his face was covered in blood. Nurses quickly took him for X-rays while Dr. Maha prepared to **stitch**⁽³⁾ a deep cut on his **forehead**⁽⁴⁾. "Teamwork saved him," said the emergency room **"ER" director**⁽⁵⁾ proudly.



Outside, it was **raining cats and dogs**⁽⁶⁾ as Dr. Basem ran into the hospital, **soaked to the skin**⁽⁷⁾. Inside, the emergency room was in full **chaos**⁽⁸⁾—patients **groaning**⁽⁹⁾, nurses hurrying, and machines beeping non-stop. In one corner, a teenager with a **broken arm**⁽¹⁰⁾ moaned quietly. A **construction worker**⁽¹¹⁾, pale as a ghost, clutched his bleeding hand, trying not to **cry out**⁽¹²⁾.

Nurse Noura, calm **under pressure**⁽¹³⁾, gave clear and confident instructions. "Prepare the **sterile equipment**⁽¹⁴⁾ and state its **condition**⁽¹⁵⁾ before use", she ordered.

Suddenly, the ER doors flew open. A **panicked**⁽¹⁶⁾ mother rushed in, holding her toddler. "He's not responding!", she shouted. The child had **swallowed**⁽¹⁷⁾ a coin. **Without hesitation**⁽¹⁸⁾, the team **jumped into action**⁽¹⁹⁾. Using a **flexible**⁽²⁰⁾ scope, they carefully removed the coin. Moments later, the child opened his eyes. The mother **wept with relief**⁽²¹⁾ and **gratitude**⁽²²⁾. Around her, staff members smiled—some hiding their own **tears**⁽²³⁾.

As the sun began to rise, calm slowly returned. Dr. Basem sat down, exhausted. Around him, the team cleaned up and checked medical charts. Another night **filled with fear**⁽²⁴⁾, **urgency**⁽²⁵⁾, and **life-saving teamwork**⁽²⁶⁾ had come to an end.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) مصاب
- (2) حادث تصادم
- (3) يخطط الجرح
- (4) جبهة / جبين
- (5) مدير غرفة الطوارئ
- (6) تمطر بغزارة
- (7) مغمور بالماء
- (8) فوضى
- (9) يئن - يتأوه
- (10) ذراع مكسور
- (11) عامل بناء
- (12) يصرخ
- (13) تحت ضغط
- (14) معدات معقمة
- (15) حالة / وضع
- (16) مذعور / مرتبك
- (17) يبتلع
- (18) بدون تردد
- (19) بدأ العمل بسرعة
- (20) مرن
- (21) بكى من الفرح
- (22) شكر / عرفان
- (23) دموع
- (24) ملئ بالخوف
- (25) حالة مستعجلة
- (26) فريق إنقاذ الحياة

My Unwelcome Visitor: A Recent Cold Experience

Hello everyone! I want to share something that happened to me recently. About two weeks ago, I started to feel a little tired. I also had a small **cough**⁽¹⁾.

I didn't think it was very **serious**⁽²⁾ at first.

But then, the **symptoms**⁽³⁾ got much worse⁽⁴⁾. My **throat**⁽⁵⁾ was very **sore**⁽⁶⁾, and my nose was running all the time. I also had a bad headache and felt very tired. It was difficult to sleep at night because of the cough. I felt really **miserable**⁽⁷⁾ and uncomfortable. After a few days, I decided I needed to see a doctor.

So, I called my clinic and made an **appointment**⁽⁸⁾. When I arrived, the waiting room was full of other people who also looked sick. After a short wait, the doctor called my name. He asked me many questions about my symptoms and how long I had felt bad. Then, he checked my throat, listened to my chest with a **stethoscope**⁽⁹⁾, and took my temperature. He said I had a severe **viral**⁽¹⁰⁾ **cold**⁽¹¹⁾.

The doctor gave me a **prescription**⁽¹²⁾ for some medicine to help with the symptoms. He also told me to rest a lot and drink many warm liquids like tea. I went home, took the medicine, and tried to sleep as much as possible. Slowly, after about three or four days, I started to feel much better.

Now, I am healthy again, and I feel very happy about it! This **experience**⁽¹³⁾ **reminded**⁽¹⁴⁾ me how important our health is. It's also good to know that doctors are there to help us when we need them. Have you ever had a very bad cold? How do you usually recover? Let me know in the comments!

- (1) كُحَّة / سعال
- (2) خطير
- (3) أعراض
- (4) يزداد سوء
- (5) الخلق (الزور)
- (6) ملتهب
- (7) بائس - شقي
- (8) موعد
- (9) سماعة الطبيب
- (10) فيروسي
- (11) زكام / دور برد
- (12) وصفة طبية - روصنة
- (13) تجربة / موقف
- (14) يذكر



احرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للف 3 الثانوي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



SKILLS

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية في الملحق

تنويه

WRITING SKILL: HOW TO WRITE A BLOG POST

• What is a blog post ?

ما هي المدونة؟

- A blog post is an article or a piece of writing published on a blog (an online journal or website). Blog posts are usually:

- تعتبر المدونة مقال أو قطعة مكتوبة تنشر على مدونة (مجلة أو موقع إلكتروني عبر الإنترنت).

• **Informal or semi-formal:** Like talking to a friend, but maybe a bit more organized.

• مثال : مدونة غير رسمية أو شبه رسمية مثل التحدث مع صديق لكن بطريقة أكثر تنظيم قليلًا.

• **Engaging:** They want to catch the reader's attention.

• جذابة، تهدف إلى لفت انتباه القارئ.

• **About a specific topic:** They share information, opinions, or personal experiences.

• حول موضوع محدد بحيث يشارك الكاتب معلومات، آراء، أو تجارب شخصية.

• **Not too long:** Easy to read online.

• غير طويلة جدًا بحيث تكون سهلة عبر الإنترنت.

خطوات كتابة التدوينة Steps to write a Blog Post

A Good Blog Post usually has these parts : يتكون منشور المدونة الجيد عادةً من هذه الأجزاء :

1 Catchy Title (Headline)

العنوان الرئيسي (العنوان الجذاب)

• **Purpose :** To make people want to click and read!

الغرض : جعل الناس يرغبون في الضغط على اللينك والقراءة.

e.g. : 5 Amazing Places to Visit in Summer, My First Time Trying Sushi (and Why I Loved It!), Is Learning English Hard? My Opinion.

2 Introduction

المقدمة

• **Purpose :** To introduce your topic and hook the reader.

الغرض : تقديم موضوعك وجذب القارئ.

e.g. : Have you ever dreamed of traveling the world? For me, visiting new countries has always been a passion. Today, I want to share my recent trip to Japan and some amazing discoveries I made there.

3 Main Body

الموضوع الرئيسي

• **Purpose :** To develop your ideas, provide details, and explain your points.

الغرض : تطوير أفكارك، وتقديم التفاصيل، وشرح نقاطك.

e.g. : (for a travel blog post):

Paragraph 1 (Food) : One of the best parts of my trip was the food. I tried sushi, ramen, and tempura. The ramen was especially delicious because...

Paragraph 2 (Culture) : Apart from food, I was fascinated by the traditional culture. I visited several temples and saw a tea ceremony...

4 Conclusion

الخاتمة

- **Purpose :** To summarize your main points and give a final thought.

الغرض : تلخيص أفكارك الرئيسية وإعطاء فكرة ختامية.

e.g. : Overall, my trip to Japan was an unforgettable experience. I highly recommend visiting this amazing country if you get the chance. Have you ever been to Japan? What was your favorite part?

إرشادات خاصة باللغة والأسلوب Tips on language and style

1. Use simple, clear language
2. Keep paragraphs short (2–5 sentences)
3. Write in a friendly, personal tone
4. Use the first person (“I”, “we”) if it’s a personal or narrative post
5. Add expressive language, such as idioms or emotions, when appropriate

مصطلحات خاصة بالتدوين Blog post terminology

Term	Definition
Audience	The readers the post is intended for (e.g. teenagers, students, general public).
Blog	A regularly updated website or journal that contains individual entries called blog posts.
Blog Post	A single article or entry published on a blog.
Call to Action (CTA)	A sentence encouraging the reader to take an action (e.g., comment, share, subscribe).
Catchy Title	A headline designed to attract clicks and grab the reader’s attention.
Hook	An engaging opening that grabs the reader’s attention (a question, quote, fact, or anecdote).
Subheading	A smaller heading used to divide sections of a blog post for easier reading.
Title	A catchy and clear headline that summarizes the blog posts content.
Tone	The style or attitude of the writer, such as formal, informal, humorous, or serious.
Topic	The subject or theme of the blog post.
Transition Words	Words like first, next, however, finally that help connect ideas smoothly.

Model Blog Post Exercises (Subjective)

- 1 Write a six-line introduction to a blog post entitled '5 reasons Why to Visit Aswan in Winter'**

Have you ever dreamed of escaping the cold while still enjoying the magic of winter? Aswan, one of Egypt's most charming cities, offers the perfect warm-weather getaway during the cooler months. With its golden sunshine, peaceful Nile views, and rich cultural heritage, Aswan becomes a magical destination between November and February. Whether you're a history lover, an adventure seeker, or simply someone looking to relax, Aswan in winter has something just for you. In this post, I'll share five great reasons why this southern gem should be at the top of your winter travel list.

- 2 Write a six-line body paragraph to a blog post entitled '5 Reasons Why to Visit Aswan in Winter'**

Unlike other tourist hotspots, Aswan stays calm and uncrowded during winter. This means you can explore temples like Philae or stroll along the Nile without being rushed or surrounded by large groups. The peaceful atmosphere allows you to truly connect with the history and beauty around you. Local markets are less busy, so you can chat with friendly vendors and take your time picking souvenirs. Even the felucca rides feel more personal and relaxed. It's the perfect setting for travelers who enjoy slow, meaningful experiences.

- 3 Write a six-line conclusion to a blog post entitled '5 Reasons Why to Visit Aswan in Winter'**

To conclude, Aswan in winter offers more than just sunshine – it gives you calm, cultural, and unforgettable memories. From its mild weather to peaceful sights, it's the perfect winter escape. You can enjoy local life, explore history, and relax by the Nile. Whether you're an adventurer, a culture lover, or just someone who needs a break. To sum up, Aswan welcomes you warmly. So why wait? Pack your bags and discover the magic of Aswan this winter!

General Exercises

I WRITING SKILL

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What is a blog?
 - a. A photo album
 - b. A regularly updated website
 - c. A closed group
 - d. A TV show
2. What is a blog post?
 - a. A tweet
 - b. A long novel
 - c. An article on a blog
 - d. A menu item
3. What does “hook” mean in blog writing?
 - a. To confuse
 - b. To end
 - c. To delay
 - d. To grab attention
4. What is a “call to action”?
 - a. A summary
 - b. A prompt for the reader to act
 - c. A background
 - d. A question
5. What is meant by “audience” in blog writing?
 - a. The speaker
 - b. The title
 - c. The blogger
 - d. The readers you write for
6. A blog is a regularly updated

a. webpage	b. diary	c. website	d. story
------------	----------	------------	----------
7. A blog post is an individual published on a blog.

a. sentence	b. article	c. email	d. design
-------------	------------	----------	-----------
8. A good blog title should be clear and

a. hidden	b. quiet	c. catchy	d. messy
-----------	----------	-----------	----------
9. The introduction should the reader.

a. ignore	b. bore	c. hook	d. confuse
-----------	---------	---------	------------
10. The body of a blog post explains the main

a. ideas	b. fonts	c. people	d. rules
----------	----------	-----------	----------
11. Transitions help the writing smoothly.

a. stop	b. flow	c. shrink	d. slow
---------	---------	-----------	---------
12. The conclusion should the main points.

a. delete	b. extend	c. forget	d. summarize
-----------	-----------	-----------	--------------
13. A call to action encourages the reader to

a. leave	b. do something	c. delete	d. wait
----------	-----------------	-----------	---------
14. Blog posts should use short paragraphs of sentences.

a. 6–10	b. 2–5	c. 10–15	d. 1–2
---------	--------	----------	--------
15. Visuals like images or lists help readers content.

a. erase	b. understand	c. ignore	d. repeat
----------	---------------	-----------	-----------

16. "How I Beat Exam Stress" is an example of a/an title.
a. boring b. engaging c. dull d. slow
17. A blog post must have a clear or goal.
a. length b. purpose c. font d. link
18. "We had the best time ever" is an example of a tone.
a. formal b. personal c. passive d. robotic
19. Blog writing is usually more than academic writing.
a. stiff b. casual c. confusing d. complicated
20. Knowing your audience helps you choose the right
a. page b. tone c. image d. punctuation
21. "First," "next," and "finally" are examples of
a. questions b. titles c. transitions d. captions
22. A strong introduction should give a clear idea of what to
a. ignore b. copy c. delete d. expect

احرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للفصل الثالث الثانوي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني



II READING SKILL

• Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

The computer, as well as the chainsaw is a powerful tool. They are of great help. If the chainsaw is misused, the person operating it might find themselves missing a finger. But if the computer is misused, it may lead to disasters. With it, teachers can enhance the classroom experience in a variety of ways. But while the misuse of the computer will probably not result in lost limbs like in chainsaw, there are other dangers that must be considered when computers are brought into a classroom.

To investigate the way, technology is currently being used in our school, I recently spoke with Mrs Abeer, who informed me that computers, which are introduced into her classroom, have helped to increase students' motivation and prepare them for life in a technological society. "These kids are probably going to be using some advanced computer programs when they graduate from high school," she noted. "It's important that we provide a proper introduction about them in the classroom." She also observed that the computers have made it easier to promote interdisciplinary learning, so that students can work on a project or topic that relates to more than one subject faster.

With all of these benefits come a few drawbacks. Mrs Abeer also added that some teachers think that using computers in the educational process is useless and others use them in a way that makes students get easily distracted by the many temptations of the internet, and that many students are quite adept at making it look as if they are doing class work when they are really checking their emails or watching videos.

While students are surfing educational websites, video games may make students lose their concentration. These diversions are rather benign in comparison to the other things hiding in the corners of the World Wide Web.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This passage is mainly about the
a. importance of chainsaw
b. pros and cons of computers
c. pros of chainsaw
d. cons of computers
- People use some like a chainsaw to accomplish their work.
a. devices
b. systems
c. methods
d. tools
- The improper use of the computer can cause results in comparison to the chainsaw.
a. disastrous
b. greedy
c. favourable
d. acceptable
- While surfing the internet for studying, students could be by video games.
a. concentrated
b. addicted
c. distracted
d. focused
- Some students are experts at violating the classroom rules by
a. surfing educational websites
b. checking their emails
c. working on a project
d. using advanced programs
- Although using modern technology may cause some demerits, man will
a. try to find other alternatives
b. stop using it
c. claim it is dangerous
d. never do without it
- According to the passage, the ways that teachers apply to encourage students to use the internet
a. vary from one school to another
b. are the same at all schools
c. hinder students' understanding
d. can protect students
- Unless students were aware of the dark sides in the World Wide Web, they would
a. be successful
b. achieve their goals
c. suffer a lot
d. lead a comfortable life

III TRANSLATION

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Modern culture and civilization greatly depend on science and technology. They have become an essential part of life according to the requirements of people and their needs.

- a. تعتمد الثقافة والحضارة الحديثة بشكل كبير على العلوم والتكنولوجيا، فلقد أصبحت جزءاً أساسياً من الحياة وفقاً لمتطلبات الناس واحتياجاتهم.
- b. تعتمد الثقافة والمدنية الحديثة بشكل كبير على العلوم والتكنولوجيا، فلقد أصبحت جزءاً أساسياً من الحياة طبقاً لمتطلبات الناس وتدايعاتهم.
- c. تعتمد الثقافة والحضارة الحديثة اعتماداً كبيراً على العلوم والتكنولوجيا، فلقد أصبحت جزءاً أساسياً من الحياة وفقاً لمتطلبات الناس واحتياجاتهم.
- d. تعتمد الثقافة والمدنية الحديثة اعتماداً كبيراً على العلوم والتكنولوجيا، فلقد أصبحت جزءاً أساسياً من الحياة وفقاً لمتطلبات الناس وتدايعاتهم.

2. The importance of charitable organisations lies in helping poor and needy people.

Charities do an excellent job as they work all over the world.

- a. تكمن أهمية الجمعيات الخيرية في مساعدة الفقراء والمحتاجين، فتقوم الجمعيات الخيرية بعمل ممتاز لأنها تعمل في كل أنحاء العالم.
- b. يكمن اهتمام الجمعيات الخيرية في مساعدة الفقراء والمحتاجين، فتقوم الجمعيات الخيرية بوظيفة ممتازة لأنها تعمل في كل أنحاء العالم.
- c. تكمن أهمية الجمعيات الخيرية في مساعدة الفقراء والمشردين، فتقوم الجمعيات الخيرية بوظيفة ممتازة لأنها تعمل في كل أرجاء العالم.
- d. يكمن اهتمام الجمعيات الخيرية في مساعدة الفقراء والمشردين، وتقوم الجمعيات الخيرية بعمل ممتاز لأنها تعمل في كل أنحاء العالم.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

ا. يمتلك العديد من الناس قدرات هائلة، ولو استخدموها في مكانها الصحيح لتغيرت أمور كثيرة وغلاً شأن وطننا وبيرنا نحو التقدم الحقيقي الذي نسعى إليه.

- a. A lot of people have great disabilities. If they had used them in their proper place, our homeland would have risen, and we would have moved towards the real progress that we seek.
- b. A lot of people have great abilities. If they had used them in their proper place, our homeland would have risen, and we would have moved towards the real progress that we seek.
- c. Many people have great abilities. If we had used them in their write place, our homeland would have stood, and we would have moved toward the real progress that we seek.
- d. A lot of people have great abilities. If they had used them in their proper place, our land would have got up, and we would have moved toward the real progress that we seek.

ف. يجب على الدول التعاون من أجل تطوير صور جديدة من الطاقة، فعليهم أن يتحدوا لكي يجدوا حلولاً للحد من الآثار الضارة مثل الاحتباس الحراري وكذلك التغلب على نقص الوقود.

- a. Countries must cooperate to evolve new images of energy. They must unit to find solutions to reduce harmful effects such as global warning and overcome fuel shortage.
- b. Countries must cooperate to evolve new forms of energy. They must unit to find solutions to reduce harmful affects such as global warming and overcome fuel shortage.
- c. Countries need to cooperate to develop new images of energy. They must unite to find solutions to reduce harmful defects such as global warning and overcome fuel shortage.
- d. Countries need to cooperate to develop new forms of energy. They must unite to find solutions to reduce harmful effects such as global warming and overcome fuel shortage.



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 13

A Day in the Life of a Hospital Nurse

1. The text describes a typical day for Nurse Sarah, which involves a 12-hour shift.
2. Her duties include checking patient charts, administering medication, and monitoring patients.
3. She faces emergencies, such as a car accident victim being rushed in, requiring her to assist doctors and ensure everything runs smoothly.
4. Despite the chaos and exhaustion, Sarah finds her job fulfilling and rewarding.
5. The text highlights that nursing is a roller coaster of emotions, with both heart-breaking and rewarding moments, but she wouldn't trade it for anything.

on Lesson 2 SB page 16

Emergency call

1. A caller reports to an emergency operator that his neighbour has collapsed.
2. The neighbor suddenly grabbed his chest and fell while walking downstairs.
3. The operator confirms the patient is not breathing and that CPR has been started by the man's wife.
4. The caller mentions the patient had complained about chest pain earlier, but his medication had not been taken.
5. The operator tells the caller that help is on the way and tries to determine if the patient regained consciousness.

on Lesson 3 SB page 18

Tired Hands, Caring Hearts

1. Doctors and nurses work long, hard hours, often missing meals or rest.
2. They must make quick, life-saving decisions and perform operations, which can be very tiring.
3. The work is emotionally demanding as they see people in pain and sometimes lose patients.

* A day in the life of a nurse

* Emergency calls and first aid

* Doctors and nurses' duties towards patients

4. Despite the challenges, their work shows true dedication and compassion, bringing hope and healing to others.

on Lesson 4 SB page 20

Night in the ER

1. The text describe a chaotic night in an emergency room, starting with paramedics rushing in with a man injured in a car crash.
2. The ER is filled with chaos: groaning patients, hurrying nurses, and non-stop machines.
3. Nurse Noura calmly handles the pressure, giving clear instructions and preparing the sterile equipment.
4. A panicked mother arrives with a child who has swallowed a coin, and the team jumps into action, successfully removing the coin with a flexible scope.
5. The night ends with a sense of relief and accomplishment, showing that another night of urgent, life-saving teamwork has come to an end.

on Lesson 5 SB page 23

My Unwelcome Visitor: A Recent Cold Experience

1. The writer describes a personal experience of getting sick with what started as a small cough.
2. The symptoms worsened to a sore throat, runny nose, headache, and exhaustion, making it difficult to sleep.
3. After a few days, the writer decided to see a doctor.
4. The doctor diagnosed a severe viral cold, checked the throat and listened to my chest with a stethoscope, and gave a prescription for medicine.
5. After about four days of rest and medication, the writer felt healthy again and gained a new appreciation for the importance of doctors.

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى : تنويه :

on Unit 1

- Create

1. means giving a sense of achievement or satisfaction.
a. Rewarding b. Heartbreaking
c. Cardiopulmonary d. Emergent
2. The clients began to about the long waiting time.
a. complain b. buzz c. beep d. progress
3. The teacher had to the test fairly and ensure no one cheated.
a. attention b. administer c. shift d. collapse
4. "Malak had a rewarding day helping others." The word 'rewarding' here is an antonym of
a. satisfying b. disappointing c. fulfilling d. productive
5. The new manager will take the school next month.
a. off b. out c. on d. over
6. The athlete fell hard and his leg just above the knee.
a. stitched b. retrieved c. clutched d. wounded
7. "....." is to 'worsen' as 'recover' is to 'heal'.
a. Harm b. Stitch c. Weaken d. Improve
8. The boy's mother rushed, shouting for help.
a. on b. over c. in d. down
9. Huda has read two chapters of "A Tale of Two Cities" since she back home.
a. came b. has come c. was coming d. come
10. Hisham this car for five years.
a. is having b. has had c. has d. had had
11. It's a long time I last saw her.
a. since b. when c. for d. ago
12. Once she has got her visa, she
a. booked her plan ticket b. had booked her plan ticket
c. will travel abroad d. going to fly to the USA
13. As soon as he finishes the report, he
a. has submitted it to the manager b. submitted it to the manager
c. will submit it to the manager d. is submitting it to the manager
14. Which of the following is structurally correct ?
a. I live here since five years. b. It's five years that I live here.
c. I have lived here for five years. d. I am living here for five years.
15. He has had his car for a decade. This means he it ten years ago.
a. buys b. has bought c. bought d. will buy
16. They have just eaten lunch. This means
a. they are about to eat lunch
b. they finished eating lunch a long time ago
c. they finished eating lunch a very short time ago
d. they will eat lunch soon

17. Reham has worked as a secretary
 a. from 2019 to 2023
 b. in 2020
 c. since her graduation
 d. two years ago
18., I turned off my mobile.
 a. As I was busy
 b. In addition to being busy
 c. When crossing the street
 d. While studying hours
19. A good blog post has a structure that flows from
 a. middle to start
 b. title to conclusion
 c. end to beginning
 d. title to title

• Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In recent years, minority-owned businesses in the US have faced both unprecedented opportunities and significant risks. Civil rights activists have long argued that minority groups, such as Blacks and Hispanics, struggle to succeed in business due to lack of access to substantial orders from large companies. In response, Congress passed laws requiring federal contractors to make efforts to engage minority subcontractors. Many government agencies have set goals to allocate public works contracts to minority businesses. Corporate response has been positive, with contracts for minority businesses increasing from \$77 million in 1972 to \$1.1 billion in 1977, and projections for the early 1980s estimating over \$53 billion annually.

However, this growth brings risks for minority businesses. Many are small, requiring large investments in equipment, plants, and staff to handle subcontracted work. If their contracts are reduced, they may face financial difficulties due to fixed expenses. The corporate world can be frustrating for small businesses, with complex bidding مزايده processes that consume time and resources.

Additionally, white-owned companies may attempt to exploit the opportunity by forming partnerships with minority firms, sometimes setting up minority businesses as “fronts” instead of true partners. Finally, some minority businesses become overly reliant on a single corporate customer, which limits their ability to expand and make their business sustainable.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

20. What is the central idea of the text?
 - a. The challenges faced by large companies in securing contracts.
 - b. The risks and opportunities for minority-owned businesses in securing federal contracts.
 - c. The success of white-owned businesses in gaining government contracts.
 - d. The importance of small businesses in the US economy.
21. Which of the following describes a risk faced by minority businesses as they expand?
 - a. Increased competition from large businesses.
 - b. Difficulty in meeting federal contract goals.
 - c. Financial overextension and fixed expenses from growing too quickly.
 - d. Lack of interest from potential partners such as large companies.
22. Which of the following strategies do large companies use to support minority businesses?
 - a. Making exclusive deals with minority businesses.
 - b. Creating partnerships with minority enterprises.
 - c. Offering discounts on their products.
 - d. Reducing federal contract requirements.

23. According to the text, how did corporate contracts with minority businesses change between 1972 and 1977?
- They decreased significantly.
 - They increased from \$77 million to \$1.1 billion.
 - They remained the same.
 - They reached \$53 billion annually.
24. What potential problem arises from minority businesses depending on one large corporate customer?
- They might struggle to maintain low costs.
 - They could face difficulties in expanding their customer base.
 - They may lose their federal contracts.
 - They face competition from other minority businesses.
25. Which sentence summarizes the second paragraph?
- The growth of minority businesses comes with risks.
 - There will always be competition between large and small companies.
 - The volume of minority businesses in the USA.
 - The increase in minority businesses in the USA.
26. Congress addressed the issue of minority businesses lacking access to government contracts by.....
- reducing the number of contracts awarded to large companies
 - requiring federal contractors to seek minority subcontractors
 - making it easier for white businesses to win contracts
 - eliminating all subcontracting opportunities
27. A potential problem when minority businesses become involved in partnerships with white-owned businesses is that they.....
- may not receive enough government support.
 - might be set up as "fronts" rather than true partners.
 - face intense competition from other minority businesses
 - may not meet the corporate demands

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Maria had always dreamed of owning a bookstore, but her reality was far different. She worked long hours at a corporate job, surrounded by people who didn't understand her passion for books. However, when she found an old, rundown bookstore for sale in her town, she knew it was the opportunity she had been waiting for. The building was small, and the shelves were dusty, but there was something about it that felt like home. Maria decided to take the risk and use her savings to buy the store.

At first, things were difficult. She had to learn about inventory management, customer service, and how to market the store. Some days, she wondered if she had made the right decision. But Maria persevered, driven by her love for books and the desire to make the store a success. Slowly, customers began to trickle in. Word of mouth spread, and soon her little bookstore became the heart of the community. Maria had created a place where people of all ages could find comfort in reading, and the store became a sanctuary for many.

Over time, Maria realized that her dream had come true. The bookstore was not just a business; it was a space where her passion could thrive, and where others could find the same joy in books that she had always loved.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

28. What is the main idea of the passage?
- a. Maria regrets opening the bookstore.
 - b. Maria overcomes challenges to make her bookstore a success.
 - c. Maria prefers her corporate job over the bookstore.
 - d. The bookstore is the least successful business in town.
29. Maria's dream develops in the passage when she
- a. buys the bookstore and gives up
 - b. works at a corporate job and forgets about the bookstore
 - c. buys the bookstore, faces challenges, then succeeds
 - d. finds immediate success with no challenges
30. What can be inferred about Maria's feelings at the start of the story?
- a. She is uninterested in opening a bookstore.
 - b. She is immediately successful in her business.
 - c. She is hopeful about the bookstore
 - d. She regrets her decision to leave her corporate job.
31. Which of the following statements best compares the beginning and end of the story?
- a. In the beginning she is confident, and by the end, she is uncertain.
 - b. In the beginning she struggles, but at the end she succeeds.
 - c. In the beginning she is successful, and by the end, she fails.
 - d. The beginning and the end of the story are identical.
32. What was the cause of Maria's initial struggles in the bookstore?
- a. She lacked knowledge about inventory and marketing.
 - b. She didn't like working with books.
 - c. The community didn't support her.
 - d. Her store was too large to manage and she got tired of it.
33. The community reacted to Maria's bookstore over time by..... .
- a. spreading the word, and it became popular
 - b. ignoring the bookstore
 - c. asking Maria to close the store
 - d. preferring shopping at larger bookstores
34. Based on the text, the most likely truth about Maria's character is that she
- a. gives up easily when things get tough
 - b. dislikes working with books
 - c. regrets her decision to open the bookstore
 - d. is determined and passionate about her bookstore
35. Which one of the following statements can summarize the passage?
- a. Maria bought a bookstore but faced no challenges in running it.
 - b. Maria opened a large bookstore that quickly became a failure.
 - c. Maria gave up on her bookstore and returned to her corporate job.
 - d. Maria bought a bookstore, struggled, and eventually succeeded.

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

36. "The nurse administered medication to the patient." The word 'administered' here is a synonym of

- a. took b. provided c. gave
d. removed e. ignored

37. What does the word panicked mean in : "She was panicked when her child disappeared in the crowd"?

- a. Frantic b. Relaxed c. Anxious
d. Bored e. Calm

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

38. Climate change is one of the most pressing issues facing humanity today. It affects every aspect of our lives, from the food we eat to the air we breathe, and requires immediate and sustained action from all sectors of society.

- a. تغير المناخ هو واحد من أكثر القضايا الملحة التي تواجه البشرية اليوم. يؤثر على كل جانب من جوانب حياتنا، من الطعام الذي نأكله إلى الهواء الذي نتنفسه، ويتطلب عملاً فورياً ومستداماً من جميع قطاعات المجتمع.
b. يعد التغير المناخي من أكثر القضايا إلحاحاً التي تواجه الإنسان حالياً. يؤثر على كل جانب من جوانب حياتنا، من الطعام الذي نأكله إلى الهواء الذي نتنفسه، ويتطلب إجراءات فورية ومستمرة من جميع قطاعات المجتمع.
c. التغير المناخي هو من بين القضايا الأكثر إلحاحاً التي تواجه البشرية في الوقت الراهن. يؤثر على كل جانب من جوانب حياتنا، من الطعام الذي نأكله إلى الهواء الذي نتنفسه، ويحتاج إلى استجابة عاجلة ومستدامة من جميع قطاعات المجتمع.
d. يعتبر تغير المناخ أكثر القضايا إلحاحاً التي تواجه البشرية اليوم. له تأثير على جميع جوانب حياتنا، بدءاً من الطعام الذي نأكله وحتى الهواء الذي نتنفسه، ويتطلب تحركاً فورياً ومستداماً من كل قطاعات المجتمع.

39. Mirage is a kind of optical illusion that deceives the eye. This happens when water appears to be existing on the horizon in open places, but it is not in reality.

- a. السراب هو نوع من ضعف البصر الذي يخدع العين، وهذا يحدث عندما تظهر المياه وكأنها موجودة في الأماكن المفتوحة في الأفق ولكنها ليست كذلك في الواقع.
b. السراب هو نوع من الوهم البصري الذي يخدع العين، ويحدث هذا عندما تبدو المياه وكأنها غير موجودة في الأفق ولكنها ليست كذلك في الواقع.
c. السراب هو نوع من ضعف البصر الذي يخدع العين، ويحدث هذا عندما تبدو المياه وكأنها موجودة في الأفق ولكنها ليست كذلك في الأماكن المغلقة.
d. السراب هو نوع من الوهم البصري الذي يخدع العين، وهذا يحدث عندما تبدو المياه وكأنها موجودة في الأفق في الأماكن المفتوحة ولكنها ليست كذلك في الواقع.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

٤. كانت الرحلة إلى الجبال في الشتاء تجربة لا تُنسى، حيث كانت الثلوج تغطي القمم والهواء بارداً ومنعشاً. استمتعنا بالمشي لمسافات طويلة والتمتع بالمناظر الطبيعية، ولكننا اضطررنا للعودة بسبب العاصفة التي بدأت تقترب.

- a. The trip to the mountains in the winter was unforgettable, with snow covering the peaks and the air being cold and refreshing. We enjoyed long walks and the beautiful scenery, but we had to leave because of the storm that was approaching.
b. The winter journey to the mountains was not as exciting, with only a light dusting of snow. We didn't get to walk much because the weather was too warm, but we stayed for the entire day.
c. The winter trip to the mountains was enjoyable despite the heavy snowstorm that made hiking impossible. The scenery was beautiful, but we couldn't go outside.
d. We went to the mountains in winter, but the weather was too harsh to enjoy the cold air, and we didn't walk at all because of the storm.

ع. يعد أحمد شوقي الشاعر والكاتب المصري أحد أعظم شعراء اللغة العربية. ولقد لُقّب بأمير الشعراء وكان واسع الثقافة ولديه موهبة شعرية فريدة.

- a. Ahmed Shawky, the Egyptian poet and writer is concerned one of the greatest poets of the Arabic language. He was nicknamed "The prince of poets". He was high cultured and had a unique poetic talent.
- b. Ahmed Shawky, the Egyptian poet and writer, is considered one of the greatest poet of the Arabic literature. He was nicknamed "The prince of poets". He was highly culture and had a unique poetic tenant.
- c. Ahmed Shawky, the Egyptian poet and writer, is concerned one of the greatest poet of the Arabic language. He was nicknamed "The prince of poets". He was highly cultured and had a unique poetic tenant.
- d. Ahmed Shawky, the Egyptian poet and writer, is considered one of the greatest poets of the Arabic language. He was nicknamed "The prince of poets". He was highly cultured and had a unique poetic talent.

• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

42. The train has just left the station. (ago)

43. Sama is still waiting for the bus. She arrived twenty minutes ago. (has been)

• Answer the following questions :

44. How did Ville fort appear immoral to Edmond ?

45. What is your impression of Monsieur Morrel ?

• 46. Write a six-line body paragraph to a blog post entitled :

"A day in the life of a hospital nurse"

UNIT 2

The Power of Machines

SB pages 24 : 35



Learning Outcomes

• Reading

- Read short texts, articles, and conversations about machines, technology, and their historical context in Egypt
- Identify key details, and understand idioms

• Language

- Use and apply reported speech for statements, commands, and requests

• Listening

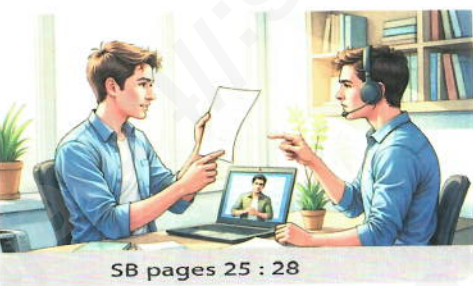
- Understand and extract key information from an audio conversation, specifically a technical support call

• Writing

- Write an argumentative essay with a clear opinion, supporting reasons, and a counter argument

• Speaking

- Talk about machines and their impact, present an invented machine
- Give and follow instructions



SB pages 25 : 28

PART ONE

Lessons

1 & 2

► Machines in Egypt:
Past and Present
► Technical Support Call

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

artifact/artefact (n)	قطعة أثرية - تحفة	offline (adj - adv)	غير متصل
automation (n)	التشغيل الآلي	online (adj - adv)	متصل
cable (n)	كابل التوصيل	partnership (n)	شراكة
charge(d) (v)	يشحن بالطاقة	productivity (n)	الإنتاجية
drive - drove - driven (v)	يعرّز - يقود	right-click(ed) (v)	ينقر على الزر الأيمن
driver (n)	ملف التعريف	sophisticated (adj)	متطور - دقيق
dynasty (n)	سلالة حاكمة / أسرة حاكمة	steeped in (adj)	غني بـ - غارق في
enhance(d) (v)	يُحسّن / يعزّز / يقوى	troubleshoot -	يحدد المشكلة ويعالجها
gin (n)	مُخلّج (قطن)	troubleshoot (v)	
groundwork (n)	أرضية - أساس	urgency (n)	أهمية - ضرورة مُلحة
infrastructure (n)	البنية التحتية	version (n)	نسخة - إصدار
lever (n)	رافعة - مقبض	generation (n)	جيل

2 Important Vocabulary

advanced (adj)	متطور	perfect (adj)	رائع - مثالي
agriculture (n)	الزراعة	pivotal (adj)	محوريّ - رئيسي
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	power (n)	قوة - سلطنة - نفوذ
argue(d) (v)	يجادل - يفترض	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
artificial (adj)	اصطناعي - مصطنع	preserve(d) (v)	يحافظ علي
blend(ed) (v)	يمزج	prevent(ed) (v)	يمنع
computerize(d) (v)	يُحوّسب (ينفذ باستخدام الكمبيوتر)	private sector	القطاع الخاص
connected (adj)	مرتبط	process(ed) (n - v)	عملية - يعالج
craft (n)	حرفة - مهنة	properly (adv)	بشكل مناسب
disappear(ed) (v)	يختفي	ramp (n)	منحدر
engineering (n - adj)	الهندسة - هندسيّ	rapid (adj)	سريع
era (n)	عصر - حقبة	renewable (adj)	متجدد
fascinating (adj)	خلاب - رائع	replace(d) (v)	يحل محل
fibers (n)	ألياف	replacement (n)	بديل
harm(ed) (n - v)	ضرر - يضرّ	respect(ed) (n - v)	احترام - يحترم
foundation (n)	أساس	require (d) (v)	يتطلب / يستلزم
industrial (adj)	صناعي	restart(ed) (v)	يعيد تشغيل
initiative (n)	مبادرة	revolution (n)	ثورة
		revolutionize(d) (v)	يُحدث تغييراً جذرياً

innovation (n)	ابتكار	remark (ed) (v)	يلاحظ
irrigation (n)	رى	robot (n)	الروبوت
operate (d) (v)	يشغل (جهاز)	scanning (n)	المسح
instruct(ed) (v)	يأمر / يعطى تعليمات	secure (adj)	سليم - مُحْكَم / آمن
intelligence (n)	الذكاء	select(ed) (v)	يختار - يحدد
issue (n)	مشكلة - قضية	smooth (adj)	نئيلس - سهل
labor/labour (n)	عمل	solar-powered (adj)	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
listed (adj)	مُذَرَج بالقائمة	stage (n)	مرحلة
loose (adj)	غير مُثَبَّت	steam engines (n)	محركات بخارية
machinery (n)	آلات	tool (n)	أداة
maintenance (n)	صيانة / حفاظ	transportation (n)	النقل
marvels (n)	إنجازات / عجائب	updated (adj)	مُحَدَّث
master (n)	سيد / أستاذ	warn(ed) (v)	يُحذِر
mechanics (n)	علم الميكانيكا	wonders (n)	عجائب
monumental (adj)	ضخم - أثني		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- The IT team was called in to the problems with WiFi connectivity.
a. drive b. enhance c. troubleshoot d. embrace
- Before we use the printer, we need to install its so the system can recognize it.
a. cable b. infrastructure c. lever d. driver
- The manager emphasized the of completing the project before the deadline.
a. version b. urgency c. automation d. productivity
- There's a successful between the government and private sector to carry out national projects.
a. partnership b. artifacts c. dynasty d. groundwork
- This application works best when the device is connected, but it can run if needed.
a. sophisticated b. rudimentary c. steeped in d. offline
- In El Kanater area, there used to be a cotton to separate cotton fibers from seeds.
a. gin b. issue c. initiative d. era
- Mr Ayman's goal is to team performance through better communication and goal setting.
a. drive b. embrace c. troubleshoot d. enhance
- A poor can result in slower internet speed or even disconnection.
a. partnership b. cable c. driver d. lever
- Microsoft released a new of Windows for tablets.
a. version b. urgency c. automation d. productivity
- Luxor and Aswan are full of ancient that tell us about Egyptian history.
a. partnerships b. artefacts c. subjects d. fibers

11. The tools discovered at the historical site are quite in design.
a. offline b. rudimentary c. sophisticated d. steeped
12. To copy the file, just and select "Copy" from the menu.
a. preserve b. charge c. blend d. right-click
13. Big businesses innovation and risk-taking as part of their culture.
a. troubleshoot b. instruct c. embrace d. drive
14. The transportation was developed to handle the growing population.
a. lever b. infrastructure c. cable d. driver
15. The main goal of is to reduce manual tasks and save time.
a. automation b. version c. productivity d. urgency
16. Engineers spent months laying the technical for the new system.
a. dynasty b. partnership c. groundwork d. artifacts
17. This robot uses a/an algorithm to identify threats and solve technical problems.
a. offline b. rudimentary c. steeped in d. sophisticated
18. You need to your phone before it goes dead.
a. preserve b. charge c. blend d. right-click
19. Good vision and determination should real change in the education sector.
a. embrace b. troubleshoot c. enhance d. drive
20. The technician used a long to lift the heavy box.
a. lever b. cable c. driver d. infrastructure
21. Good work atmosphere improves and profits increase.
a. version b. urgency c. automation d. productivity
22. The Old ruled Egypt for centuries, influencing culture and art.
a. Groundwork b. Artifacts c. Dynasty d. Partnership
23. Our country is ancient artefacts.
a. offline b. rudimentary c. steeped in d. sophisticated

2 Important vocabulary

24. Egypt launched a health awareness to combat يُحارب virus C.
a. gin b. issue c. initiative d. era
25. Museums work hard to ancient manuscripts for future generations.
a. preserve b. blend c. charge d. right-click
26. The software updates will surely system crashes.
a. prevent b. replace c. select d. restart
27. The Grand Egyptian Museum is a modern building.
a. loose b. artificial c. renewable d. monumental
28. AI tools continue to fields like healthcare and education.
a. warn b. process c. revolutionize d. computerize
29. Scientists are developing systems that can learn independently.
a. perfect b. rudimentary c. pivotal d. advanced
30. Manual are endangered by AI.
a. crafts b. revolution c. labors d. mechanics
31. The Great Pyramid is one of the ancient of the world.
a. machinery b. innovation c. replacement d. wonders

32. The problem of overpopulation has become a major in recent years.
a. initiative b. gin c. era d. issue
33. First, you have to the file you want to copy.
a. prevent b. select c. restart d. replace
34. A/An screw caused the wheel to shake violently.
a. loose b. monumental c. industrial d. solar-powered
35. This software can loads of data in no time.
a. revolutionize b. computerize c. process d. warn
36. Rodayna's timing was – just in time to catch the bus.
a. advanced b. perfect c. pivotal d. artificial
37. There is too much heavy to be done.
a. craft b. revolution c. mechanics d. labor
38. The engineers have installed modern to increase and improve production.
a. replacement b. wonders c. machinery d. innovation
39. The steam engine marked the beginning of a new industrial in Europe.
a. gin b. era c. initiative d. issue
40. If the software freezes, try to the device and load it again.
a. select b. prevent c. restart d. replace
41. They installed streetlights in streets and highways to reduce energy costs.
a. solar-powered b. industrial c. monumental d. loose
42. This software was designed to all customer records and billing.
a. charge b. revolutionize c. warn d. computerize
43. The conference focused on intelligence and its real-world applications.
a. artificial b. perfect c. pivotal d. advanced
44. The of the machine must be understood before repairs can be made.
a. craft b. revolution c. labor d. mechanics
45. The smartboard is a much better for the traditional whiteboard.
a. wonders b. machinery c. replacement d. innovation
46. This dessert is a perfect of fruits, nuts, and yogurt.
a. preserve b. charge c. blend d. right-click
47. We need to the broken parts before the machine can operate.
a. replace b. select c. restart d. prevent
48. This area is a real center with factories and warehouses.
a. rudimentary b. industrial c. solar-powered d. loose
49. The weather forecast has residents about the rising flood risk.
a. warned b. processed c. computerized d. revolutionized
50. That argument was a/an moment in their relationship.
a. artificial b. advanced c. pivotal d. perfect
51. The digital has transformed how people work and learn.
a. mechanics b. labor c. craft d. revolution
52. A solar-powered machine is a brilliant example of green energy in action.
a. agriculture b. innovation c. labor d. mechanics

53. Before we build the new school, we need to prepare the first.
 a. automation b. version c. partnership d. groundwork
54. She decided to the new teaching method instead of avoiding it.
 a. troubleshoot b. ignore c. embrace d. drive
55. The new car factory uses full to build vehicles faster.
 a. version b. automation c. partnership d. groundwork
56. Reading more books can your vocabulary and writing.
 a. enhance b. troubleshoot c. embrace d. drive
57. The two companies signed a to develop a new product.
 a. groundwork b. partnership c. version d. automation

II VOCABULARY STUDY

هذا الجزء هام جداً سواء على مستوى تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية أو التمييز في الامتحانات

تنويه

1

Definitions التعريفات

artifact (n)	قطعة أثرية - تحفة	an object made by a human being, typically one of cultural or historical interest
automation (n)	التحكم - التشغيل الآلي	the use of machines instead of people
cables (n)	كابلات التوصيل	wires used to connect devices
drivers (n)	ملفات التعريف	software that helps devices work
dynasty (n)	أسرة حاكمة	a ruling family that holds power for several generations
cotton gin (n)	مخلج القطن	a machine invented to quickly separate cotton fibers from seeds
infrastructure (n)	البنية التحتية	the basic systems and structures a country or organization needs to operate
lever (n)	رافعة	a bar used to force or move something
offline (adj)	غير متصل	not connected to the network
right-click (v)	ينقر على الزر الأيمن	press the right mouse button
sophisticated (adj)	متطور - دقيق	complex or advanced in design, understanding, or technology
troubleshoot (v)	يحدد المشكلة ويحلها	fix problems step by step
urgency (n)	أهمية - ضرورة مُلحة	importance requiring rapid action
version (n)	نسخة - إصدار	one form of something that is slightly different to other forms of the same thing

adopt (v)	يتبنى	to accept or support an idea, belief or way of doing something
revolutionize	يحدث تغييرًا جذريًا	to completely change the way something is done or made
initiative	مبادرة	an important first step or plan to achieve a goal
groundwork	أرضية - أساس	preparatory work or foundation for something to develop

Mini Test 1 Definitions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A/An is a man-made object from the past, often with historical or cultural value.
a. artifact b. urgency c. dynasty d. version
- To means to find and fix a problem, especially with technology.
a. sophisticate b. right-click c. embrace d. troubleshoot
- Something is simple or basic, especially in an early stage of development.
a. dynasty b. sophisticated c. rudimentary d. gin
- A/An is a powerful family that rules for a long time.
a. artifact b. dynasty c. version d. urgency
- is the use of machines and technology to perform tasks without human effort.
a. Automation b. Driver c. Infrastructure d. Lever
- To means to accept something willingly or with enthusiasm.
a. troubleshoot b. right-click c. embrace d. sophisticate
- The word refers to the importance of doing something quickly or without delay.
a. urgency b. dynasty c. artifact d. version
- A cotton is a machine that separates cotton fibers from seeds.
a. bin b. bill c. gin d. bucket
- To means to press the right button on a computer mouse.
a. embrace b. right-click c. sophisticate d. troubleshoot
- A/An is a program that lets your computer talk to hardware devices.
a. lever b. driver c. automation d. infrastructure
- A/An is a different form or edition of something, like software or a story.
a. artifact b. dynasty c. urgency d. version
- Something is advanced, complex, or highly developed.
a. sophisticated b. gin c. rudimentary d. dynasty
- includes the basic systems and structures like roads, power lines, or buildings.
a. Driver b. Automation c. Infrastructure d. Lever

2 Derivatives المشتقات

enhance		
enhance (v)	يُحَسِّن - يُعَزِّز	- Good lighting can enhance the beauty of a photograph.
enhancement (n)	تحسين - تعزيز	- The software update includes performance enhancement .
enhanced (adj)	مُحَسَّن - مُعَزَّز	- Yara gave an enhanced version of her presentation using visuals.

partnership		
partner (n)	شريك	- Ashraf became a business partner in a successful company.
partner (v)	يُشارك - يتعاون	- Ashraf partnered with a successful company.
partnership (n)	شراكة	- Our partnership was based on trust and respect.
productivity		
product (n)	مُنتَج	- This factory produces over 10,000 products a day.
productive (adj)	مُنتِج - مُثْمِر	- Roaa had a productive day and completed all her tasks.
unproductive (adj)	غير مُثْمِر - غير مُنتِج	- Your efforts were unproductive due to poor planning.
productivity (n)	الإنتاجية	- Technology can improve productivity in the workplace.
sophisticated		
sophisticated (adj)	مُتَطَوِّر - مُعَقَّد	- Modern phones are equipped with sophisticated cameras.
sophistication (n)	رُفْي - تَعْقِيد	- Sama's writing style shows a level of sophistication beyond her years.
urgency		
urgent (adj)	مُلِحّ - عاجل	- It's urgent to contact the doctor immediately.
urgency (n)	إلحاح - ضُرُوزَة	- The urgency of the situation requires quick action.
urgently (adv)	بِضُرُوزَة عاجلة - بإلحاح	- The teacher urgently called for help when the student fainted.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The government decided to the new technology to improve productivity.
a. embracing b. embrace c. embraced d. embracement
- The goal of this course is to your listening and speaking skills.
a. enhanced b. enhancing c. enhancement d. enhance
- Their with international agencies led to exchanging experiences.
a. partner b. partnered c. partnership d. partnering
- Regular breaks during study hours can improve without causing burnout.
a. productive b. productively c. productivity d. product
- Engineers have created a model to simulate the final one.
a. sophisticated b. sophistication c. sophisticate d. sophisticatedly

6. The of the patient's condition made the immediate performance of the surgery a must.

a. urgent

b. urgently

c. urgency

d. urgencies

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

charge	full steam ahead	يسارع في القيام بـ	replace	human labor	يحل محل العمالة البشرية
enhance	productivity	يُحسِّن الإنتاجية	revolutionize	agriculture	يُحدث ثورة في الزراعة
lay	the groundwork	يُمهّد الطريق	troubleshoot	problems	يحدد المشكلة ويعالجها
pass	a law	يُصدر قانون	shape	the nation	يشكل عقل الأمة
play	a pivotal role	يلعب دوراً محورياً			

Mini Test 3 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egypt continues to technology to drive development.

a. charge

b. embrace

c. play

d. lay

2. Modern machines help productivity in the workplace.

a. enhance

b. charge

c. replace

d. troubleshoot

3. Cotton gins helped agriculture during the Industrial Revolution.

a. embrace

b. play

c. replace

d. revolutionize

4. Ancient innovations helped the groundwork for future progress.

a. troubleshoot

b. lay

c. replace

d. charge

5. Experts agree that AI will never fully human labor.

a. troubleshoot

b. lay

c. replace

d. embrace

6. After the new law had been passed, the project began to full steam ahead.

a. charge

b. play

c. enhance

d. embrace

4 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
artifact / artefact (n)	قطعة أثرية - تحفة	antiquity, relic
automation (n)	التشغيل الآلي	mechanization, computerization
cable (n)	كابل التوصيل	wire, cord, line, connector
partnership (n)	شراكة	collaboration, alliance, association, cooperation
drive (v)	يعزز - يقود	lead, power, push forward
basic (adj)	بدائي - أولي	primitive, undeveloped, elementary
embrace(d) (v)	يحتضن - يتبنى	accept, adopt, welcome, support

sophisticated (adj)	متطور - دقيق	advanced, refined, complex, high-tech
enhance(d) (v)	يُحسِّن	improve, boost, upgrade, strengthen
steeped in (adj)	غني بـ - غارق في	immersed in, rich in, filled with, soaked in
troubleshoot (v)	يحدد المشكلة - يستكشف الأخطاء	diagnose, resolve
groundwork (n)	أساس - تمهيد	foundation, basis, preparation, setup
urgency (n)	ضرورة مُلِحَّة	importance, immediacy, necessity
version (n)	نسخة - إصدار	edition, release

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
automation (n)	عمل يدوي
online (adj / adv)	غير متصل بالشبكة
partnership (n)	انفصال - تنافس
drive (v)	يعوق - يثبط
basic (adj)	متطور
embrace(d) (v)	يرفض - يعارض
sophisticated (adj)	بسيط - بدائي
enhance(d) (v)	يقل - يُضعف
steeped in (adj)	خالي من
urgency (n)	انعدام الأهمية

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

• Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "The Grand Egyptian Museum is full of artifacts." In this context, 'artifacts' can be replaced by
 a. machines b. weapons c. antiquities
 d. novels e. historical items
- "Many industries use automation to reduce human labor." The term 'automation' is most nearly equivalent to
 a. programming b. computerization c. education
 d. mechanization e. exploration
- "Mr Mohammed prefers to work online because it's faster and more flexible." Identify the antonym of 'online' in this sentence
 a. offline b. virtual c. disconnected
 d. open e. remote
- "We're seeking a partnership with Microsoft." The word 'partnership' can best be replaced by
 a. business b. alliance c. assistance
 d. collaboration e. ownership
- "My grandfather's knowledge of tools is verb basic." Which word is opposite in meaning to 'basic'
 a. advanced b. weak c. developed
 d. early e. elementary

6. "The new software is incredibly sophisticated." The antonym of 'sophisticated' in this context is

- a. primitive b. elaborate c. detailed
d. simple e. refined

6 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

blend old and new	يمزج بين القديم والجديد	technical support	الدعم الفني
drive forward	يدفع للأمام - يعزّز	That's the issue.	هنا تكمن المشكلة.
Got it!	لقد فهمت!	tools, not replacements	أدوات وليست بدائل
help someone fix	يساعد شخص ما في إصلاح	masters of mechanics	ملوك/أسياد الميكانيكا
hold power	يتولى السلطة	during the industrial revolution	أثناء الثورة الصناعية
remain deeply connected to ...	يظل متصل بشدة في ...	lay the groundwork	وضع أساس شيء
central to	هام في	full steam ahead	التقدم بحماس كبير
step by step	بالتدريج		

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

rely on	يعتمد على	work with	يعمل على/في/مع
set up	ينشئ - يصمم	take over	يحل محل / يأخذ مكان / يتولى مسئولية
turn off	يطفئ/يغلق		

Mini Test 5 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The new design beautifully.
a. blends old and new b. drives forward
c. steeped in d. tools, not replacements
- Egypt into the future with its digital transformation plans.
a. got it b. charged full steam ahead
c. laid the groundwork d. helped someone fix
- Thanks, Rodayna. You really our printer problem.
a. step by step b. technical support c. helped us fix d. steeped in
- By building early irrigation systems, the ancient Egyptians for agricultural success.
a. tools, not replacements b. steeped in
c. laid the groundwork d. drive forward
- A: The icon says 'offline'? B: Ah,
a. step by step b. that's the issue c. get it d. drive forward
- Please, check if the printer is properly connected your computer.
a. on b. to c. in d. by
- Don't forget to turn the printer when it's not in use.
a. up b. over c. off d. on

8. The technician helped Ahmed set the smart board quickly.
a. up b. out c. around d. of
9. Mr Walid prefers to work advanced software tools.
a. over b. by c. at d. with

lie - lay

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Every morning, the cat likes to in the sun near the window.
a. lay b. liar c. a layer d. lie
- Yesterday, she her keys on the kitchen counter and forgot them.
a. lie b. lay c. laid d. a layer
- Everyone knew he was a after the truth came out.
a. lay b. layer c. lie d. liar
- The new security system is very; it uses AI and facial recognition.
a. sophisticated b. complicated c. compound d. complex
- His relationship with his family is quite; there are many unresolved issues.
a. sophisticated b. complicated c. compound d. mechanic
- A molecule of salt is a of sodium and chlorine.
a. sophisticated b. complicated c. compound d. complex
- The factory had to shut down due to a fault in the heavy
a. mechanic b. machinery c. mechanics d. machine
- Ali is training to become a car at the vocational center.
a. mechanic b. machinery c. mechanics d. machine
- The of how the gears interact is explained in physics class.
a. mechanic b. machinery c. mechanics d. machine

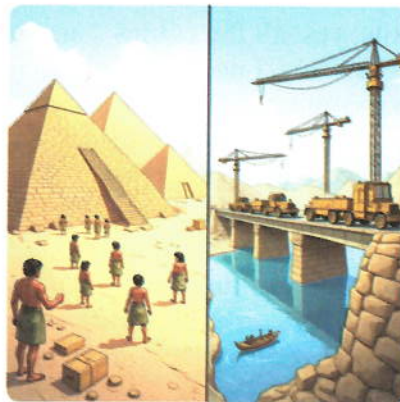
III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Text

• on Lesson 1 SB page 25

Egypt, a land **rich in**⁽¹⁾ ancient **wonders**⁽²⁾, has a long and **fascinating**⁽³⁾ history with machines. From the very **basic**⁽⁴⁾ tools of the early **dynasties**⁽⁵⁾ to the **sophisticated**⁽⁶⁾ devices of today, machines have played an **important**⁽⁷⁾ role in shaping the nation.

In ancient times, Egyptians relied heavily on simple machines like **levers**⁽⁸⁾ and **ramps**⁽⁹⁾ to build their **monumental**⁽¹⁰⁾ pyramids and temples. Historians believe that these early **innovations**⁽¹¹⁾ **laid the groundwork**⁽¹²⁾ for future **engineering**⁽¹³⁾ **marvels**⁽¹⁴⁾. One expert noted, "The Egyptians were **masters**⁽¹⁵⁾ of **mechanics**⁽¹⁶⁾ long before the modern era⁽¹⁷⁾".



اهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) غلى بـ
- (2) عجائب
- (3) ظّاب - رائع
- (4) بدائي - أولي
- (5) الأسر الحاكمة
- (6) متطور - دقيق
- (7) أساسي
- (8) واقع
- (9) منحدرات
- (10) ضخ - أثري
- (11) ابتكارات
- (12) تمهد الطريق
- (13) هندسي
- (14) إنجازات - عجائب
- (15) سادة - أساتذة
- (16) الميكانيكا
- (17) عصر - حقبة

During the **Industrial**⁽¹⁸⁾ **Revolution**⁽¹⁹⁾, Egypt began importing **advanced**⁽²⁰⁾ **machinery**⁽²¹⁾ from Europe. Cotton **gins**⁽²²⁾ and steam engines **revolutionized**⁽²³⁾ **agriculture**⁽²⁴⁾ and **transportation**⁽²⁵⁾. However, not all changes were **smooth**⁽²⁶⁾ – some traditional **crafts**⁽²⁷⁾ **disappeared**⁽²⁸⁾ as machines took over.

Today, Egypt continues to **adopt**⁽²⁹⁾ modern technology, from **computerized**⁽³⁰⁾ factories to renewable energy systems. While some fear that machines may replace human labor, others argue they enhance productivity. As one engineer remarked, “Machines are tools, not replacements for human skills.”

Now, Egypt is also working with advanced technology like artificial intelligence and robots. Government initiatives and private-sector partnerships are driving forward projects in automation and smart infrastructure. Yet, even as the country charges full steam ahead into the digital age, it remains deeply connected to its past—museums now use 3D scanning to preserve ancient artifacts, blending old and new. As one historian said, “Egypt is strong because it respects the past and looks to the future.” By mixing old and new, Egypt shows how machines can connect history with modern life.

(18) صناعي

(19) ثورة

(20) متطور

(21) آلات

(22) فخلج (القطن)

(23) يُحدث تغييراً جذرياً

(24) الزراعة

(25) النقل

(26) سلس - سهل

(27) جزف - مهن

(28) يختفي

(29) يتبنى

(30) يلغى باستخدام الكمبيوتر

2 Listening Text

• on Lesson 2 SB page 27

Technical Support Call

Technician: TechHelp Support, this is Rami speaking. How can I assist you today?

Customer: Hi Rami, this is Rania from Apex Marketing. Our printer isn't working **properly**⁽¹⁾ and we have an important **presentation**⁽²⁾ tomorrow.

Technician: I understand your **urgency**⁽³⁾, Rania. Let me help you **troubleshoot**⁽⁴⁾ this. First, please check if the printer is properly connected to your computer.

Customer: Okay, yes, all the **cables**⁽⁵⁾ are **secure**⁽⁶⁾.

Technician: Great. Now, I need you to open the printer settings on your computer. Can you see the printer **listed**⁽⁷⁾ there?

Customer: Yes, but it shows as '**offline**⁽⁸⁾'.

Technician: **Perfect**⁽⁹⁾, that's the **issue**⁽¹⁰⁾. Please **right-click**⁽¹¹⁾ on the printer icon and **select**⁽¹²⁾ 'Use Printer **Online**⁽¹³⁾'. Then, try printing a test page.

Customer: Wow, it's working now! Thank you so much, Rami.

Technician: You're welcome! Now, to **prevent**⁽¹⁴⁾ this from happening again, I recommend **restarting**⁽¹⁵⁾ both your computer and printer once a week. Also, please don't **turn off**⁽¹⁶⁾ the printer while it's **processing**⁽¹⁷⁾ jobs.

Customer: Got it. Should I do anything else?

Technician: I suggest keeping the printer **drivers**⁽¹⁸⁾ **updated**⁽¹⁹⁾. Our website has the latest **versions**⁽²⁰⁾. Is there anything else I can help you with today?

Customer: No, that's perfect. Thanks again!

Technician: My pleasure, Rania. Have a great day!

(1) بشكل مناسب

(2) عرض تقديمي

(3) أهمية - ضرورة مُبْخَة

(4) يحدد المشكلة

(5) كابلات التوصيل

(6) سليم - مُخْكَم

(7) مُذْرَج بالقائمة

(8) غير متصل

(9) رائع - مثالي

(10) مشكلة - قضية

(11) انقر على الزر الأيمن

(12) يختار - يحدد

(13) متصل بالإنترنت

(14) يمنع

(15) يعيد تشغيل

(16) يطفى/يغلق

(17) يقوم بمهمة - يعالج

(18) ملفات التعريف

(19) محدث

(20) نسخ - إصدارات



SB pages 29 : 31

PART TWO

Lesson

3

The Role of Machines

I LISTENING

on Lesson 3 SB page 29

The Role of Machines

Machines play an important role in our daily lives. They save time, reduce **human effort**⁽¹⁾, and make many **tasks**⁽²⁾ easier. At the hospital, for example, doctors use machines to **monitor**⁽³⁾ patients' hearts and **give accurate diagnoses**⁽⁴⁾. Last week, a doctor said that machines helped him **detect illnesses**⁽⁵⁾ more quickly. Nurses also mentioned that machines **made their work smoother**⁽⁶⁾ and **reduced mistakes**⁽⁷⁾.

In factories, machines are always running. They cut, **assemble**⁽⁸⁾, and **pack products**⁽⁹⁾ at a **speed**⁽¹⁰⁾ no human can **match**⁽¹¹⁾.

A factory manager explained that machines could work all day without getting tired. However, he also warned that humans should check the machines regularly.

At school, students learn that machines are both helpful and dangerous. A teacher told them that machines could save lives but might also cause accidents if not used carefully. Another student added that machines were changing the future of jobs.

Although machines are powerful, they still need **human control**⁽¹²⁾. People say that machines cannot replace **creativity**⁽¹³⁾ or compassion.

أهم نقاط على
تصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) مجهود بشري
- (2) مهمات
- (3) يراقب
- (4) يعطى تشخيصات دقيقة
- (5) يكتشف الأمراض
- (6) يجعل عملهم أكثر سلاسة
- (7) قلل الأخطاء
- (8) يجمع
- (9) يعبئ المنتجات
- (10) سرعة
- (11) يضاهي / يماثل
- (12) تحكم بشري
- (13) إبداع

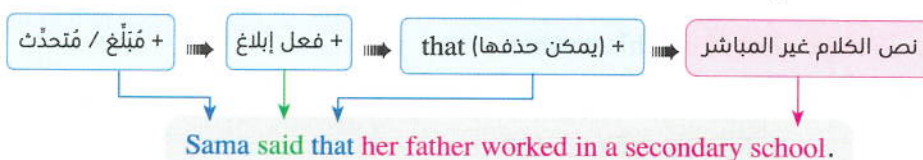
II LANGUAGE

A

Reported Speech Statement

الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ تكون الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر من :



٢ تبدأ جملة الكلام غير المباشر بالمُبَلِّغ (المتحدث) :

- Mr Omar said that he was traveling to Cairo the next day.

٣ يوضع فعل الإبلاغ بعد المَبْلَغ، وهناك نوعان من أفعال الإبلاغ :

أ. أفعال إبلاغ لابد أن يأتي بعدها المُخَاطَب مثل :

- - **told** - أخبر / قال ر - **reminded** ذكّر
- **warned** - أذّن - **persuaded / convinced** - أقتنع + obj. المُخَاطَب.

والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول (me – him – her – it – you – us – them) :

- Mohammed **told** Omar that he wanted to go swimming.
- Nada **reminded** me that we had to get up early the day after.

ب. أفعال قول لا يأتي بعدها المُخَاطَب مثل :

- أبدي ملاحظة **remarked** - صاح **shouted** - أقر **admitted** - قال **said**
→ - **reported** - أبلغ / ذكر - **answered** - أجاب - **replied** - رد - **explained** - أوضح
... همس **whispered** - هتف **cried** - قال شاكياً **complained**

- Yara **said** that her mother was very busy.
- The worker **complained** that the weather had been too hot the day before.

٤ لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص (".....") في الكلام غير المباشر:

- "I want to buy a new tablet", said Rodayna. (مباشر)
- Rodayna said that she wanted to buy a new tablet. (غير مباشر)

٥ يمكن أن تُستخدم **(that)** أو تُحذف مع الفعل **(say)** ويُفضّل وجودها بعد أفعال الإبلاغ الأخرى:

- Leen said **(that)** she could help me.
- Bassem explained that he had an important meeting.

Mini Test 1

● Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Rania me that I should buy mom a present.
a. said b. told c. reminded d. b & c
2. Mr Ayman that Mostafa was polite.
a. said b. told c. reminded d. b & c
3. I Ahmed should call his mother.
a. said b. told c. reminded d. b & c
4. Leen said I didn't need to help her.
a. that b. what c. no word d. a & c

٦ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطَب:

- Karim said, "My mother will give me a nice present". (مباشر)
- Karim said that his mother would give him a nice present. (غير مباشر)
- Mariam said, "My mother will give me a nice present". (مباشر)
- Mariam said that her mother would give her a nice present. (غير مباشر)

ويمكن الاستعانة بالجدول التالي للمساعدة في فهم تحويلات الضمائر حسب السياق:

مباشر	غير مباشر	غير مباشر	غير مباشر
I	he / she / you / I	mine	his / hers / yours / mine
we	they / we	ours	theirs / ours
me	him / her / you / me	you (فاعل)	I / he / she / they / we / you
us	them / us	you (مفعول)	me / him / her / them / us
my	his / her / your / my	your	my/ his / her / their / our
our	their / our	yours	mine/ his / hers / theirs / ours / yours

Mini Test 2

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Noha said that was in grade three secondary.
 - a. hers
 - b. she
 - c. her
 - d. we
- I told Ashraf that house was
 - a. he
 - b. my
 - c. him
 - d. mine
- "I'd like to borrow your bike." - Ayman said that he would like to borrow bike.
 - a. yours
 - b. her
 - c. my
 - d. mine
- "The red book is not yours, Rodayna." - Ahmed told Rodayna the red book was not
 - a. hers
 - b. his
 - c. mine
 - d. ours
- "We are leaving now." - Omar said were leaving then.
 - a. she
 - b. him
 - c. I
 - d. they
- "You refused to help me." - Mum said that had refused to help her.
 - a. mine
 - b. I
 - c. me
 - d. my

٧ تختلف بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان في الكلام غير المباشر عن الكلام المباشر:

- "These chairs will be moved here tomorrow", said Nada. (مباشر)
- Nada said that those chairs would be moved there the following day. (غير مباشر)
- "I haven't finished this report yet", explained Youssef. (مباشر)
- Youssef explained that he hadn't finished that report by then. (غير مباشر)

ويحتوي الجدول التالي على أهم تحويلات الظروف (تساعدك علي تحديد الزمن في أسئلة الاختياري):

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
now	then / at that time	tonight	that night
this	that	today	that day
these	those	yet	by then
here	there	the day before yesterday	two days before
ago	before / earlier	the day after tomorrow	in two days' time
last week	the week before the previous week	next week	the week after the following week
yesterday	the day before the previous day	tomorrow	the day after the following day

Mini Test 3

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "I am doing my homework now.", said Ali.

Ali said that he was doing his homework

- a. now b. today c. then d. tonight

2. Last Monday, Amira said she would visit us

- a. today b. tonight c. the day before d. the day after

3. She said that she hadn't called her uncle two weeks

- a. before b. after c. earlier d. a & c

4. Omar said that he didn't go very often.

- a. here b. there c. her d. their

5. Omar said that he didn't come very often.

- a. here b. there c. her d. their

٨ تتحول الأزمنة للأبعد - أي يتحول كل زمن إلي الزمن المقابل له في الماضي:

- "My wife **likes** green salad", said Magdi. (مباشر- مضارع بسيط)

Magdi said that his wife **liked** green salad. (غير مباشر- ماضي بسيط)

- My cousin said, "I **am watching** an action film". (مباشر- مضارع مستمر)

My cousin said that she **was watching** an action film. (غير مباشر- ماضي مستمر)

ويحتوي الجدول التالي علي ملخص تحويلات الأزمنة:

Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر
play / plays (مضارع بسيط)	played (ماضي بسيط)
played (ماضي بسيط)	had played / played (ماضي تام / بسيط)

am / is / are (فعل مساعد)

was / were

was / were (فعل أساسي)

was / were / had been

have / has (فعل أساسي)

had

had (فعل أساسي)

had / had had

can / will / may

could / would / might

shall

should / would

must

must / had to / would have to

needn't

didn't have to / wouldn't have to

لاحظ الأزمنة في الجمل التالية :

- He explained that he **ate** fish on Friday. (NOT: eats)
- She said (that) she **was having** lunch. (NOT: is having)
- Rody said that she **had done** the shopping. (NOT: has done)
- Bassem said that they **had been living** there for five years. (NOT: have been)
- He said that he **had met** his boss. (NOT: has met)
- I promised Laila that I **would help** her. (NOT: will help)

يمكن أن يبقى الماضي البسيط كما هو بشرط ألا يؤدي ذلك إلى غموض في المعنى :

- He said that he **arrived / had arrived** on Friday.

لاحظ تحويلات الفعل الناقص (must) في الكلام غير المباشر :

أ. تبقى (must) كما هي عند التعبير عن القوانين :

- "Drivers **must hold** a driving licence ", said Omar. (مباشر)
- Omar said that drivers **must hold** a driving licence. (غير مباشر)

ب. تتحول (must) إلى (had to) إذا كانت تدل على ضرورة في المضارع :

- "You **must call** the manager **now**, Ali", said Aya. (مباشر)
- Aya told Ali that he **had to call** the manager **then**. (غير مباشر)

ج. تتحول (must) إلى (would have to) إذا كانت تدل على ضرورة في المستقبل :

- "I **must return** home **next month**", said Tom. (مباشر)
- Tom said that he **would have to return** home the following month. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 4

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Rami promised me that he buy me a bike the following week.
a. can b. must c. would d. may
2. "I'm exhausted," said Eman. - Eman said that she exhausted.
a. is b. would be c. will be d. was
3. We told him that we after school the day before.
a. played b. had played c. was played d. had been played
4. "I had lunch outdoors." - My father said he lunch outdoors.
a. had b. had had c. was had d. a & b
5. "I must leave now." - He said that he leave then.
a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to

6. "I must leave tomorrow." - He said that he the following day.
 a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to
7. "I must leave now." - He said that he leave now.
 a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to
8. "I must leave tomorrow." - He said that he leave tomorrow.
 a. had to b. must c. will have to d. b&c

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لا يوجد تحويل للأزمنة الماضي التام والتام المستمر :

- "I **had returned** home by midday", said Ahmed. (مباشر- ماضي تام)
 - Ahmed said that he **had returned** home by midday. (غير مباشر- ماضي تام)

٢ لا يوجد تحويل لصيغة الماضي من الأفعال الناقصة:

→ **would – could – might – should – would rather – had better**

- "You **should study** hard, Samar", said mum. (مباشر)
 - Mum told Samar that she **should study** hard. (غير مباشر)

٣ يبقى الماضي البسيط كما هو بعد التعبيرات التالية:

→ **If – would rather – I wish – It is time ...**

- "It is time you **went** home, Tarek ", said Uncle Yahia. (مباشر)
 - Uncle Yahia told Tarek that it was time he **went** home. (غير مباشر)

٤ تبقي (used to) الدالة على العادة دون تحويل:

- She said, "I **used to get up late**".
 - She said that she **used to get up late**. (NOT: had used)

٥ لا يتغير الزمن إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة ثابتة لا تتغير:

- "Water **boils** at 100°C," she said. (مباشر)
 - She said that water **boils** at 100°C. (غير مباشر)
 لكن يمكن أن تتغير الأزمنة أو لا تتغير مع الجمل التي تدل على حقائق نسبية قد تتغير:
 - "Lake Nasser **is** the largest man-made lake," he said. (مباشر)
 - He said that Lake Nasser **is/was** the largest man-made lake. (غير مباشر)

٦ لا تتغير ظروف الزمان والمكان والأزمنة إذا كان المدي الزمني أو المكان لم يتغير:

- **Ten minutes ago**, Aya said to me, "**I will call you next Friday**".
 - **Ten minutes ago**, Aya told me that she **will call me next Friday**.
 في المثال السابق، أوضح وجود التعبير (ten minutes ago) أن الجمعة القادمة لم تأت بعد، فلم يتغير ظرف الزمان (next Friday) ولا الزمن (will call).

٧ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل:

→ **said (a moment ago / a minute ago / a short time ago / just now / etc.)**

- "We **will go** out soon", Areej said **a moment ago**.
 - A **moment ago**, Areej said that they will go out soon.

٨ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل الإبلاغ في المضارع:

- Walid **says to** me, "My parents **work** hard."

- Walid **tells** me that his parents **work** hard.

٩ تُحذف عبارات الموافقة أو الاتفاق مثل (Yes / Sure/ Of course ...) ويستخدم فعل إبلاغ يدل على

الموافقة أو الاتفاق مثل:

- **agreed / approved / answered in affirmative** etc.

- "Yes, I have received your email," said Sama.

(مباشر)

- Sama **agreed** that she had received my email.

(غير مباشر)

١٠ تُحذف عبارات الرفض أو عدم الاتفاق مثل (No / Sorry...) ويستخدم فعل إبلاغ يدل على الرفض أو عدم

الاتفاق مثل:

- **denied / disapproved / answered in negative** etc.

- "No, I didn't see Ali today," said Ahmed.

(مباشر)

- Ahmed **denied** that he had seen Ali that day.

(غير مباشر)

Mini Test 5

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Omar said a moment ago that he'll see the dentist

a. the next day

b. that day

c. tomorrow

d. the following day

2. Ahmed that he had eaten my biscuits, but I am sure he did it.

a. agreed

b. approved

c. denied

d. answered

3. "It is time we went home." - He said it was time they home.

a. went

b. had gone

c. was gone

d. had been gone

4. "As a child, I used to like cartoons." - He said that he to like cartoons as a child.

a. had used

b. used

c. was used

d. had been used

5. "Lions eat meat." - She said that lions meat.

a. eat

b. are eating

c. had eaten

d. were eating

6. "Cairo is the largest city in Africa." - He said that Cairo the largest city in Africa.

a. is

b. was

c. had been

d. a & b

7. "I will call you tomorrow." - Ten minutes ago, I told Sami that I him tomorrow.

a. would call

b. called

c. will call

d. had called

8. Esraa says she tired. Will you let her go home?

a. is

b. was

c. had been

d. have been

Multiple choice Notes ملاحظات تفيد في حل اسئلة الاختيار من متعدد

١ التعبيرات الزمنية التالية في جمل الكلام غير المباشر تدل علي أن الاختيار الصحيح ماضي تام:

→ the (day / week / ...) before - the previous (day / week / ...)

→ the last (day / week / ...) - by then - before

- The old man said that he abroad **by then**.

- a. hasn't travelled b. didn't travel c. hadn't travelled d. wasn't travelling

٢ لاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية التالية :

→ the (day / week / ...) after - the following (day / week / ...)

→ the next (day / week / ...)

تدل التعبيرات السابقة في جمل الكلام غير المباشر أن الإختيار الصحيح قد يكون:

→ would+inf. ... - (was / were + inf. + ing) - (was / were + going to + inf.)

- Amir said that he us **the following Friday**.

- a. will visit b. had visited c. was visiting d. is going to visit

٣ تدل [then/at that time (moment)] في جمل الكلام غير المباشر علي أن الاختيار الصحيح ماضي مستمر:

- Reham said that she the housework **then**.

- a. is doing b. was doing c. would do d. had done

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting Started

- The shop assured me that the freezer the next day.
a. would deliver b. will deliver
c. would be delivering d. would be delivered
- Dad us not to tell lies.
a. said b. said to c. told d. suggested
- Reem said that she challenge Haidey to a tennis match.
a. can b. could c. shall d. will
- She informed me that my friend Haytham a terrible accident while he was driving to North Sinai.
a. has had b. had c. will be having d. is having
- I told her that she a bad mistake and that she should be cautious later on.
a. had made b. is making c. would make d. has made
- Rokaya she was ready for the talent contest.
a. told b. said c. wondered d. informed
- Mohamed complained that the service at that restaurant bad.
a. has been b. is c. was d. would be
- The therapist said that he would inform me of the report results
a. next week b. last week
c. the following week d. the week before

9. Hakim told me that he his lesson at that moment.
a. was revising b. has been revising c. will revise d. was revised
10. The boss said that the company efficient and punctual workers the next month.
a. had promoted b. is promoting
c. is going to promote d. was going to promote
11. The social studies teacher told us that Cairo the most populated city in Africa.
a. is being b. is c. has been d. will be
12. Yesterday's newspaper said that he a three-year contract.
a. had signed b. would be signed c. is signing d. has signed
13. He said that it was raining
a. here b. then c. now d. tomorrow
14. My parents promised me that they me a laptop if I succeeded.
a. might buy b. will buy c. buy d. have bought
15. He wondered how many goals they had scored week.
a. this b. that c. the d. it

2 Special Cases

16. I was told that a primary school in the neighbouring town.
a. has built b. has been built c. had been built d. had built
17. My mom told me that we to the club until we finished our project.
a. don't go b. won't go c. hadn't gone d. wouldn't go
18. Ahmed says that he the summer holiday in Dahab when he has finished exams.
a. has spent b. will spend c. would spend d. had spent
19. Ali said that he about that accident before he returned home.
a. hadn't told b. isn't told c. hadn't been told d. won't tell
20. "Don't park here; it is forbidden". - The gardener said we park there.
a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. must
21. The teacher told us that the earth round the sun.
a. go b. went c. goes d. going
22. Mona promised that she..... home tomorrow.
a. be b. would have been c. will have been d. will be
23. Monera has just told Amira that they to their friend's wedding tonight.
a. would go b. have gone c. were going d. are going
24. He said a moment ago that hehis car last month.
a. sold b. had sold c. would sold d. sell
25. He said just now that he a new story.
a. is reading b. was reading c. had read d. was read
26. "It's rather late and it's time for you to go to sleep." - The mother that the children are still awake.
a. remembered b. inquired c. promised d. complained
27. At the wedding party yesterday, the bride saidthe happiest day of her life.
a. today was b. that day was c. yesterday had d. that day had

28. The hostess inquires if we coffee.
 a. liked b. had liked c. like d. likes
29. Basma has just remarked that she yet.
 a. decided b. had decided c. has decided d. hasn't decided
30. Amr says he in a bank in the city centre. He enjoys his job.
 a. had worked b. worked c. works d. would work

3 Check your understanding

31. "You refused to help me, Omar." The pronoun 'me' refers to
 a. he b. Omar c. the addressee d. the speaker
32. "You refused to help me, Omar." -
 a. Omar said that I had refused to help him.
 b. Omar said that I have refused to help him.
 c. I said that Omar had refused to help me.
 d. I said that I had refused to help Omar.
33. He said he was travelling to Paris the following day. - ".....", he said.
 a. I was travelling to Paris yesterday.
 b. I am travelling to Paris today.
 c. I will travelling to Paris tomorrow.
 d. I am travelling to Paris tomorrow.
34. "I might take two days off." - Maha said
 a. she might take two days off.
 b. she might have taken two days off.
 c. she had taken two days off.
 d. a & c
35. "I had returned home by midnight." - Ali said that he
 a. had been returning home by midnight.
 b. had returned home by midnight.
 c. was returning home by midnight.
 d. was being returned home by midnight.
36. "I will lend you the money you need, Esraa."
 - Ahmed told Esraa that
 a. he will lend her the money she needs.
 b. she will lend him the money he needs.
 c. he would lend her the money she needed.
 d. he would lend her the money she needs.
37. An hour ago, Menna said, "I am going shopping next Friday."
 - An hour ago, Menna said
 a. she was going shopping next Friday.
 b. she is going shopping next Friday.
 c. she was going shopping the next Friday.
 d. she was going shopping the following Friday.

B

Reported (Commands & Requests)

جمل الأمر والاقترحات والطلب في الكلام غير المباشر

١ تبدأ جملة الأمر المثبت (افعل) في الكلام المباشر بالفعل في المصدر (inf.) :

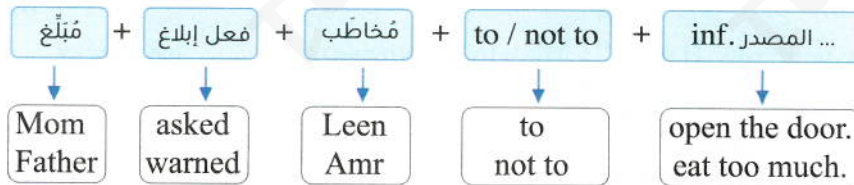
- "Open the door, Leen", said mum. = Mum said, "Open the door, Leen".

٢ تبدأ جملة النهي (لا تفعل) في الكلام المباشر بـ (Don't / Never + inf.) :

- "Don't / Never eat too much, Amr", said father.

= Father said, "Don't / Never eat too much, Amr".

٣ تتكون جملة الأمر / النهي في الكلام غير المباشر من :



٤ يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب ويستخدم بعده المخاطب (اسم أو ضمير مفعول):

- حَذَّر warned - ذكَّر reminded - أمر commanded - أمر ordered - طلب asked - أخبر / قال told
- ساعد helped - أراد wanted - دعي invited - أمر instructed - شجَّع encouraged - نصح advised
..... المُخَاطَب + obj. هدد threatened - توقع expected - علَّم taught

- I told Sama to help her mother.

- Grandpa advised me to work hard at school.

٥ لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص (".....") في الأمر أو النهي في صيغة غير المباشر:

- "Never play with matches", said my mother. (مباشر)

- My mother warned me not to play with matches. (غير مباشر)

٦ تُستخدم (to + inf.) بمعنى (أن ...) في الإثبات:

- I told him to do more exercise.

٧ تُستخدم (not to + inf.) بمعنى (ألا ...) في النفي:

- The officer ordered the soldiers not to leave their places.

٨ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخَاطَب (راجع تحويلات الضمائر بهذه الوحدة):

- Amira said, "Lend me your camera, Ali". (مباشر)

Amira asked Ali to lend her his camera. (غير مباشر)

٩ تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان (راجع تحويلات الظروف بهذه الوحدة):

- "Bring this book with you tomorrow", said Miss Mona. (مباشر)

- Miss Mona asked me to bring that book with me the following day. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 1

● Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Leen asked me my money on clothes.
a. to waste b. to wasting c. not to waste d. not to wasting
- Leen asked me good use of my money.
a. to make b. to making c. not to make d. not to making
- My mother asked Aya the phone.
a. that she answered b. if she answer
c. what she answered d. to answer
- The head teacher told to do our best.
a. we b. us c. our d. ourselves
- "Put away your toys, Hamza." - Mum told Hamza to put toys away.
a. he b. him c. his d. himself
- "Send the email now." - He asked me to send the email
a. then b. than c. earlier d. ago

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ تحويل جمل النصيحة :

- "You **should study** hard, Malak", said Mr Hassan. (مباشر)
- Mr Hassan advised / told Malak **to study** hard. (غير مباشر)
- "If I were you, I'd get up early", said Aya. (مباشر)
- Aya advised me **to get** up early. (غير مباشر)

٢ لاحظ تحويل جمل الطلب :

- "Can you lend me some money, Omar ?", said Mustafa. (مباشر)
- Mustafa asked / wanted Omar **to lend** him some money. (غير مباشر)

٣ عند تحويل جمل الاقتراح إلى الكلام غير المباشر يمكن استخدام الفعلين (suggest / recommend) ويأتي بعدهما (inf. + ing) :

- "What about going to the cinema ?", said Doaa. (مباشر)
- Doaa suggested / recommended **going** to the cinema. (غير مباشر)

٤ في حالة وجود جملة بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات التالية

- **suggest** يقترح - **recommend** يوصي - **ask** - **insist** يصمم - **advise** ينصح
- **It is / was (vital / essential / crucial / necessary / important ...)** ضروري
- يكون فعلها (inf. / should + inf.)

- Ahmed suggested/ advised that Sama **take** a rest.
- = Ahmed suggested / advised that Sama **should take** a rest.
- It is important that Omar **see** a doctor. = It is important that Omar **should see** a doctor.
- It is essential that he **be** fit. = It is essential that he **should be** fit.

٥ تتحول (come here) إلى (go there) في الكلام غير المباشر:

- "Come here, Emma," Said mum. (مباشر)
- Mum asked Emma to **go there**. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 2

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I suggested that she the conference as our representative.
a. attending b. attend c. had attended d. to attend
2. It is important that he careful.
a. be b. was c. has been d. is being
3. Omar asked Nada helped her mother.
a. if b. what c. whether d. a & c
4. It is essential that he hard.
a. works b. work c. should work d. b & c

General Exercises On Language

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. Our chemistry teacher advised us experiments to understand well.
a. does b. doing c. would do d. to do
2. My friend me to go and see a doctor.
a. threatened b. forbade c. advised d. stopped
3. She me to turn off the lights.
a. insisted b. remarked c. reminded d. denied
4. Shady told me that again.
a. do b. don't do c. not to do d. did
5. The doctor me to walk 5 km every day.
a. said b. told c. spoke d. talked
6. The teacher the students to stop running in the corridor.
a. recommended b. ordered c. suggested d. avoided
7. The policeman warned me go near the fire.
a. not to b. to c. if d. that
8. Malakgoing shopping at the new mall.
a. advised b. demanded c. suggested d. warned
9. He told me be silly.
a. whether b. that c. to d. not to
10. The tour guide the tourists not to go into the desert on their own.
a. encouraged b. advised c. warned d. b & c
11. The teacher to punish me if I didn't keep quiet.
a. advised b. promised c. told d. threatened
12. We want the windows before Friday.
a. be washed b. to wash c. washing d. to be washed

2 Special Cases

13. My friend recommends "The Mask of Gold" as it is interesting.
a. reading b. to read c. read d. not reading

14. My friend suggests for the next train because it is crowded.
a. not waiting b. to waiting c. we waited d. don't wait
15. The policeman the rash driver not to drive so fast.
a. made b. wondered c. instructed d. said
16. Ahmed recommended me on the new course.
a. enrolling b. should enrol c. enrol d. to enrol
17. Malik advised that I my bed.
a. make b. makes c. to make d. making
18. It's important that we rules.
a. followed b. had followed c. should follow d. follows
19. It is necessary that every student a uniform.
a. wear b. wore c. had worn d. was wearing
20. Mido trained attack thieves.
a. to his dog b. his dog c. his dog to d. to his dog to
21. The doctors recommended that she a holiday.
a. take b. takes c. has taken d. will take
22. My professor suggested a chemistry course.
a. that I take b. me to taking c. to take d. me take
23. They demanded that the manager something about the situation.
a. do b. does c. has done d. were doing
24. It is important that each patient comfortable.
a. was b. be c. were d. had
25. The police requested that Mamdouh out of the burned house.
a. has moved b. will move c. move d. moves
26. We insist that more money in education.
a. to be invested b. has invested c. was investing d. be invested
27. The boss asks that you early for your first day of work.
a. to be b. be c. were d. had been
28. People demand that the hospital
a. be renewed b. was renewed c. renews d. renew
29. The psychologists recommended that the criminal in prison.
a. puts b. is put c. be put d. has put
30. Mohammed that his daughter take the medicine in time.
a. insisted b. said c. told d. wondered

3 Check your understanding

31. Choose the correct option to put the sentence into indirect speech: Ali said, "Divide your goals into smaller steps."
a. Ali told to me to divide my goals into smaller steps.
b. Ali told me to dividing my goals into smaller steps
c. Ali told me to divide my goals into smaller steps.
d. Ali told to divide my goals into smaller steps.
32. "Stop shouting at me, Rokaya." - Nada asked Rokaya
a. to shout at her. b. not to shout at her.
c. if she could shout at her. d. why she shouted at her.

33. "Give me back my money." - I wanted Omar to give
 a. him back my money. b. me back his money.
 c. me back my money. d. him back his money.
34. "Come here at five tomorrow, Mai." - When we were in the club, I told Mai to
 a. come here at five the following day. b. come there at five the following day.
 c. go here at five the following day. d. go there at five the following day.
35. "If I were you, I'd accept the offer." - I advised Ahmed
 a. to accept the offer. b. that he accept the offer.
 c. that he should accept the offer. d. a, b & c
36. "Do you mind helping me, Sama?" - I asked Sama
 a. to help me. b. if she helped me. c. that she helped me. d. a & c
37. "What about going on a boat trip?" - Ahmed suggested
 a. to go on a boat trip. b. that we go on a boat trip.
 c. going on a boat trip. d. b & c

Stop Here !

تدريب تلقائي على القواعد اللغوية

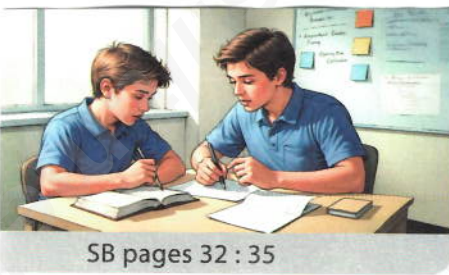
• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. **SB** "I am studying English now," she said. (She said...)
2. **SB** "We live in Cairo," they said to me. (They told me...)
3. **SB** "I will call you tomorrow," he promised. (He promised...)
4. **SB** "Don't be late," my mother said to me. (My mother told ...)
5. **SB** "We can finish this project today," they said. (They said...)
6. "I have never seen such a beautiful view," said Amira. (that)
7. "I can't come to the meeting because I am unwell," said Zeinab. (Zeinab explained ...)
8. "We won't have finished the project by tomorrow," said the students. (The students admitted that ...)
9. "I bought this book last week," said Ayman. (that)
10. "We have been waiting here for over an hour," said the group. (complained that ...)
11. "I might move to Canada next year," said Yasmeen. (that)
12. "You always help me when I need it," Fatma said to Mohammed. (told)
13. "I have not received any emails today," said Walid. (stated)
14. "I will do my best to succeed," said Rodayna. (that)
15. "I had never traveled abroad before 2023," said Adam. (reported)
16. "I will never forget your kindness, aunt Noha" said Mariam. (that)
17. "We have seen this movie several times," said Malak. (complained that)
18. "This place is more beautiful than I have expected," said Lujain. (said that)
19. "I don't have any siblings," said Taha. (that)

20. "We were discussing the project until late last night," said Ahmed. (that)
21. "I will send you the details as soon as I can," said Nadeen. (told me)
22. "I wasn't feeling well yesterday," said Ashraf. (complained that)
23. "You have always supported me," Zeina said to Rodayna. (told)
24. "Be careful when crossing the road," Malak told her brother. (warned)
25. "Don't forget to lock the door," Rodayna told her brother. (reminded)
26. "Don't give up easily," the coach told the players. (encouraged)
27. "Don't leave your belongings unattended," the officer said. (cautioned)
28. "Don't make so much noise," said the librarian. (asked)
29. "Don't open the windows," the driver said to the passengers. (instructed)
30. "Don't run in the corridor," the supervisor said to the children. (forbade)
31. "Don't touch the electric wires," the teacher said to the students. (warned)
32. "Don't waste water," the mother told her children. (advised)
33. "Never park here again," the guard said. (ordered)
34. "Please remain seated," the flight attendant said to the passengers. (requested)
35. "Please show me your ID," the security guard said to Mohammed. (requested)
36. "Please, help me with my bags," said Joury to Adam. (begged)
37. "Read the instructions carefully," the examiner said. (directed)
38. "Submit your assignments before the deadline," said Mr Walid. (reminded)
39. "Switch off the lights when you leave," Mr Rasheedy said. (reminded)
40. "Take your medicine regularly," Dr Ahmed said to his patient. (urged)
41. "Try to stay positive," Yasmeeen said to Reem. (encouraged)
42. "Turn off your phones during the meeting," the manager said to the staff. (instructed)

A bit advanced

43. "They should submit the forms before this Friday," said the supervisor. (insisted that)
44. She told me her aunt was very ill the day before. (My aunt ..)
45. I told them they owed me a favour. (direct speech)
46. You told me you hadn't finished by then. (I haven't)
47. "You made fun of me by your trick," said Sama. (Sama said that ...)
48. "You made fun of me by your trick, Ahmed," said Sama. (Sama told ...)
49. "I should have prepared well for the exam," said Hossam. (Hossam regretted ...)
50. "Come and join us for dinner," Nour said to Aya. (invited)
51. "Don't eat too much junk food," Ahmed said to Zeina. (discouraged)
52. "Never arrive late for class," Mr Ashraf told the students. (insisted that)
53. "Take an umbrella with you," Nadeen said to Rodayna. (suggested that)
54. "Call me if you need any help of any kind," Hossam said to his friend. (offered)



SB pages 32 : 35

PART THREE

Lessons

4 & 5

► Our Machine-Driven
World
► For or Against?

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

appliance (n)	جهاز	household (n - adj)	أسرة - منزلي
automated (adj)	آلي - مُمَكِّن	standstill (adj)	ساكن / ثابت
chores (n)	أعمال - فروض يومية	track(ed) (n - v)	ممر - يراقب / يتبع
efficiency (n)	كفاءة	pack(ed) (v)	يُعبئ / يحزم أمتعته

2 Important Vocabulary

accurately (adv)	بدقة	powered (adj)	مدعوم - يعمل بـ
alarm (n)	منبه	pressure (n)	ضغط
argumentative (adj)	جدلي - خاص بالرأي	production (n)	الإنتاج
autopilot (n)	الطيار الآلي	products (n)	المنتجات
balanced (adj)	متوازن	rate (n)	مُعَدَّل
banned (adj)	ممنوع - محظور	react(ed) (v)	يتصرف
cheating (n)	الغش	recent (adj)	حديث
choice (n)	اختيار	require(d) (v)	يتطلب - يستلزم
comfort (n)	راحة	routine (n)	نمط الحياة اليومي
detect(ed) (v)	يكشف	rule(d) (n - v)	قاعدة - يحكم - يتحكم في
document (ed) (n - v)	وثيقة - يوثق	scanner (n)	جهاز الماسح (الضوئي)
double(d) (v)	يتضاعف - يُضاعف	shape(d) (n - v)	شَكْل - يُشَكِّل
entertain(ed) (v)	يُستلي	smartwatch (n)	الساعة الذكية
evidence (n)	دليل	speed (n)	سرعة
fail(ed) (v)	يفشل في	spellcheck (n)	أداة التدقيق الإملائي
fairness (n)	عدالة - حيادية	struggle(d) (n - v)	كفاح - يكافح / يناضل
imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل	treatment (n)	علاج - معاملة
influence(d) (n - v)	تأثير - يؤثر في	unclear (adj)	غير واضح
kettle (n)	غلاية (مياه)	vacuum cleaner (n)	المكنسة الكهربائية
medical (adj)	طبي	various (adj)	متنوع - متعدد
meeting (n)	اجتماع	viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر
monitor(ed) (n - v)	شاشة عرض - يراقب - يري	workplace (n)	مكان العمل

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- The lighting system in this smart building works on a/an schedule without human control.
a. household b. balanced c. automated d. various
- The argument came to a after both sides refused to compromise.
a. medical b. standstill c. banned d. argumentative
- Electricity use in Aswan increases during summer months due to higher demand.
a. household b. balanced c. automated d. various
- The coach uses devices to his players' speed and performance.
a. deal b. pack c. react d. track
- This smart kitchen uses less energy; it saves time and effort.
a. appliance b. efficiency c. treatment d. evidence
- Make sure everything is before the trip.
a. tracked b. doubled c. reacted d. packed
- Sama's quick response and office skills shows she has great
a. treatment b. evidence c. efficiency d. appliance
- My mother usually does her, like washing and cleaning, in the morning.
a. pressure b. chores c. choice d. autopilot

2 Important vocabulary

- Mariam bought cleaning tools, including, mops and sponges, from the store.
a. household b. automated c. balanced d. standstill
- Being a/an student, Zeinab refused to accept the teacher's explanation.
a. standstill b. argumentative c. medical d. banned
- Most students are under during exam season.
a. choice b. chores c. pressure d. autopilot
- This modern car offers both and safety for long-distance travel.
a. comfort b. product c. production d. importance
- Law emphasizes the importance of in a trial.
a. influence b. fairness c. charge d. viewpoint
- Technology should serve us, not us.
a. rule b. shape c. struggle d. detect
- The teacher noticed the student was from AI tools during the test.
a. cheating b. tracking c. scanning d. documenting
- This job you to work at weekends.
a. entertains b. imagines c. requires d. fails
- A meal that includes carbs, protein, and vegetables is a/an one.
a. automated b. balanced c. household d. various
- Smoking is by law in all public places.
a. medical b. standstill c. argumentative d. banned
- Mr Mohammed was so tired that he drove home on, not remembering the route.
a. chores b. pressure c. choice d. autopilot

20. The of the internet connection affects the time of file downloads.
a. product b. speed c. production d. comfort
21. Some dishonest businessmen were arrested on serious criminal
a. comforts b. influences c. charges d. fairness
22. Teachers help students' future through education.
a. shape b. rule c. detect d. struggle
23. Students should not always depend only on to fix their mistakes.
a. scanner b. cheating c. spellcheck d. document
24. It's hard to life without smart technology.
a. imagine b. fail c. entertain d. require
25. Dr Mustafa suggested a new to help relieve the patient's pain.
a. household b. evidence c. efficiency d. treatment
26. How we to problems shows our emotional self control.
a. double b. react c. track d. pack
27. Choosing your future wife is a personal, not a decision for others.
a. autopilot b. pressure c. choice d. chores
28. This new is eco-friendly and low-priced.
a. product b. speed c. production d. comfort
29. Modern scanners help doctors diseases quickly.
a. struggle b. shape c. rule d. detect
30. Keep this in the safe. It is the contract of our villa.
a. cheating b. scanner c. document d. spellcheck
31. Students who waste their time regularly often their exams.
a. imagine b. fail c. require d. entertain
32. There was not enough that he was guilty, so we could not arrest him.
a. appliance b. treatment c. efficiency d. evidence
33. Nahla chose to study sciences at university.
a. medical b. banned c. standstill d. argumentative
34. Our company plans to its sales by next year.
a. react b. track c. double d. pack
35. The factory has to increase its to meet the rising demand.
a. production b. comfort c. product d. workplace
36. Each member of the team has a different on the topic.
a. influence b. viewpoint c. charge d. fairness
37. Most parents with the hardships of life to bring up their children.
a. detect b. rule c. shape d. struggle
38. A a medical machine that uses imaging to detect what is inside the body.
a. spellcheck b. scanner c. track d. document

3 A bit Tricky

هذا الجزء يعرض أفكار أسئلة التميز الخاصة بالطلبة الفائقين في الامتحان

تنويه

39. Although the new factory uses fewer workers, its levels have increased due to advanced machines.
a. appliance b. chore c. production d. track

40. The GPS app helps you stay on the right even in unfamiliar areas.
 a. production b. track c. chore d. appliance
41. Doing properly helps maintain order and discipline at home.
 a. chores b. appliances c. tracks d. productions
42. A dishwasher is a time-saving that many homes can't do without.
 a. track b. chore c. production d. appliance

II VOCABULARY STUDY

هذا الجزء هام جداً سواء على مستوى تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية أو التميز في الامتحانات

تنويه

1 Definitions التعريفات

appliance (n)	جهاز	a device or piece of equipment, especially one used in the home to perform a specific task
automated (adj)	آلي - مُمَكِّن	operated automatically using machines or computers instead of people
chores (n)	أعمال - فروض يومية	regular, everyday tasks, especially around the house such as cleaning or cooking
efficiency (n)	كفاءة	the ability to do something well without wasting time, energy, or resources
household (adj)	منزلي	relating to a house or to the people living in it
pack(ed) (v)	يُعبَأ	to put things into containers or boxes, usually for storage or transport
standstill (adj)	ساكن/ ثابت	a situation in which all activity or movement has stopped
track(ed) (v)	ممر - يراقب - يتبع	to follow or monitor the movement or progress of something

Mini Test 1 Definitions

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An is a device designed to perform a specific task, especially in the home.
 a. appliance b. efficiency c. evidence d. chore
2. To is to follow the progress or movement of something using a system or device.
 a. react b. track c. detect d. pack
3. is a condition where activity or movement stops completely.
 a. Standstill b. Automated c. Balanced d. Household
4. The ability to do something well with minimum waste of time or resources is known as
 a. chore b. appliance c. efficiency d. evidence
5. means operated by machines without needing human control.
 a. Household b. Balanced c. Standstill d. Automated
6. A routine task or duty, especially one done around the house is called a/an
 a. efficiency b. chore c. appliance d. evidence
7. means involving or related to the home or people living together in a house.
 a. Balanced b. Standstill c. Household d. Automated

8. To is to put items into a container for storage or transport.

a. pack

b. monitor

c. detect

d. track

2 Derivatives المشتقات

appliance		
appliance (n)	جهاز كهربائي	- This kitchen appliance saves time.
apply(v)	يطبق	- Engineers apply scientific methods.
application(n)	طلب / تطبيق	- I submitted my college application yesterday.
applicable(adj)	قابل للتطبيق	- These rules aren't applicable here.
applicant(n)	متقدم بطلب	- Each applicant must send their CV.
efficiency		
efficiency (n)	كفاءة	- Training improves our efficiency at work.
efficient(adj)	فعال / ذو كفاءة	- Arwa is an efficient team leader.
efficiently(adv)	بكفاءة	- Abdu solved the problem efficiently .
inefficiency (n)	ضعف الكفاءة	- The system's inefficiency causes delays.
inefficient(adj)	غير فعال	- The old machine is inefficient and noisy.
pack		
pack(v)	يُعبئ	- Remember to pack your charger, Malak.
package (n)	طرد	- The package arrived yesterday.
packaging (n)	تغليف	- Eco-friendly packaging is important.
unpack(v)	يُفَرِّغ	- Eman didn't unpack until the next day.
packed(adj)	ممتلئ / مزدحم	- The street was packed with tourists.
track		
track(v)	يتتبع / مسار	- Facebook app can track your location.
tracking (n)	تتبع	- GPS tracking helps delivery accuracy.
tracked(adj)	مُتَعَقَّب	- The tracked data is top secret.
tracker (n)	جهاز تتبع	- We attached a tracker to the car.
trackable(adj)	قابل للتتبع	- All orders are trackable online.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The latest kitchen makes cooking faster and easier.

a. applicant

b. application

c. appliance

d. applicability

2. This report shows a lack of in energy use in the factory.

a. inefficient

b. efficiency

c. efficiently

d. inefficiency

3. I usually my suitcase as soon as I arrive at my destination.

a. package

b. packaging

c. packed

d. unpack

4. The of goods adds to their cost.
 a. unpack b. package c. packaging d. packed
5. This smartwatch can easily your steps and sleep.
 a. track b. tracker c. tracked d. tracking
6. GPS improves delivery speed and accuracy.
 a. track b. tracked c. trackable d. tracking
7. What we post online is It can be searched and found by others.
 a. tracks b. trackable c. tracker d. track
8. Traffic came to a complete after the accident.
 a. standing b. stand c. standstill d. withstand

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	comfort	يجلب الراحة	lose	focus	يفقد التركيز
build	cars	يصنع سيارات	maintain	control	يظل مسيطر
detect	illness	يكشف الأمراض	oppose	an idea	يعارض فكرة
do	research	يقوم بأبحاث	pack	products	يعبئ/ يغلف المنتجات
feel	equal	يشعر بالمساواة	react	under pressure	يتصرف تحت ضغط
give	an opinion	يُبدى رأياً	stay	in charge (of)	يبقى مسنولاً (عن)
give	a reason	يُعطي سبباً	track	heart rate/ sleep quality	يراقب ضربات القلب/ جودة النوم
join	meetings	يحضر اجتماعات			

Mini Test 3 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Machines can comfort but they can make people jobless.
 a. lose b. build c. detect d. bring
- You should never focus during a stressful situation.
 a. do b. lose c. stay d. give
- Robots are used in factories to cars quickly and accurately.
 a. pack b. feel c. build d. oppose
- It's important to control of your emotions in a crisis.
 a. maintain b. join c. give d. lose
- Doctors use machines to illness at an early stage.
 a. stay b. give c. detect d. do
- Some people the idea of building a factory near the school.
 a. track b. feel c. maintain d. oppose
- Scientists must research before reaching conclusions.
 a. bring b. do c. lose d. react
- Factories use machines to products for delivery.
 a. pack b. stay c. feel d. detect

4 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
appliance (n)	جهاز، آلة - أداة	device, machine, gadget
household (n/adj)	منزلي - أسري	domestic, family, home-related
standstill (n/adj)	توقف - سكون	motionless, still
chores (n)	أعمال منزلية - مهام	tasks, duties, housework, homework
track (v/n)	يتتبع - يراقب	monitor, follow, trace
efficiency (n)	كفاءة - فعالية	productivity, effectiveness, competence
pack (v)	يُغلف - يُعبئ	package, wrap, box

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
automated (adj)	آلي - مُمكن	manual, hand-operated يدوي
standstill (n/adj)	توقف - سكون	movement, activity, motion حركة - نشاط
track (v/n)	يتتبع - يراقب	ignore, overlook, lose يتجاهل - يتغاضي عن - يفقد
efficiency (n)	كفاءة - فعالية	inefficiency, wastefulness, incompetence عدم كفاءة - إهدار
pack (v)	يُغلف - يُعبئ	unpack, empty, unload يفرغ
household	منزلي - أسري	public / common عام - شائع

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

- Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "This smart appliance saves energy and time." The word 'appliance' here is a synonym of
 a. container b. device c. engine
 d. gadget e. furniture
- "She preferred handmade tools over an automated system." The word 'automated' here is an antonym of
 a. manual b. mechanical c. hand-operated
 d. robotic e. digital
- "We divided the chores fairly among all family members." The word 'chores' here is a synonym of
 a. hobbies b. duties c. games
 d. tasks e. favors
- "The city came to a complete standstill after the storm." The word 'standstill' here is an antonym of
 a. motion b. movement c. pause
 d. silence e. rest
- "Doctors use wearables to track sleep quality." The word 'track' here is a synonym of
 a. chase b. find c. monitor
 d. forget e. trace

6 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

come to a standstill	يتعطل / يشل حركة	imagine life without	يتخيل الحياة بدون
completely negative	سلبي تماماً	in charge of	مسئول عن
control over technology	السيطرة على التكنولوجيا	in conclusion	وختاماً
for or against	مع أم ضد	live on autopilot	يعيش حياة نمطية
fully positive	إيجابي تماماً		

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with	يتفق مع	rule over	يحكم - يسيطر على
connect with	يتواصل مع	sum up	يلخص
depend on	يعتمد على	wake up	يستيقظ

Mini Test 5 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The traffic was so heavy that the city almost
 a. came to a standstill
 b. fully positive
 c. live on autopilot
 d. in charge of
- My grandmother follows the same schedule every day; it feels like she
 a. for or against
 b. completely negative
 c. lives on autopilot
 d. imagine life without
- is important – we shouldn't let them control us.
 a. In conclusion
 b. Control over technology
 c. Live on autopilot
 d. Fully positive
- Can you smartphones and the internet?
 a. completely negative
 b. imagine life without
 c. come to a standstill
 d. in charge of
- She's the project manager, which means she's everything.
 a. for or against
 b. lives on autopilot
 c. in charge of
 d. completely negative
- It's important to connect others during tough times.
 a. in
 b. with
 c. for
 d. by
- We all depend electricity to run our devices.
 a. at
 b. from
 c. on
 d. to
- The queen used to rule the entire region.
 a. over
 b. for
 c. in
 d. with
- At the end of the speech, the teacher summed the main points.
 a. to
 b. from
 c. on
 d. up

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

automated - automatic

- **automated (adj)** آلي - يتم تشغيله آلياً
- The factory uses **automated** machines to build cars.
- **automatic (adj)** تلقائي
- The system is **automatic**, not manual.
- **automatically (adv)** بشكل تلقائي
- You will **automatically** receive a message.

appliance - application

- **appliance (n)** جهاز منزلي
- A microwave is a common kitchen **appliance**.
- **application = app (n)** تطبيق رقمي (علي الأجهزة الذكية)
- Facebook is a social media **application**.
- **application (n)** استمارة
- Lujain sent her job **application** yesterday.
- **application (n)** تطبيق (تنفيذ)
- The **application** of those ideas is difficult, not impossible.

be in charge of – be charged with

- **in charge of** مسئول عن
- Mr Ayman is **in charge of** the project.
- **be charged with = be accused of (inf + ing / noun)** متهم بـ
- He was **charged with** piracy.

medical – medicine – medication – treatment

- **medical (adj)** طبي
- I have regular **medical** check-ups.
- **medicine (n)** علم الطب
- Rodayna wants to study **medicine**.
- **medicine (n)** دواء
- Take this **medicine** twice a day, Yara.
- **medication (n)** نظام العلاج الدوائي الذي يحدده الطبيب للشخص
- She is on strong **medication** after surgery.
- **treatment (n)** العملية العلاجية - معاملة
- The **treatment** includes physiotherapy and medication.
- A child needs good **treatment**.

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Nurse Doha is the emergency room tonight.
a. in charge of b. in charge c. charged with d. charger
- He was stealing secret data from the company.
a. in charge b. charger c. charge of d. charged with
- You should take this twice a day with water.
a. medicine b. medical c. application d. medicinal
- After surgery, the doctor prescribed her a strong for pain.
a. medical b. medicine c. treatment d. medication
- The doctor gave him a full examination.
a. medicine b. medical c. medication d. treatment
- Physiotherapy is often part of the for back pain.
a. medication b. medicine c. treatment d. medical
- Smart doors open when someone walks near them.
a. automated b. automatic c. automobile d. automatically
- The new parking system is fully and doesn't need any staff.
a. automated b. automatic c. automobile d. auto stop

III READING

Reading Text

• on Lesson 4 SB page 32

Nowadays, machines are a big part of our daily **routines**⁽¹⁾. From the moment we wake up, they **influence**⁽²⁾ what we do. The **alarm clock**⁽³⁾ rings, the **kettle**⁽⁴⁾ boils, and the bus or metro takes us to school or work – all **powered**⁽⁵⁾ by machines. It's hard to **imagine**⁽⁶⁾ life without them.



At home, we depend on **household**⁽⁷⁾ **appliances**⁽⁸⁾ like washing machines, microwaves, and **vacuum cleaners**⁽⁹⁾. These devices save time and make **chores**⁽¹⁰⁾ easier. A **recent**⁽¹¹⁾ study reported that most people use over five machines every single day. Even our free time is **shaped**⁽¹²⁾ by technology – smartphones, laptops, and smart TVs that keep us **entertained**⁽¹³⁾ and connected with friends and family.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

(1) نمط الحياة اليومي

(2) يؤثر في

(3) منبه

(4) غلاية

(5) تعتمد علي

(6) يتخيل

(7) منزلي

(8) أجهزة

(9) مكائن كهربائية

(10) أعمال - فروض يومية

(11) حديث

(12) يُشكّل

(13) يجعلنا نقضي وقتاً ممتعاً

In the **workplace**⁽¹⁴⁾, machines help us work faster and more **accurately**⁽¹⁵⁾. Office workers use computers to write emails, prepare **documents**⁽¹⁶⁾, and join online **meetings**⁽¹⁷⁾. In factories, robots build cars, **pack**⁽¹⁸⁾ **products**⁽¹⁹⁾, and carry heavy items. One factory manager said, "Our **production**⁽²⁰⁾ has **doubled**⁽²¹⁾ since we started using **automated**⁽²²⁾ systems."

Our health is also **monitored**⁽²³⁾ by machines. **Smartwatches**⁽²⁴⁾ **track**⁽²⁵⁾ our heart **rate**⁽²⁶⁾, steps, and sleep quality. Doctors use advanced **scanners**⁽²⁷⁾ and machines to **detect**⁽²⁸⁾ illnesses early and plan **treatments**⁽²⁹⁾.

However, some people worry that we rely too much on machines. They fear that if technology fails, our lives could come to a standstill. As one teacher explained, "Students struggle to write without spellcheck or grammar tools."

While machines bring comfort, speed, and efficiency, it's important to remember that we should control them — not the other way around. Life with machines is easier, but we must stay in charge of our choices and skills. After all, technology should serve us, not rule us.

- (14) مكان العمل
- (15) بدقة
- (16) وثائق
- (17) اجتماعات
- (18) يُعبَأ
- (19) المنتجات
- (20) الإنتاج
- (21) يتضاعف
- (22) آلٍ - مُقيكُن
- (23) يراقب - يري
- (24) الساعات الذكية
- (25) تراقب - تتبع
- (26) مُعدّل
- (27) أجهزة الماسح
- (28) يكتشف
- (29) علاج

• on Lesson 5 SB page 35

Smartphones can be **valuable**⁽¹⁾ learning tools in the classroom; however, their use also presents **challenges**⁽²⁾. Firstly, students can quickly access information, for example, they can look up a word they don't know or find an image related to a lesson. This **instant**⁽³⁾ access to information can make learning more engaging and **interactive**⁽⁴⁾. On the other hand, smartphones can be a major **distraction**⁽⁵⁾ because students may be tempted to use them for social media or games instead of focusing on the lesson. This can **disrupt**⁽⁶⁾ not only their own learning but also that of their classmates. In conclusion, while phones offer great educational **potential**⁽⁷⁾, a balance must be found to maximize the **benefits**⁽⁸⁾ while minimizing the **drawbacks**⁽⁹⁾.

- (1) قيم / ثمين
- (2) تحديات
- (3) سريع
- (4) تفاعلي
- (5) تشتيت
- (6) يعطل
- (7) إمكانيات
- (8) فوائد
- (9) عيوب





SKILLS

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية في الملحق

تنويه

WRITING SKILL: ARGUMENTATIVE ESSAY

• What is an Argumentative Essay?

- An argumentative essay is a type of writing where you give your claim on a topic and support it with reasons and evidence. You also mention the opposite claim and explain why you think your claim is stronger.

المقال الجدلي هو نوع من الكتابة تعبر فيه عن رأيك في موضوع معين، وتدعمه بالأسباب والأدلة، وأيضًا تعرض الرأي المعارض موضوعًا لماذا رأيك أقوى.

البناء والمكونات الرئيسية Structure and Key Components

1 Introduction: (المقدمة)

- Introduce the topic.
- Give background.
- State your claim (thesis).

في المقدمة، عرّف الموضوع اعطى خلفية للموضوع واذكر رأيك.

2 Body Paragraphs : (فقرات المّتن/الموضوع)

a. Supporting Paragraphs (فقرات تدعم الرأي)

- Present **at least two reasons** for your claim.
- Use **examples** or **evidence**.

اكتب فقرتين أو أكثر تدعم رأيك باستخدام الأسباب والأمثلة.

b. Opposing View (الرأي المعارض)

- Mention the opposite side - say why you disagree.

اعرض الرأي الآخر ثم قم برفضه بأدلة توضح ضعفه.

3 Conclusion : (الخاتمة)

- Restate your claim.
- Summarize your main points.

اختم المقال بإعادة صياغة رأيك وتلخيص النقاط الرئيسية.

Useful Expressions تعبيرات مفيدة

Stating your claim : (البدء الرأي)

- I believe that...
- I think it is clear that...

• In my opinion...

Supporting your claim : (الدعم الرأي)

- Firstly,...
- For example,...

• Another reason is...

Introducing the other side : (العرض الرأي الآخر)

- Some people say that...
- On the other hand,...
- It is argued that...

Refuting the other side : (النقص الرأي الآخر)

- However, I disagree because...
- I believe this is not strong enough because...
- This may be true, but...

Concluding : (الخاتمة)

- In conclusion,...
- That's why I believe...
- To sum up,...

Argumentative essay terminology (المصطلحات المقال الجدلي)

Term	Definition
Essay	A piece of writing about one topic. It has an introduction, body, and conclusion. مقالة تتناول موضوعًا محددًا وتتكون من مقدمة وجسم وخاتمة.
Argumentative essay	An essay that gives an opinion and supports it with reasons. مقالة تقدم رأيًا وتدعمه بالأسباب والأدلة.
Opinion	What you believe or think. الرأي الشخصي أو ما تعتقده.
Reason	Why you think your opinion is right. السبب الذي يجعلك ترى أن رأيك صحيح.
Evidence	A fact or example that supports your reason. دليل مثل حقيقة أو مثال يدعم السبب.
Introduction	The beginning of the essay that tells the topic and your opinion. مقدمة المقال وتعرض الموضوع ورأيك.
Body paragraph	A paragraph in the middle that gives reasons and examples. فقرة في وسط المقال تقدم الأسباب والأمثلة.
Supporting paragraph	A body paragraph that explains your opinion. فقرة تدعم رأيك وتوضح الأسباب.
Opposing view	The other side of the argument. الرأي المعارض أو الجانب الآخر من النقاش.
Refutation	Saying why the opposing view is weak or wrong. دحض الرأي الآخر وتوضيح ضعفه أو خطئه.
Conclusion	The last part that restates your opinion and summarizes the main points. الخاتمة التي تعيد صياغة رأيك وتلخص النقاط الأساسية.
Transition word	A word that connects ideas (e.g., however, firstly). عبارات انتقالية تربط بين الأفكار مثل (أولًا، لكن، لذلك).

Topic sentence	The main idea of a paragraph.	الجملة الأساسية التي توضح فكرة الفقرة.
Thesis statement	A sentence in the introduction that shows your main opinion.	جملة في المقدمة توضح الرأي الأساسي للمقال.
Hook	An interesting sentence at the start to catch the reader's attention.	جملة جذابة في البداية لجذب انتباه القارئ.
Clarify	To make your ideas easy to understand.	توضيح الأفكار لتكون سهلة الفهم.

Argumentative essay (Subjective)

1 Write a six-line introduction to an argumentative essay on 'The power of machines'

In today's world, machines play an essential role in almost every part of our lives. From smart devices to industrial robots, their influence continues to grow. Many people believe machines make life easier and more productive. Others worry that machines are taking over human jobs and thinking. However, I believe the power of machines is mostly positive. With the right use, machines can improve our lives and solve big problems.

2 Write a six-line body paragraph in an argumentative essay on 'The power of machines'

Firstly, machines help us complete tasks faster and with fewer mistakes. In factories, for example, machines produce goods much faster than humans can. They also reduce the risk of injury in dangerous jobs like mining or construction. Moreover, smart machines like AI can help in education, medicine, and transport. Some argue that machines replace people, but they also create new jobs in tech. Therefore, the benefits of machines far outweigh the disadvantages.

3 Write a six-line conclusion to an argumentative essay on 'The power of machines'

To sum up, machines have become powerful tools in our modern world. They help us work smarter, live more comfortably, and even stay healthier. Although there are concerns about job loss, new opportunities also appear. The key is learning how to use machines wisely and responsibly. In brief, we should focus on guiding machine power, not fearing it. That's why I believe machines are a great support to human progress.

I WRITING SKILL

1. An argumentative essay aims to
a. describe a process
b. narrate a story
c. defend a point of view
d. summarize an article
2. "I believe online learning is effective." This sentence is used to
a. give a fact
b. express an opinion
c. introduce an example
d. agree with others
3. "Firstly, it saves time." This phrase is best used for
a. concluding
b. making a thesis
c. supporting an opinion
d. giving a title
4. The purpose of a counterargument is to
a. give more facts
b. repeat the introduction
c. give a summary
d. show the opposite opinion
5. "This may be true, but I think it's not enough." This is an example of
a. giving an example
b. refuting the other side
c. summarizing the essay
d. supporting with facts
6. "In sum, social media has both pros and cons." This sentence is part of the
a. conclusion
b. introduction
c. opposing side
d. title
7. A good argumentative essay must include
a. a story and a poem
b. a riddle and a solution
c. your opinion and reasons
d. quotes only
8. "For example, many students use apps to study." This supports the essay by giving
a. an opinion
b. evidence
c. the conclusion
d. a counterargument
9. "On the other hand, some believe online learning is less effective." This introduces
a. the opposing view
b. an example
c. a topic sentence
d. a reason
10. "That's why I believe schools must stay open." This phrase
a. states a problem
b. reaffirms your opinion
c. gives a statistic
d. introduces a quote
11. The main goal of the conclusion is to
a. give more reasons
b. add a story
c. sum up the points
d. add a new opinion
12. "It is argued that AI may take over jobs." This is a sentence from the
a. conclusion
b. supporting paragraphs
c. example section
d. opposing side
13. Which of the following is NOT used to give your opinion?
a. I believe that...
b. Some people say that...
c. In my opinion...
d. I think that...
14. Which is a good transition for your second reason?
a. Another reason is...
b. Firstly,...
c. In conclusion,...
d. On the other hand,...

15. "Smartphones help students stay connected." This is
a. an opposing view b. a conclusion
c. a supporting example d. a definition
16. "To sum up, technology has improved our lives." This sentence
a. introduces the topic b. closes the essay
c. gives an opposing view d. gives a statistic
17. What should the introduction include?
a. a refutation b. a counterargument c. repeated phrases d. your opinion
18. The phrase "I disagree because..." is used to
a. refute b. explain c. agree d. ask a question
19. "Many disagree, but I believe AI helps us." This sentence shows
a. neutral tone b. your stance and refutation
c. listing d. conclusion
20. Which of the following gives a reason?
a. In conclusion,... b. On the other hand,...
c. Firstly,... d. It is argued that...
21. Why is it important to include the other side?
a. To write longer essays
b. To show understanding and argue better
c. To agree with everyone
d. To waste words
22. Which transition signals an opposing idea?
a. Another reason is... b. To sum up,... c. For example,... d. However, ...
23. The phrase "Some people say that..." is used for
a. the topic sentence b. opposing side c. conclusion d. title
24. Why do we use "for example"?
a. To explain a reason clearly b. To end the essay
c. To give a definition d. To ask a question
25. An essay without a conclusion is considered
a. exciting b. more logical c. too formal d. incomplete
26. Which of the following is part of a strong conclusion?
a. Some people say... b. I believe that...
c. That's why I believe we must act now. d. For example,...
27. "I think it is clear that pollution is dangerous." This is
a. a story b. an opinion
c. a counterargument d. a title
28. What does a counterargument do?
a. Presents the opposing view b. Closes the essay
c. Gives a title d. Repeats your opinion
29. Refuting means you
a. agree politely b. disagree and explain why
c. support the idea d. ask a question
30. "Technology helps, but it must be used wisely." This shows
a. strong support b. complete rejection c. balanced view d. wrong opinion
31. A strong argumentative essay always has
a. jokes and quotes b. examples only
c. long paragraphs d. clear structure and logic

II READING SKILL

- Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Jennifer was thinking in her room. She wanted a shelter there since false gossip about her began circulating at the academy last week. Not that Jennifer had ever been considered a social butterfly. She preferred to live indirectly through the stories of her more unashamed friends: late night celebrating, associating with girls, childish tricks. Still, she had taken to be more by herself than usual since the accusations surfaced and that thing made her on thin ice. She was up for consideration for the highly popular Blauvelt Award, a scholarship recognizing "academic integrity and promise".

A student had given headmaster Jack an anonymous "tip" that Jennifer had cheated on several tests. The accusations were laughable. Jennifer had long been a clever student at the academy. She lacked a natural intelligence - this was true. However, she compensated for this shortage through carefulness and insistence; she was very thorough in her studies and exhibited an almost relentless determination. Still, the accusations had given the recommendation committee pause.

On Friday, Jennifer had been called to Mr Jack grand office, where she was asked copious questions about her recent exams. The experience was quite shocking. It was an elite school. Most of its students came from honoured backgrounds. This was not the case for Jennifer. Her family had little money. She attended the school on a full scholarship. The Award would help her family pay for college. So, it was with the same diligence which she applied to her studies that Jennifer planned to reveal her accuser.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The suitable title of the passage is ".....".
a. Struggling in life to reach your goals
b. The School Award
c. Cheating in Exams
d. Helping Other People
- The Academy was a school
a. where many kids lied and cheated
b. for abused students
c. with many wealthy students
d. where it was hard to get to know people
- The best sentence that can summarise the second paragraph is that
a. Jennifer won the award
b. Strong determination can compensate many things
c. Accusing others can be destructive
d. Escaping from others is the best thing
- The award is important to Jennifer because it will
a. prove she is clever
b. help her family pay for college
c. make her parents proud
d. go travel away
- Being a student at the academy, Jennifer needs to
a. accept what is said about her
b. get away from the other students
c. be persistent and have strong will
d. be rich to stay at the school
- If the students continue on accusing Jennifer of cheating, she will
a. insist on knowing the accuser
b. hit the accuser
c. sleep more and more
d. go on reading novels
- Jennifer was different from her fellows as she
a. likes to cheat at exams
b. tells false gossip
c. is not reliable
d. is not wealthy
- The underlined phrase "on thin ice" implies that Jennifer was
a. over the moon
b. relaxed and calm
c. patient
d. in a critical situation

III TRANSLATION

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

1. Success is something that needs determination and stamina. No one can achieve success without facing different and difficult conditions in life.

- a. النجاح شيء يحتاج إلى العزيمة والقدرة على التحمل. لا يمكن لأحد أن يحقق النجاح دون أن يواجه ظروفًا مختلفة وصعبة في الحياة.
- b. النجاح هو شيء يحتاج إلى العزيمة والقدرة على التحمل. لا يمكن لأحد أن يحقق النجاح بعد أن يواجه ظروفًا مختلفة وصعبة في الحياة.
- c. النجاح شيء يحتاج إلى الإصرار والقدرة على التحمل. يمكن لأحد أن يحقق النجاح دون أن يواجه ظروفًا مختلفة وصعبة في الحياة.
- d. النجاح هو شيء يحتاج إلى الإصرار والقدرة على التحمل. لا يمكن لأحد أن يحقق النجاح قبل أن يواجه ظروفًا مختلفة وصعبة في الحياة.

2. Resilience is the ability to become strong, happy, or successful especially after a difficult situation or event you undergo.

- a. المرونة هي القدرة على أن تصبح قويًا وسعيدًا وناجحًا خاصة بعد موقف أو حدث صعب تمر به.
- b. المرونة هي القدرة على أن تصبح قويًا أو سعيدًا أو ناجحًا خاصة بعد موقف واحد صعب تمر به.
- c. المرونة هي القدرة على أن تصبح قويًا أو سعيدًا وناجحًا خاصة بعد موقف أو حدث صعب تمر به.
- d. المرونة هي القدرة على أن تصبح قويًا أو سعيدًا أو ناجحًا خاصة بعد موقف أو حدث صعب تمر به.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

ا. تطورت الرياضة النسائية على مستوى الهواية والاحتراف دوليًا، فازدادت مشاركة النساء والفتيات في الرياضة هذه الأيام وقد حققن نجاحًا كبيرًا.

- a. Woman's sports have developing in amateur and professional level internationally, participation of women and girls in sport increased these days and they achieved great success.
- b. Female sports have developing for amateur and professional levels internationally. So participating women and girls in sports increased those days to achieve great success.
- c. Female sports developed for amateur and professional level internationally, So participating women and girls in sports has increased today so that they will achieve great success.
- d. Women's sports have developed in amateur and professional levels internationally; participation of women and girls in sports has increased these days and they have achieved great success.

ا. لقد أصبح للنساء نفس حقوق الرجال تقريباً لكن هذا لم يحدث بسهولة، فلقد استغرق الأمر سنوات طويلة من الكفاح للحصول على هذه الحقوق.

- a. Women have almost the same rights as men, but this was not achieved easily. It took many years of struggle to obtain these rights.
- b. Women have at most the same rights as men, but this was not achieved easily. It took many years of struggle to obtain these rights.
- c. Women have almost the same rights as men, but this was not achieved easily. It took many years of struggle to surrender these rights.
- d. Women have almost the same rights as men, yet this was achieved easily. It took many years of struggle to obtain these rights.



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 25

Egypt's History with Machines

1. Ancient Egyptians were masters of mechanics, using simple machines like levers and ramps to build monumental pyramids and temples.
2. The Industrial Revolution in the 19th century introduced advanced technology like cotton gins and steam engines to Egypt, revolutionizing agriculture and transportation.
3. Today, Egypt continues to adopt modern technology, from computerized factories to advanced AI and robotics.
4. While embracing the future, Egypt also preserves its past, using technology like 3D scanning to protect ancient artifacts.

on Lesson 2 SB page 27

Technical Support Call

1. A customer named Rania calls technical support because her printer is not working and appears "offline."
2. The technician calmly guides her through troubleshooting steps over the phone.
3. He instructs her to open the printer settings, right-click on the printer icon, and select "Use Printer Online."
4. The solution works, and the technician advises Rania to keep her printer drivers updated and avoid turning it off while it's processing jobs.

on Lesson 3 SB page 29

The Role of Machines

1. Machines play a vital role in daily life, saving time and reducing human effort.
2. In hospitals, they provide accurate diagnoses and monitor patients' hearts.

- * Machines and new technology
- * How Ancient Egyptians used simple machines

3. In factories, machines run continuously to assemble and pack products at a speed humans cannot match.

4. Although machines are powerful, they still need human control, and they cannot replace human creativity or compassion.

on Lesson 4 SB page 32

Machines in Our Daily Routines

1. Modern life is heavily dependent on machines, from alarm clocks and kettles in the morning to transportation.
2. Household appliances like washing machines and vacuum cleaners make chores easier and save time.
3. In the workplace, machines enhance productivity and accuracy.
4. Smart devices like phones and watches keep us connected and monitor our health.
5. While technology offers comfort and efficiency, there's a risk of over-reliance, as a system failure can cause a standstill.

on Lesson 5 SB page 35

Smartphones in the Classroom

1. Smartphones can be valuable educational tools, giving students instant access to information.
2. However, they can also be a major distraction, tempting students with social media and games.
3. This distraction can disrupt not only the user's focus but also that of their classmates.
4. The key is to find a balance between using the benefits of smartphones and minimizing their potential drawbacks to create a productive learning environment.

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى :

* Machines in our daily routines

General Exercises | on Unit 2

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An is a rigid bar used to move or lift something with force.
a. lever b. automation c. infrastructure d. driver
2. His passion and ideas helped the team toward success.
a. troubleshoot b. enhance c. embrace d. drive
3. We downloaded the latest of the app yesterday.
a. groundwork b. partnership c. version d. automation
4. The ministry of education is currently various techniques to improve learning.
a. arguing b. embracing c. charging d. restarting
5. "We must act with urgency to prevent further damage." The word urgency is an antonym of
a. unimportance b. pressure c. alarm d. importance
6. Social media can have a strong on young people's attitudes.
a. fairness b. influence c. viewpoint d. charge
7. This cartoon was designed to children with jokes and songs.
a. entertain b. fail c. require d. imagine
8. "The machine was known for its high efficiency." The word 'efficiency' here is an antonym of
a. wastefulness b. productivity c. accuracy d. capacity
9. Sama said she tired after the long trip.
a. is b. has been c. was d. be
10. "Turn off the lights before you go," Rodayna said to her brother. Rodayna told her brother to the lights.
a. turn off b. turned off c. turns off d. turning off
11. Ahmed said that he his test on time.
a. submits b. had submitted c. has submitted d. submit
12. "Don't forget your ID," Ayman reminded Nada. Ayman reminded Nada her ID.
a. forgetting b. to forget c. not to forget d. had forgotten
13. Amira said that she that restaurant before.
a. visits b. visit c. had visited d. has visited
14. When I asked Joury if she had spoken to Salma, she said she her that morning.
a. didn't speak to b. wasn't speaking to
c. had spoken to d. has spoken to
15. Adam admitted he a mistake in his calculations.
a. make b. had made c. makes d. has made
16. "You should reconsider your options," Youssef said. Youssef advised me that I my options.
a. reconsidered b. must reconsider
c. should reconsider d. might reconsider

17. Ali explained that by the time we arrived, the show
 a. has started b. starts c. had started d. would start
18. Radwan said he had no idea why Makka so upset.
 a. is b. was c. had been d. has been
19. Which word signals a summary?
 a. Firstly b. However c. To sum up d. I believe

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

We should be proud of all our Egyptian celebrities in all times. We had many great men in the 19th and 20th century who did many wonderful patriotic actions. Mustafa Kamel, an Egyptian nationalist leader, was born in 1874. Witnessing Egypt's struggle under British control, Kamel's spirit of patriotism ignited. He, along with other students, formed a secret society advocating for Egypt's independence. Their actions led to their expulsion from Egypt, forcing Kamel to complete his education in France.

While abroad, Kamel immersed himself in European political ideas, particularly those emphasizing national identity and self-determination. He actively participated in Egyptian student communities, keeping the fight for his homeland alive. Kamel's fiery speeches and passionate articles resonated deeply with the Egyptian people. He challenged the legitimacy of British rule, highlighting its detrimental impact on Egypt's economy and social fabric. He emphasized the importance of education and self-reliance, urging Egyptians to strive for a future free from foreign domination.

Despite facing threats and imprisonment by the British authorities, Mustafa Kamel remained undeterred. He continued to mobilize the masses, organizing peaceful protests and advocating for a boycott of British goods. His unwavering determination and eloquent articulation of Egypt's aspirations earned him the title, "The Voice of the Nation."

Mustafa Kamel's hard efforts, though tragically cut short by illness in 1908, significantly contributed to the rise of Egyptian nationalism. He laid the groundwork for future generations who ultimately achieved Egypt's independence in 1952.

After Mustafa Kamel's death in 1908, leadership of the Egyptian nationalist movement fell to Mohamed Farid. Farid, a wealthy aristocrat, continued advocating for Egyptian independence from British rule, taking control of the newly formed National Party founded by Kamel. His influence helped keep the fight for Egyptian self-determination alive.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20. The main idea of the passage is that
 a. the British ruled Egypt for many years
 b. Mustafa Kamel made great efforts for the independence of Egypt
 c. Mustafa Kamel was impressed by some British writers
 d. the British rewarded Mustafa Kamel by sending him abroad
21. Mustafa Kamel died aged
 a. 45 b. 43 c. 35 d. 34
22. Which of the following can summarize the first paragraph?
 a. The British forced Kamel into exile to get rid of his patriotic attitude.
 b. Mustafa Kamel made great efforts to help Egypt abroad.
 c. Mustafa Kamel was helpless and isolated from Egypt abroad.
 d. The British emphasized the importance of education and self-reliance.

23. After being excluded from Egypt,
 - a. Mustafa Kamel was more enthusiastic about Egypt's independence
 - b. it was impossible for Mustafa Kamel to help Egypt
 - c. Mustafa Kamel befriended the British for the sake of Egypt
 - d. the Egyptians hated Mustafa Kamel
24. According to the passage, we can infer that
 - a. The Egyptians weren't admired by Mustafa's Kamel's patriotism
 - b. Mohamed Farid ignored Mustafa Kamel's view and took another approach
 - c. Mustafa Kamel's efforts contributed to the independence of Egypt
 - d. Mohamed Farid traveled to France to continue the struggle there
25. According to the passage, Mustafa Kamel challenged the British rule in Egypt by..... .
 - a. engaging in armed conflict against the British occupation
 - b. seeking international support for Egyptian independence
 - c. collaborating with the British authorities
 - d. advocating for violent protests and boycotts
26. Unlike many other Egyptian leaders of his time, Mustafa Kamel's ideas were influenced by
 - a. the successes of colonial empires in many countries over the world
 - b. some European concepts of nationalism and self-determination
 - c. traditional Egyptian religious teachings
 - d. the economic benefits of globalization
27. After reading the passage, what do you think would have happened if Mustafa Kamel hadn't been expelled from Egypt?
 - a. He would have travelled to France to continue his high studies.
 - b. He would have helped the British in Egypt.
 - c. He would have continued his struggle against the British.
 - d. He would have been a lecturer at Cairo University.

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Our body has many organs which do their functions properly. Each one has a specific job to do to survive. For example, your heart, a tireless pump working faithfully day and night, is vital to your very existence. But what happens when this vital organ is starved of the oxygen it needs? A heart attack, also known as a myocardial infarction, occurs when blood flow to a part of the heart muscle is severely reduced or cut off completely. This disrupts the heart's ability to pump blood effectively, threatening your health and even your life.

The culprit behind most heart attacks is atherosclerosis, a gradual narrowing of the coronary arteries. These arteries supply blood rich in oxygen to the heart muscle. Over time, fatty deposits called plaque buildup on the artery walls, restrict blood flow. A piece of plaque may rupture, triggering the formation of a blood clot that can completely block the artery. This blockage starves the heart muscle of oxygen, leading to cell death and a heart attack.

Symptoms of a heart attack can vary from person to person. The classic image of someone clutching their chest in pain is common, but discomfort can also manifest as pain in the arm, shoulder, jaw, back, or even nausea and lightheadedness. Recognizing these diverse symptoms and seeking immediate medical attention is crucial. Early intervention can minimize heart damage and improve your chances of a full recovery.

Thankfully, there are steps you can take to reduce your risk of a heart attack. Maintaining a healthy lifestyle is key. This includes eating a balanced diet low in saturated fats, exercising regularly, managing stress, and maintaining a healthy weight. Additionally, controlling conditions like high blood pressure and cholesterol can significantly decrease your risk.

By understanding the causes and symptoms of heart attacks, and by prioritizing a heart-healthy lifestyle, you can empower yourself to take charge of your cardiovascular health.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

28. This passage mainly deals with
a. the side effects of the heart attacks and how to deal with them
b. how to keep healthy with healthy heart
c. doing sports is a main reason to have a healthy heart
d. the importance of the heart and the danger of the heart attack
29. It's clear that the main function of the coronary arteries is to
a. carry more blood away from the heart
b. deliver oxygen-rich blood to the heart muscle
c. regulate heart rate
d. filter blood impurities
30. Which of the following statements summarizes the main idea of the fourth paragraph?
a. It's easy to avoid heart attacks by following some tips.
b. Some kinds of food may lead to heart attack than others.
c. Doing excessive exercise can lead to healthy hearts.
d. Some patients need to take certain drugs to reduce heart attacks.
31. The cause of forming plaque in the arteries is
a. a balanced diet
b. fatty deposits
c. infectious viruses
d. doing exercise
32. One important message to be taken away from this passage is:
The earlier you deal with the symptoms,
a. the harder it is to minimize the heart damage
b. the quicker it is to have a heart attack
c. the better it is to get speedy recovery
d. the more you can get heart problems
33. According to the passage, the person who clutches their chest
a. may have a heart attack
b. surely has a heart attack
c. doesn't suffer from any heart attacks
d. won't suffer from a heart attack
34. In terms of the passage, unlike the disturbance of the heart's ability to flood blood, maintaining a normal weight can lead to
a. some heart problems
b. pain in the arm
c. nausea and lightheadedness
d. a healthy life
35. After reading the passage, it is true to say that our hearts
a. can be easily damaged by some certain symptoms
b. are infected by some viruses with no clear symptoms
c. are important organs and need special care
d. aren't so vital to take care of them regularly

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

36. "Egyptian schools should embrace new digital tools to improve learning." In this instance, 'embrace' means

- a. deletes b. ignore c. adopt
d. warn e. support

37. "Workers started to pack the goods for shipping." The word 'pack' here is a synonym of

- a. wrap b. push c. store
d. package e. unload

• Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

38. Celebrities find it hard to stop interference in their private affairs. They suffer from spinning news about their personal life and spreading rumours about them.

- a. يجد المشاهير أن من الصعب منع التدخل في شئونهم الخاصة، فإنهم يعانون من تزييف أخبار عن حياتهم الشخصية ونشر الإشاعات عن حياتهم.
b. يجد المشاهير أن من الصعب وقف الانبهار بشئونهم الخاصة، فإنهم يعانون من تزييف أخبار عن حياتهم الشخصية مما ينشر الإشاعات حولهم.
c. يعاني المشاهير من تزيين الإشاعات حول حياتهم الشخصية، فإنهم يعانون من نشر الإشاعات حولهم مما يجعل عدم التدخل في شئونهم الخاصة صعبًا.
d. يعاني المشاهير من تزيين الإشاعات حول حياتهم الشخصية، فإنهم يعانون من نشر الإشاعات حولهم مما يجعلهم يجدون صعوبة في التدخل في شئونهم الخاصة صعبًا.

39. Peace of mind and happiness depend on the ability to control thoughts and direct them. One has to avoid what is painful and keep in mind pleasant memories only.

- a. إن راحة البال والسعادة تعتمد على القدرة على التحكم في الأفكار وتوجيهها. فيجب على الفرد أن يعتاد على كل ما هو مؤلم وأن يحتفظ بالذكريات السارة فقط.
b. إن راحة البال والسعادة تعتمد على القدرة على التحكم في الأفكار وتوجيهها. فيجب على الفرد أن يتجنب كل ما هو مؤلم وأن يحتفظ بالذكريات السارة فقط.
c. إن راحة البال والسلامة تعتمد على القدرة على التحكم في الأفكار وتوجيهها. فيجب على الفرد أن يتجنب كل ما هو مؤلم وأن يحتفظ بالذكريات السارة فقط.
d. إن راحة البال والسعادة تعتمد على عدم القدرة على التحكم في الأفكار وتوجيهها. فيجب على الفرد أن يتجنب كل ما هو مؤلم وأن يحتفظ بالذكريات السارة فقط.

• Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

40. على الرغم من أنني كنت أدرس طوال الليل للتحضير للاختبار، إلا أنني شعرت بالقلق الشديد عندما بدأت الأسئلة. لكنني حاولت أن أظل هادئًا وإجابتي كانت أفضل مما توقعت.

- a. Although I studied all night to prepare for the test, I felt extremely anxious when I started the questions. However, I tried to stay calm, and my answers were worse than I expected.
b. Despite studying all night for the test, I felt very nervous when the questions began. However, I managed to stay calm, and my answers turned out better than I expected.
c. I studied for the test all night, and I felt confident when the questions started. However, my answers were not what I had anticipated.
d. Although I didn't study enough for the test, I felt very calm when the questions began, and my answers were exactly what I expected.

٤١. يجب أن تكون عضواً فعالاً في المجتمع، فلا تكن سلبياً وتكتفي بمجرد الشكوى وانتقاد أفعال الآخرين. لابد أن نكون موضوعيين ونسعى للقد البناء وقبول الآخر.

- a. You must be an active worker in society. Do not be negative and only complain and criticize the actions of others. We must be subjective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.
- b. You must be an active member of your society. Do not be negative and only complain and criticize the opinions of others. We must be objective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.
- c. You must be an active member of society. Do not be positive and only complain and criticize the actions of others. We must be objective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.
- d. You must be a productive member of society. Do not be negative and only try to criticize the actions of others. We must be subjective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.

• **Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :**

42. "My family is coming to visit me next month." said Karim. (announced that)

.....

43. "We didn't understand the instructions," said the children. (said that)

.....

• **Answer the following questions :**

44. **SB** What were Edmond and Mercédés planning for their future ?

.....

45. **SB** Why did Ville fort destroy the letter ?

.....

.....

• **46. Write a six-line body paragraph in an argumentative essay on :**

'The power of machines'

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 3

SB pages 36 : 46

Protect Nature, Protect Future



Learning Outcomes

• Reading

- Read articles and texts on climate change, climate justice, and global environmental issues
- Extract key details, define vocabulary from context
- Understand cause-and-effect relationships

• Language

- Use modal verbs for logical deduction in the present and past
- Express blame or regret

• Listening

- Extract key information from an audio conversation, specifically a radio interview with a meteorologist

• Writing

- Write a persuasive essay on the topic of climate change, using specific vocabulary and persuasive techniques

• Speaking

- Participate in group discussions and debates about climate change, its effects, and the role of individuals and youth activists



SB pages 37 : 40

PART ONE

Lessons

1 & 2

- Climate Justice and Global Activism
- An Interview with a Meteorologist

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

activist (n)	ناشط	marginalized (adj)	مُهْمَل / مُهْمَل
bear the brunt	يُتَحْمَل العبء الأكبر	marginalized communities	المجتمعات المهمشة
brunt (n)	عبء - هَم	meteorologist (n)	خبير أرصاد
climate resilience	المرونة المناخية	optimistic (adj)	متفائل - مستبشر
crisis (n)	أزمة	pessimistic (adj)	متشائم
emphasize(d) (v)	يُؤَكِّد على - يركز	profound (adj)	عميق / خطير
equity (n)	مساواة / عدالة	prolonged (adj)	طويل
extreme weather	طقس قاس / شديد	scorching (adj)	شديد الحرارة
forecast (n - v)	تنبؤ - يتنبأ بـ	sustainable (adj)	مُستدام
greenhouse gas emissions	انبعاثات الغازات الدفينة	vulnerable (adj)	مُغْرَض للخطر
heatwave (n)	موجة حارة		

2 Important Vocabulary

action (n)	تَصَرُّف - قيام بـ	humid (adj)	رطب
address(ed) (v)	يخاطب - يطالب	hurricane (n)	إعصار
advocate(d) (v)	يدعم - يدافع عن	hopefully (adv)	علي أمل - مأمول
ahead (adv)	مقدماً	human rights	حقوق الإنسان
ambitious (adj)	طَمُوح	ignore(d) (v)	يتجاهل
analyze(d) (v)	يُحَلِّل	immediate (adj)	فوري
audience (n)	الجمهور	impact(d) (n - v)	تأثير - يؤثر
baking (adj)	محرق / مشمس جداً	inclusive (adj)	شامل
bear - bore - borne (v)	يتحمل	industrialized (adj)	صناعي
boiling (adj)	حار للغاية	insecurity (n)	انعدام الأمن
burden(d) (n - v)	عبء - يتحمل عبء	insight (n)	بصيرة
central (adj)	محوري - مركزي	investment (n)	استثمار
chilly (adj)	بارد / فاتر	justice (n)	العدالة
climate change	التغير المناخي	livelihoods (n)	سُبُل العيش
climate justice	العدالة المناخية	low-income (adj)	منخفض الدخل
climate-related	خاص بالمناخ	majority (n)	معظم / غالبية
consequences (n)	نتائج	movement (n)	حركة
contribute(d) (v)	يساهم	overcast (adj)	ملبد بالغيوم
cooperation (n)	تعاون	policy (n)	سياسة
core (n)	جوهر - لب	populations (n)	سكان - شعوب
debate (n)	نقاش - مناظرة	protection (n)	حماية
decade (n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	protest(ed) (n - v)	احتجاج - يحتج

decision-making (n)	اتخاذ القرار	renewable (adj)	متجدد
deliver(ed) (v)	ينقل - يُوصَّل	resilience (n)	مرونة
demand(d) (n - v)	يطلب - يطلب - يتطلب	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
destructive (adj)	مدمر	responsible (adj)	مسئول عن
development (n)	تنمية - تطوير	resources (n)	موارد
distribution (n)	توزيع	rising (adj)	متزايد
dramatically (adv)	بشكل كبير	sandstorm (n)	عاصفة رملية
drought (n)	جفاف	solution (n)	حل
emissions (n)	انبعاثات	summit (n)	مؤتمر قمة
empower(ed) (v)	يُمكن	sunscreen (n)	كريم واقى من الشمس
extreme (adj)	متطرف / شديد	threaten(ed) (v)	يهدد
fair (adj)	عادل	transition (n)	انتقال - تحوُّل
foggy (adj)	ضبابى / غير واضح	unequal (adj)	غير عادل
frequent (adj)	متكرر - سائد	unheard (adj)	مُهْمَل - مُهْمَلش
global (adj)	عالمي	uphold - upheld (v)	يحترم - يُعلي من شأن
globally (adv)	دولياً - عالمياً	urge(d) (v)	يحث - يشجع
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحرارى	youth-led (adj)	ذو قيادة شبابية
honestly (adv)	بأمانة	wave (n)	موجة

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1 Key vocabulary

- Joury was worried after reading about the economic in the country.
a. crisis b. equity c. forecast d. heatwave
- Malak felt..... after wasting too much time.
a. optimistic b. vulnerable c. prolonged d. pessimistic
- The teacher's speech had a impact on Aya's thinking. She felt grateful.
a. scorching b. marginalized c. dangerous d. profound
- Zein is an environmental who campaigns for clean energy.
a. activist b. meteorologist c. brunt d. population
- The goalkeeper took the of his teammates' criticism after the match.
a. meteorologist b. activist c. population d. brunt
- My presentation focused on how threatens public safety and damages infrastructure.
a. weather resilience b. climate resilience c. extreme weather d. marginalized communities
- Rodayna believes in supporting so everyone gets fair chances to health services.
a. crisis b. equity c. forecast d. heatwave
- We need to support
a. climate resilience b. extreme weather c. greenhouse gas emissions d. environmental crises

9. Nada was deeply about her exam results. She did very badly.
 a. positive b. optimistic c. prolonged d. pessimistic
10. Salwa volunteers with a group that helps students stay in school.
 a. scorching b. profound c. marginalized d. sustainable
11. Youssef wants to the importance of water conservation at the event.
 a. emphasize b. forecast c. criticise d. bear
12. Omar works as a/an and studies rainfall and wind.
 a. activist b. meteorologist c. population d. brunt
13. Karim explained how improving helps communities recover from natural disasters.
 a. extreme weather b. greenhouse gas emissions
 c. climate resilience d. dental health
14. Mariam suffered a lot during the recent in her city.
 a. population b. equity c. forecast d. heatwave
15. The bad weather was; crops began to dry up.
 a. vulnerable b. prolonged c. pessimistic d. optimistic
16. Arwa argued that farming methods protect the environment.
 a. sustainable b. scorching c. marginalized d. profound
17. Khalid had to the brunt after the group failed the project.
 a. forecast b. bear c. advocate d. emphasize
18. Taha says from cars and factories contributes to global warming.
 a. greenhouse gas emissions b. extreme weather
 c. climate resilience d. marginalized communities
19. The weather predicted heavy rain next week.
 a. crisis b. equity c. forecast d. heatwave
20. After weeks of stress, Yara finally felt about her good chances of passing the final exam.
 a. optimistic b. prolonged c. pessimistic d. vulnerable
21. Fatma described the desert heat as absolutely by midday.
 a. sustainable b. scorching c. marginalized d. pessimistic
22. The presenter cold temperatures next week.
 a. bears b. emphasizes c. advocates d. forecasts

2 Important vocabulary

23. Teachers the students to take part in school activities.
 a. protest b. uphold c. urge d. impact
24. Omar doesn't want to his family with extra duties during exams.
 a. empower b. ignore c. burden d. address
25. The rescue team took an immediate to help families after the flood.
 a. action b. mistake c. transition d. justice
26. The of using fossil fuels is long-term environmental damage.
 a. drought b. consequence c. distribution d. emissions
27. Mariam started a food bank to support families in her town.
 a. decision-making b. youth-led c. low-income d. climate-related

28. Ashraf promised to the materials needed in time.
a. deliver b. demand c. impact d. threaten
29. The parliament member tried to for stronger laws to protect street children.
a. emphasize b. bear c. advocate d. forecast
30. The government has to the rights of all citizens equally.
a. urge b. uphold c. protest d. impact
31. Don't your friends's comments. Read them well and react positively.
a. ignore b. empower c. burden d. address
32. The rising costs of food is a heavy on low-income families.
a. action b. justice c. burden d. transition
33. Farmers are worried about the caused by climate change.
a. distribution b. drought c. causes d. draught
34. Heatwaves and floods are examples of events.
a. youth-led b. low-income c. decision-making d. climate-related
35. Pollution and rising seas small coastal villages.
a. deliver b. contribute c. threaten d. demand
36. People against bullying in their town.
a. protest b. urge c. impact d. uphold
37. Providing a good education for girls helps them to lead their communities.
a. empower b. burden c. ignore d. address
38. The of food and medicine was delayed due to bad weather.
a. consequence b. emissions c. drought d. distribution
39. The government formed a group to set new educational rules.
a. decision-making b. vulnerable c. low-income d. climate-related
40. All citizens in all countries better pay and better working conditions.
a. deliver b. demand c. threaten d. contribute
41. The country's increasing is putting pressure on its healthcare system.
a. brunt b. meteorologist c. population d. activist
42. The new energy policy will the way we use fuel.
a. upheld b. protest c. urge d. impact
43. Ahmed believes that real change starts when we the challenges people face.
a. entertain b. empower c. address d. ignore
44. Climate requires fair policies that benefit both people and nature.
a. action b. transition c. justice d. burden
45. Heavy from factories pollute the nearby rivers.
a. emissions b. droughts c. distributions d. consequences
46. Rodayna took part in a charity to clean the Nile.
a. green gas b. youth-led c. decision-making d. low-income
47. Ali is eager to to improving his family income.
a. threaten b. demand c. contribute d. deliver

3 A bit Tricky

هذا الجزء يعرض أفكار أسئلة التمييز الخاصة بالطلبة الفائقين في الامتحان

تنويه

48. After days of heat, the residents of the desert town began experiencing power outages.
a. marginalized b. sustainable c. scorching d. vulnerable

49. She shared a insight during the climate forum that left the audience silent in reflection.
 a. vulnerable b. scorching c. profound d. trivial
50. Despite their efforts, some voices from groups were excluded from the policy discussions.
 a. marginalized b. sustainable c. prolonged d. profound
51. The community is working on a plan to use solar panels for school energy needs.
 a. vulnerable b. sustainable c. scorching d. marginalized

II VOCABULARY STUDY

هذا الجزء هام جدًا سواء على مستوى تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية أو التميز في الامتحانات

تنويه

1 Definitions التعريفات

activist (n)	ناشط	a person who takes action to bring about political or social change
bear the brunt	يتحمل العبء الأكبر	to suffer the worst part of something
climate resilience	المرونة المناخية	ability to recover from climate events
crisis (n)	أزمة	a time of intense difficulty or danger
emphasize (d) (v)	يؤكد على - يركز	to give special importance or attention to something
equity (n)	إنصاف / عدالة	fairness or equal treatment
extreme weather	طقس قاس / شديد	a weather condition that is unusually strong, dangerous or destructive
forecast (v - n)	تنبؤ - يتنبأ بـ	the prediction of future weather conditions
greenhouse gas emissions	انبعاثات الغازات الدفيئة	pollution that traps heat in the Earth's atmosphere
heatwave (n)	موجة حارة	a very long period of dangerously hot weather
marginalized (adj)	مهمش / مهمّل	pushed to the edge of society, given less importance, or denied rights or opportunities
marginalized communities	المجتمعات المهمشة	groups with little power or resources
meteorologist (n)	خبير أرصاد	someone who studies or predicts the weather
optimistic (adj)	متفائل - مستبشر	having a positive outlook or expecting good things to happen
pessimistic (adj)	متشائم	expecting bad or negative outcome
profound (adj)	عميق / خطير	very deep, intense, or significant in meaning or effect
prolonged (adj)	طويل	lasting for a long time
scorching (hot) (adj)	شديد الحرارة	very hot
sustainable (adj)	مُستدام	capable of being continued over the long term without harming the environment or depleting resources
uphold (v)	يحترم / يعلى من شأن	support or defend (a rule or right)
vulnerable (adj)	مُعَرَّض للخطر	easily harmed, physically or emotionally; at risk

Mini Test 1 Definitions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A group with little power or voice in society is often seen as
a. sustainable b. vulnerable c. scorching d. marginalized
2. Someone who expects the worst possible outcome is often called
a. profound b. prolonged c. pessimistic d. optimistic
3. The ability of systems or people to recover after environmental challenges is called
a. extreme weather b. climate resilience
c. greenhouse gas emissions d. marginalized communities
4. A person with limited protection from harm is considered
a. vulnerable b. sustainable c. marginalized d. scorching
5. A/An situation lasts longer than expected.
a. optimistic b. prolonged c. profound d. pessimistic
6. An expert who predicts weather based on scientific data is called a/an
a. equity b. activist c. meteorologist d. crisis
7. Those who suffer the worst part of a situation bear the
a. emphasize b. heatwave c. forecast d. brunt
8. Floods, storms, and heatwaves are forms of
a. marginalized communities b. climate resilience
c. extreme weather d. greenhouse gas emissions
9. A solution that can continue into the future without damage is described as
a. vulnerable b. sustainable c. scorching d. marginalized
10. A serious situation requiring urgent action is often a/an
a. meteorologist b. equity c. activist d. crisis
11. A period of extreme and extended heat is called a/an
a. heatwave b. forecast c. brunt d. emphasize
12. To something is to make it stand out or seem more important.
a. forecast b. cause c. emphasize d. summarize
13. A person who sees hope and opportunity, even in difficulty, is
a. prolonged b. pessimistic c. profound d. optimistic
14. A person who pushes for change and defends rights is known as a/an
a. activist b. meteorologist c. equity d. crisis
15. A weather tells us what conditions to expect.
a. brunt b. forecast c. heatwave d. emphasize
16. trap heat and contribute to climate change.
a. Marginalized communities b. Climate resilience
c. Extreme weather d. Greenhouse gas emissions
17. When something is extremely hot, it is described as
a. marginalized b. sustainable c. scorching d. vulnerable
18. An idea that is deep and meaningful is best described as
a. profound b. prolonged c. pessimistic d. optimistic
19. Fairness in treatment and opportunity is called
a. activist b. equity c. meteorologist d. crisis

2 Derivatives المشتقات

activist		
activist (n)	ناشط	- An activist supports their community.
activism (n)	النشاطية / الفعالية	- Environmental activism is growing among young people.
active (adj)	نشط / فعال	- She plays an active role in my life.
actively (adv)	بنشاط	- He actively supports educational reform.
emphasize		
emphasize (v)	يؤكد	- Teachers emphasize the importance of reading.
emphasis (n)	تأكيد	- Teachers put emphasis on reading.
emphatic (adj)	حازم / مؤكد	- She spoke in an emphatic tone.
equity		
equity (n)	عدالة / إنصاف	- Equity in rights ensures equal opportunities for all citizens.
equitable (adj)	عادل / منصف	- I think this is an equitable solution.
equitably (adv)	بعادلة	- Meals are equitably shared among us.
extreme		
extreme (adj)	شديد / قاس	- Extreme weather events are becoming more common.
extremely (adv)	للغاية	- The temperatures this summer are extremely high.
extremity (n)	أقصى حد / طرف	- The climber reached the extremity of the mountain.
extremist (n - adj)	متطرف	- We refuse his extremist behavior. - He is an extremist .
emission		
emission (n)	انبعاث	- Carbon emissions lead to climate change.
emit (v)	يبعث / يصدر	- Factories emit large amounts of smoke.
emitter (n)	بائع / مصدر انبعاث	- Planes are one of the emitters of smoke.
emitted (adj)	منبعث	- Harmful gases were emitted during the fire.
marginalize		
marginalize (v)	يهتمش	- Society should not marginalize poor people.
marginalization (n)	التهميش	- Marginalization often leads to inequality.
marginalized (adj)	مهشمش	- Marginalized communities need more support.
marginal (adj)	هامشي	- He lives in a marginal area with little access to services.
optimistic		
optimistic (adj)	متفائل	- Fatma is optimistic about her future career.
optimism (n)	التفاؤل	- Optimism helps people stay strong during crises.

pessimistic		
pessimistic (adj)	متشائم	- Being pessimistic is a negative feeling.
pessimism (n)	التشاؤم	- Pessimism stops people from trying new things.
profound		
profound (adj)	عميق / بالغ	- He gave a profound talk about justice.
profoundly (adv)	بعمق / بشكل عميق	- Covid-19 profoundly affected the whole world.
prolong		
prolong (v)	يُطيل / يمدد	- Neglecting problems prolongs them.
prolonged (adj)	طويل الأمد	- Africa suffers from prolonged poverty.
scorch		
scorch (v)	يُحرق / يلهب	- The fire scorched thousands of hectares of forest.
scorching (adj)	حارق / شديد الحرارة	- The people of Aswan suffer from the scorching sun in summer.
scorched (adj)	محترق / متفحم	- The plants looked scorched after the heatwave.
sustainable		
sustain (v)	يُحافظ على / يُدعم	- We must sustain efforts to protect the environment.
sustainable (adj)	مستدام	- Sustainable farming helps protect natural resources.
sustainability (n)	الاستدامة	- Green energy promotes sustainability .
sustained (adj)	مستمر / متواصل	- The area faced sustained rainfall for a week.
vulnerable		
vulnerable (adj)	غرضة للخطر	- Elderly people are more vulnerable during heatwaves.
vulnerability (n)	هشاشة / سهولة التعرض للخطر	- The report discussed the vulnerability of coastal cities.
vulnerably (adv)	بضعف / بهشاشة	- He stood vulnerably in front of the crowd, waiting for judgement.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Ahmed is a well-known human rights
a. activism b. active c. activist d. activation
- Teachers should the importance of teamwork.
a. emphasis b. emphasize c. emphatic d. emphasized
- Access to clean water is a matter of social
a. equity b. equal c. quality d. equitable
- The desert's heat made it difficult to travel.
a. extremism b. extremist c. extreme d. extremely

5. Factories must reduce their to help the planet.
a. emit b. emissions c. emitting d. emitted
6. The new policies aim to support groups in society.
a. marginal b. marginalized c. marginally d. marginalize
7. Despite the bad news, she remained about the future.
a. optimism b. optimistic c. optimist d. optimistically
8. The fire left a lot of furniture behind it.
a. scorched b. scorching c. scorch d. scorches
9. The speaker's words had a effect on the audience.
a. profundities b. profoundly c. profound d. profounding
10. The drought caused serious damage to the crops.
a. prolong b. prolonged c. prolonging d. prolongation
11. Babies are more to viral illnesses.
a. vulnerability b. vulnerably c. vulnerable d. vulnerableness

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

analyze	data	يُحلّل البيانات	ignore	impacts	يتجاهل التأثيرات
bear	the brunt	يتحمّل العبء الأكبر	play	a role	يلعب دورًا
deliver	information	يقدّم المعلومات	take	action	يتّخذ إجراء
give	a voice to	يتحدث بلسان	uphold	rights	يحمي أو يحترم الحقوق

Mini Test 3 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Data is accurately via sophisticated AI tools.
a. delivered b. analyzed c. ignored d. borne
2. Teachers need to information clearly, so that students can follow.
a. uphold b. bear c. deliver d. analyze
3. In many disasters, poor communities often the brunt of the damage.
a. give b. take c. ignore d. bear
4. Governments must an immediate action to protect the environment.
a. take b. uphold c. play d. analyze
5. Campaigns aim to a voice to people who are rarely heard.
a. bear b. give c. take d. deliver
6. Citizens have a duty to and protect values.
a. deliver b. analyze c. uphold d. take

4 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
activist (n)	ناشط	campaigner, advocate, reformer
crisis (n)	أزمة	emergency, disaster, critical situation
emphasize(d) (v)	يؤكد على	highlight, stress, underline
equity (n)	مساواة	fairness, justice, impartiality
extreme (adj)	متطرف	intense, severe, excessive
marginalized (adj)	مُهْمَل / مُهْمَل	excluded, disadvantaged, oppressed
optimistic (adj)	متفائل - مستبشر	hopeful, positive, confident
profound (adj)	عميق / خطير	deep, meaningful, intense
prolonged (adj)	طويل	extended, lengthy
resilience (n)	المرونة	adaptability
scorching (adj)	شديد الحرارة	burning, boiling, extremely hot
sustainable (adj)	مُستدام	eco-friendly, long-lasting, environmentally friendly
vulnerable (adj)	مُعْزِض للخطر	at risk, exposed, defenseless, endangered

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
resilience	المرونة	fragility, weakness هشاشة - ضعف
crisis (n)	أزمة	stability, peace, calm استقرار - سلام
emphasize(d) (v)	يؤكد على	ignore, overlook يتجاهل
equity (n)	مساواة	inequality, injustice عدم مساواة - ظلم
extreme	متطرف	moderate, mild معتدل - خفيف
marginalized (adj)	مُهْمَل / مُهْمَل	included, empowered, accepted مشمول - مُقْبَل
optimistic (adj)	متفائل	pessimistic, doubtful متشائم - شاك
profound (adj)	عميق / خطير	superficial, trivial سطحي - تافه
prolonged (adj)	طويل	brief, short-lived قصير - موجز
scorching (adj)	شديد الحرارة	freezing, chilly متجمد - بارد
sustainable (adj)	مُستدام	wasteful, harmful, short-term ضار - قصير الأمد
vulnerable (adj)	مُعْزِض للخطر	protected, secure, strong محمي - آمن - قوي

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

- Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :
 - "The community showed great resilience after the disaster." The word 'resilience' here is a synonym of
 - a. adaptability
 - b. conflict
 - c. regret
 - d. stress
 - e. toughness
 - "The government acted quickly to deal with the crisis." The word 'crisis' is an antonym of
 - a. problem
 - b. peace
 - c. situation
 - d. stability
 - e. issue
 - "Real equity requires that everyone has the same opportunities." The word 'equity' is an antonym of
 - a. justice
 - b. injustice
 - c. inequality
 - d. effort
 - e. harmony

4. "His views had a profound effect on the audience." The word 'profound' here is a synonym of

- a. deep b. quick c. bright
d. meaningful e. clear

5. "Prolonged exposure to the sun can be harmful." The word 'prolonged' is an antonym of

- a. brief b. continued c. extended
d. lasting e. short-lived

6 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

according to	وفقاً لـ / حسب	extreme weather events	أحوال جوية متطرفة
at its core	في جوهرة	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
be left to suffer	يترك ليعاني وحده	take stronger action	يتخذ إجراءات أقوى
bear the brunt	يتحمل النصيب الأكبر من العبء	take urgent precautions	يتخذ احتياطات عاجلة
contribute the least	يساهم بأقل قدر	to what extent	إلى أي مدى
equal treatment	معاملة متساوية	take the heat	يتحمل الانتقاد أو اللوم
face the music	يتحمل العواقب حتى لو كانت صعبة	shoulder the burden	يتحمل مسؤولية صعبة

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

contribute to + (inf.+ing)	يساهم في	suffer from	يعاني من
give up	يُقلع عن - يستسلم	take part in	يشارك في
look forward to + (inf.+ing)	يتطلع إلي	trap in	يحتجز/يحبس في
show up	يظهر / يحضر		

Mini Test 5 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- the study, climate change affects poor communities more severely.
a. According to b. Because of c. In case d. On behalf
-, this article is about human rights.
a. First sight b. After it c. At its core d. In addition to
- Low-income nations often during climate crises they didn't cause.
a. take turns b. make decisions
c. ignore the facts d. bear the brunt
- The sad reality is that those who often suffer the most by environmental disasters.
a. act quickly b. contribute the least
c. lead protests d. own property
- should countries act if they want to prevent future disasters?
a. How long b. To what extent c. For that reason d. What size
- Many countries contribute carbon emissions.
a. reduce b. reducing c. to reducing d. reduces
- This child suffers anemia.
a. at b. over c. to d. from

8. The villagers were trapped their homes due to flooding.
 a. in b. under c. on d. into
9. Students all over the world look forward a difference.
 a. to make b. to making c. make d. making

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

Weather Expressions Tips

تعابير مستخدمة في الطقس

We can use special words and phrases to describe the weather

يمكننا أن نستخدم كلمات وتعابير خاصة لوصف الطقس

- **scorching hot** = very hot شديد الحرارة
- **boiling** = extremely hot حار للغاية
- **baking** = very sunny and hot محرق / مشمس جدًا
- **freezing cold** = very cold بارد جدًا
- **chilly** = a little cold فاتر / بارد
- **pouring with rain** = raining heavily تمطر بشدة
- **humid** = hot and wet رطب
- **stormy** = with strong winds and rain عاصف
- **foggy** = with thick mist in the air ضبابي
- **overcast** = cloudy and grey ملبد بالغيوم

climate - weather

- **climate (n)** المناخ (حالة الجو على المدى الطويل في منطقة معينة)
 - Egypt has a dry desert **climate**.
- **weather (n)** الطقس (حالة الجو اليومية)
 - The **weather** today is sunny and hot.

Note: لاحظ أن

- **Weather** is short-term and changes daily.
- **Climate** is long-term and stable over time.

drought - draught

- **drought (n)** جفاف
 - The farmers suffered during the long **drought**.
- **draught = draft (n)** نسمة هواء باردة / تيار هواء
 - Close the window – there's a cold **draught** coming in.

Note: لاحظ أن

- **Drought** relates to climate and water.
- **Draught** is a cold breeze or a sip (British English).

Important idioms

بعض المصطلحات الهامة

- **bear the brunt** – to suffer the worst part of something bad.

يتحمل الجزء الأكبر (من الضرر أو اللوم أو الهجوم)

– During the storm, the small town **bore the brunt** of the damage.

- **take the heat** – to accept criticism or blame.

يقبل النقد أو اللوم أو الغضب بدلاً من الآخرين أو بنفسه

– The manager **took the heat** for the team's failure.

- **shoulder the burden** – to take responsibility for something difficult or unpleasant.

يتحمل مسئولية صعبة أو ثقيلة

– She had to **shoulder the burden** of caring for her family.

- **face the music** – to accept the unpleasant results of your actions.

يواجه العواقب أو النتائج (غالبًا السيئة) لأفعاله.

– He cheated in the exam, and now he must **face the music**.

equality - equity - fairness - justice

- **equality (n)** المساواة

تعني أن الجميع يحصل على نفس الشيء أو نفس الفرصة.

– **Equality** gives the same tools to everyone.

- **equity (n)** العدالة / الإنصاف

تعني أن يحصل كل شخص على ما يحتاجه فعلياً ليصل لنفس النتيجة أو الفرصة العادلة.

– **Equity** means giving extra help to students who need it.

- **fairness (n)** الإنصاف

تعني أن تعامل الناس بطريقة محايدة دون تحيز أو تفضيل لأحد.

– The teacher graded the papers with **fairness**.

- **justice (n)** العدالة

تعني نظام عادل لتحقيق العدل تحت مظلة المبادئ والقوانين والأخلاق.

– They demanded **justice** after the unfair treatment.

Note: لاحظ أن

- **Equality** = sameness in treatment
- **Equity** = fairness by adjusting support
- **Fairness** is often personal or situational.
- **Justice** is systemic, legal, or societal.

forecast - predict

- **forecast (v)** يتنبأ (بناءً على معلومات)

– Rain was **forecast** for the weekend.

- **predict (v)** يتوقع

– Experts **predict** that sea levels will rise in 50 years.

Note: لاحظ أن

- **Forecast** is often more technical or based on data (e.g., weather, economy).
- **Predict** can be general, personal, or based on belief or logic.

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Egypt's is hot and dry most of the year.
a. climate b. weather c. storm d. air
- Today's is cloudy with a chance of rain in the evening.
a. climate b. weather c. drought d. mist
- Farmers lost crops due to a severe that lasted for months.
a. draught b. storm c. drought d. breeze
- Close the window, please. There's a cold coming in.
a. draught b. drought c. dryness d. wave
- True gives people what they need, not just the same as everyone else.
a. equality b. justice c. fairness d. equity
- After the unfair trial, the public demanded for the innocent man.
a. justice b. fairness c. equality d. reason
- The weather in summer near the sea is often, and people sweat a lot.
a. chilly b. humid c. overcast d. freezing cold
- The sky istoday, so we can't see the sun.
a. overcast b. scorching c. boiling d. chilly

III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Text

• on Lesson 1 SB page 37

Climate change must be seen not only as an **environmental crisis**⁽¹⁾ but also as a **profound**⁽²⁾ issue of global **justice**⁽³⁾. While industrialized nations are largely responsible for the majority of **greenhouse gas emissions**⁽⁴⁾, it is often low-income and **marginalized communities**⁽⁵⁾ - particularly in the Global South - that **bear the brunt**⁽⁶⁾ of its consequences. These populations might face rising sea levels, **long**⁽⁷⁾ droughts, food **shortage**⁽⁸⁾, and extreme weather events that threaten their health and safety.

Climate justice emphasizes that we cannot ignore these effects. It calls for fair policies, shared decisions, and cooperation to fix the unequal burdens of climate change. People who cause the least damage must not suffer the most.



أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- أزمة بيئية
- عميق
- عدل
- انبعاثات الغازات الدفينة
- المجتمعات المهمشة
- يتحمل العبء الأكبر
- طويل
- نقص

Youth around the world are actively working to stop climate change, showing great leadership and creativity. One initiative is the “Youth Climate Lab” which empowers young innovators to develop solutions for climate challenges, such as creating sustainable energy projects or designing waste reduction programs. Their efforts have resulted in tangible changes, like the implementation of community solar projects and successful recycling campaigns in various regions. At its core, climate justice is about equity, responsibility, and giving a voice to those who are often unheard in global debates. Without justice, there can be no true solution to the climate crisis.

2 Listening Text

• on Lesson 2 SB page 39

Presenter : Good evening, listeners. With the recent **scorching**⁽¹⁾ heat across Egypt, one topic everyone’s talking about is – yes, you guessed it – the weather. Joining us today in the studio is **meteorologist**⁽²⁾ Tamer Mansour. Earlier, we asked you to **share**⁽³⁾ your questions, and now Tamer is here to answer a few. Welcome, Tamer!

Tamer : Thanks! Great to be here.

Presenter : First question from our **audience**⁽⁴⁾: What’s the difference between a meteorologist and a weather presenter?

Tamer : Well, a meteorologist **collects**⁽⁵⁾ and **analyzes**⁽⁶⁾ weather data, while a presenter simply **delivers**⁽⁷⁾ that information, usually on TV or radio. Some presenters are trained meteorologists, but not many.

Presenter : And how far **ahead**⁽⁸⁾ can you **predict**⁽⁹⁾ the weather?

Tamer : Usually five to seven days. But some weather types are easier to predict than others.

Presenter : Have you noticed any changes in Egypt’s weather over the last **decade**⁽¹⁰⁾?

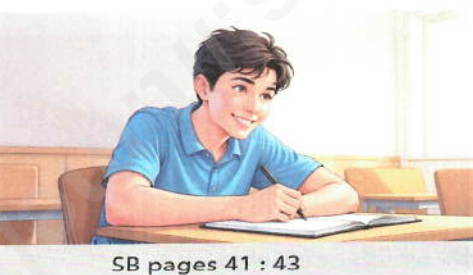
Tamer : Not **dramatically**⁽¹¹⁾ – but this year’s **heatwave**⁽¹²⁾ is unusual. Extreme weather might be becoming more **frequent**⁽¹³⁾ **globally**⁽¹⁴⁾, and it certainly seems to be getting hotter.

Presenter : Are you **optimistic**⁽¹⁵⁾ about climate change?

Tamer : **Honestly**⁽¹⁶⁾, I’m a bit **pessimistic**⁽¹⁷⁾. In Egypt, we’ll likely face more extreme **heatwaves**⁽¹⁸⁾ in the future.

Presenter : Thanks, Tamer. Fascinating **insights**⁽¹⁹⁾ – and **hopefully**⁽²⁰⁾ cooler weather soon!

- (1) شديد
- (2) خبير أرصاد
- (3) يشارك
- (4) الجمهور
- (5) يجمع
- (6) يحلل
- (7) ينقل - يُؤصل
- (8) مقدماً
- (9) يتنبأ
- (10) عقد (10 سنوات)
- (11) بشكل كبير
- (12) فوْجة حارة
- (13) متكرر - سائد
- (14) دولياً - عالمياً
- (15) متفائل - مستبشر
- (16) بكل أمانة
- (17) متشائم
- (18) موجات حارة
- (19) بصيرة
- (20) علي أمل



SB pages 41 : 43

PART TWO

Lesson

3

Climate Change and Coastal Cities

I LISTENING

• on Lesson 3 SB page 41

Coastal cities⁽¹⁾ such as Alexandria **face great risks**⁽²⁾ from climate change. As **global**⁽³⁾ temperatures **rise**⁽⁴⁾, **glaciers**⁽⁵⁾ and ice sheets melt, and sea levels increase. Scientists **emphasize**⁽⁶⁾ that even a small rise in sea level can cause serious flooding in **low-lying areas**⁽⁷⁾ that can stop business for days. This must be one of the greatest threats to homes, schools, and hospitals. Experts warn that the damage might be worse than many people think, and floods could be happening more often in the near future.

In Alexandria, many people live close to the sea. They notice that the waves are stronger and sometimes reach the streets. Families worry about their homes and shop owners worry about their shops, but they also **take precautions**⁽⁸⁾ to stay safe. Fishermen explain that the sea is changing.

They say the waves must have been caused by global warming, since storms can't have become stronger for no reason. They flooded already.

Still, people remain **hopeful**⁽⁹⁾ and try to prepare in **advance**⁽¹⁰⁾. The state is also working to reduce the dangers. It builds sea walls to protect neighborhoods and **invests**⁽¹¹⁾ in renewable energy to reduce pollution. **Authorities**⁽¹²⁾ **run awareness campaigns**⁽¹³⁾ to teach citizens how to act during storms. Officials admit that without these measures, the losses might have been far greater. With these efforts, the risks may be reduced, and Alexandria can remain safe for future generations.

Many experts also argue that we shouldn't have ignored the problem of climate change. Citizens should have taken more responsibility for reducing pollution in their daily lives.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) مدن ساحلية
- (2) يواجهه أخطار شديدة
- (3) عالمي
- (4) يرتفع
- (5) أنهار / جبال جليدية
- (6) يؤكد على
- (7) مناطق منخفضة
- (8) يتخذ إجراءات احتياطية
- (9) ملىء بالأمل
- (10) مسبقاً
- (11) يستثمر
- (12) سلطات
- (13) يقوم بحملات توعية

II LANGUAGE

Modal verbs of deduction, advice and regret

الأفعال الناقصة الدالة على الاستنتاج والنصيحة والندم

1

Get ready

استعد

الأفعال الناقصة المستخدمة لعمل الاستنتاج - معانيها واستخداماتها كالتالي :

Modal verb الفعل الناقص	Notes ملاحظات
must	لابد - تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج مُثَبَّت مبني على دليل قوي (شعور بالتأكد) : - He has eaten nothing all day. He must be hungry.
can't	لا يمكن - تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج منفي مبني على دليل قوي (شعور بالتأكد) : - He has eaten nothing all day. He can't be full.
might / may / could	ربما / من المحتمل / قد - تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج مبني على دليل ضعيف (عدم تأكد) : - I don't know why Sama isn't at the party. She might be ill. She may have a problem. She could be in a bad mood.

٢ الاستنتاج معلومة قائمة على دليل وليست معلومة يقينية - لاحظ الفرق في المعنى :

- Bassem **is** an officer. (يقين - أعلم تماماً أنه ضابط)
- Bassem **must be** an officer. He wears a uniform and has a gun. (استنتاج قوي)
- Bassem **might be** an officer. He has a gun. (استنتاج ضعيف)

٣ تذكر أن نفي (must) في الاستنتاج هو (can't) وليس (mustn't) :

- He **must be** ill. He (mustn't – can't) be well.

٤ تدل التعبيرات التالية على استنتاج قوي، ونستخدم معها (must) في الإثبات و (can't/couldn't) في النفي :

→ I feel sure / certain أشعر بالتأكد - certainly / surely / definitely من المؤكد

→ impossible مستحيل

- We **feel sure** Aya isn't out. She **must be** in her house. She **can't be** at school.

٥ تدل التعبيرات التالية على عدم التأكد ونستخدم معها (may – might – could) :

→ I'm not sure/ I'm not certain لست متأكد

- Perhaps / maybe ربما

→ It is probable / likely / possible من المحتمل

- I don't think / I don't believe لا أظن

→ I don't know لست أدري

- I **don't know** why Rodayna is crying. She **may / might / could have** a problem at school.

٦ أحياناً لا يوجد أي تعبير صريح مما سبق يدل على درجة التأكد ، لكن يكون هناك ما يوحي منطقياً بقوة الدليل أو ضعفه :

- Omar **has a good memory**. He **can't** have forgotten. (الدليل هنا منطقياً قوي)

- This man **always gets up early**. He **might** sell milk. (الدليل هنا منطقياً ضعيف)

Mini Test 1

● Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. He be a doctor. I feel sure.

a. must

b. can't

c. might

d. a & b

2. He be a doctor. I have no idea.

a. must

b. can't

c. might

d. a & b

3. He be a doctor. He is examining a patient.

a. must

b. can't

c. might

d. a & b

4. He be a doctor. He welcomes patients in the reception and makes reservations حجز.

a. must

b. can't

c. might

d. a & b

5. He an old officer. He is a marshal.

a. is

b. must be

c. can't be

d. might be

6. He an old officer. All other officers salute him. يُحيّي تحية عسكرية

a. is

b. must be

c. can't be

d. might be

١ لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل قوى فى المضارع نستخدم :

معلوم $\Rightarrow$ Subj. الفاعل + must / can't لا يمكن / لابد + inf. ...

مجهول $\Rightarrow$ Obj. مفعول + must / can't + be + p.p. ...

- Mohammed Salah is healthy and fit. He **must care** about his health and fitness. He **must do** a lot of exercises. He **can't eat** much food. (معلوم)
- Mohammed Salah is healthy and fit. His health and fitness **must be cared** about. A lot of exercises **must be done** by him. Much food **can't be eaten** by him. (مجهول)

٢ لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل ضعيف فى المضارع نستخدم :

معلوم $\Rightarrow$ Subj. + might / may / could ربما + inf. ...

مجهول $\Rightarrow$ Obj. + might / may / could + be + p.p. ...

- I've no idea when the new equipment will be delivered. They **may / might / could deliver** it tomorrow. (معلوم)
- I've no idea when the new equipment will be delivered. It **(may / might / could) be delivered** tomorrow. (مجهول)

٣ لعمل استنتاج فى المضارع المستمر نستخدم :

$\rightarrow$ Subj. + must / can't / might / may / could + be + (inf. + ing) ...

- Ayman hasn't answered my call. He **must be interviewing** some applicants.
- Reem hasn't told me why she doesn't go out these days. She **might be studying** for the final exams.

Mini Test 2

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Rodayna always comes first. She be clever.
a. must b. can't c. could d. might
- Rodayna always comes first. She be lazy.
a. must b. can't c. could d. might
- It is possible that he is out. He be at home.
a. could b. might c. must d. a& b
- It is impossible that he is out. He be at home.
a. could b. might c. must d. a& b
- I can smell my mother's delicious food. She must lunch.
a. be preparing b. prepares c. to prepare d. prepare
- He has a large villa. He a lot of money.
a. can't earn b. mustn't earn c. must earn d. might earn

١ لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل قوي في الماضي نستخدم :

معلوم → Subj. + must/can't/couldn't + have + p.p. ...

مجهول → Obj. + must/can't/couldn't + have + been + p.p. ...

- Zidan **was** healthy and fit. He **must have cared** about his health and fitness. He **must have done** a lot of exercises. He **can't have eaten** much food.
- Zidan **was** healthy and fit. His health and fitness **must have been cared** about. A lot of exercises **must have been done** by him. Much food **can't have been eaten** by him.

٢ لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل ضعيف في الماضي نستخدم :

معلوم → Subj. + might / may / could + have + p.p. ...

مجهول → Obj. + might / may / could + have + been + p.p. ...

- Nadia **may / might / could have prepared** a big lunch. I'm not sure.
- A big lunch **may / might / could have been prepared** by Nadia. I'm not sure.

٣ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي نستخدم :

→ Subj. + must / can't / might / may / could + have + been + (inf. + ing) ...

- I'm not sure what made Yara not attend my birthday. She **might have been helping** her mother at home.

٤ يمكن أن تعبر (could have + p.p.) عن استنتاج ضعيف أو عن شيء كان من الممكن حدوثه ولكنه لم يحدث :

- He **hasn't visited** us for a long time. He **could have been** busy. (استنتاج ضعيف)
- He **had the ability** to fix the computer but **he didn't**. He **could have fixed** it.

(كان يستطيع ولم يفعل)

Mini Test 3

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Leen looked happy. She some good news.

- a. must hear b. must have heard c. can't hear d. can't have heard

2. Leen looked annoyed. She any good news.

- a. must hear b. must have heard c. can't hear d. can't have heard

3. The car no longer breaks down. My father taken it to the mechanic.

- a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been

4. The car no longer breaks down. It taken to the mechanic.
 a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been
5. The car still breaks down so often. My father taken it to the mechanic.
 a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been
6. The car still breaks down so often. It taken to the mechanic.
 a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been
7. I don't think that Rokaya did the shopping. She it.
 a. might do b. can't do c. could have done d. can't have done

4

should

ينبغي / يجب

*** For advice :**

١ تُستخدم (should) لإعطاء النصيحة :

→ Subj. + should / shouldn't + inf. ...

→ Subj. + ought to / ought not + inf. ...

- You **should work** hard to achieve your goal. You **shouldn't waste** your time.

*** For blame or regret :**

٢ تُستخدم (should + have + p.p.)

لتوجيه اللوم أو التعبير عن الندم لعدم القيام بشئ كان من المفترض القيام به في الماضي :

→ Subj. + should + have + p.p. ...

- I **should have taken** my medicine on time.

(ندم - كان يجب أن أفعل ذلك)

٢ وتُستخدم (shouldn't + have + p.p.) لتوجيه اللوم أو التعبير عن الندم للقيام بشئ في الماضي كان من

المفترض عدم القيام به :

→ Subj. + shouldn't + have + p.p. ...

- You **shouldn't have added** too much salt.

(لوم - كان من المفترض عدم القيام بذلك)

Mini Test 4

● Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You do what is right and fair.
 a. should b. shouldn't c. can d. a & c
2. You do what upsets me.
 a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. could
3. He missed the train. He up earlier.
 a. should get b. shouldn't get
 c. should have got d. shouldn't have got
4. He missed the train. He up so late.
 a. should get b. shouldn't get
 c. should have got d. must have got

General Exercises On Language

● Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. You be very tired after this long journey.
a. have to b. must c. need d. can't
2. She looks very unhappy. She have got the job.
a. can't b. must c. may d. shouldn't
3. The flowers are dead. He them.
a. must have watered b. shouldn't have watered
c. had to water d. can't have watered
4. He have died of cancer, but we have no evidence.
a. may b. must c. can't d. mustn't
5. She have known about the bad news. She seemed very sad.
a. couldn't b. must c. can't d. mustn't
6. Amir is not here now, so he have gone to the museum by himself.
a. must b. can't c. should d. can
7. Ali Salem a very important author. Everyone wants him to sign their book.
a. will be b. could be c. must be d. must have been
8. Rokaya got the silver medal; she hard lately.
a. can't have trained b. must have trained
c. shouldn't have trained d. didn't have to train
9. She be happy; she has just got married to her cousin.
a. must b. had to c. can't d. ought not to
10. Adel by train yesterday. I'm not sure.
a. might travel b. might have traveled c. should travel d. must have traveled
11. I regret making that silly mistake; I have shouted at my little daughter.
a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. can't
12. She the directions. She found herself in a completely different destination.
a. had to follow b. can't have followed
c. may have followed d. mustn't have followed
13. This museum be important; it's visited by hundreds of tourists every day.
a. shouldn't b. can't c. mustn't d. must
14. Everyone is putting on their winter coats; it raining.
a. had to start b. must have started
c. shouldn't have started d. mustn't have started
15. Your essay is full of grammar errors. You it well.
a. needn't have checked b. must have checked
c. can't have checked d. had to check
16. Look for your pencil in the drawer. It be there next to the ruler.
a. can't b. must c. have to d. shouldn't

17. Maha will wait for her husband. She has forgotten her key. She have brought it.
 a. must b. may c. might d. should
18. Her watch have cost a lot of money. It's made of gold.
 a. must b. might c. could d. can't
19. That watch have cost a lot of money. It is made of plastic.
 a. must b. might c. can't d. can
20. I have seen her car outside. She
 a. can't arrive b. can't have arrived c. might arrive d. must have arrived
21. We don't know when earthquakes happen. They predicted.
 a. can't b. have been c. had been d. can't be
22. He can hardly walk. He be very ill.
 a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. should
23. No one is sure where Ali is, but we think he have gone to see his uncle.
 a. needn't b. can't c. might d. must
24. It very windy during the night. There are leaves all over the ground.
 a. must have been b. must be c. can't have been d. can't be

2 Special Cases

25. My father left for work and he to take his keys. I found them in the living room.
 a. mustn't have remembered b. had to remember
 c. couldn't have remembered d. must have remembered
26. Leen hasn't arrived yet. She the bus. Who knows?
 a. should have missed b. might have missed c. had to miss d. must have missed
27. Samy traveled to work by bus. He by train as usual.
 a. must have traveled b. had to travel
 c. could have traveled d. might have traveled
28. Ali did not attend the meeting. He invited. He'd just had a fever and is in hospital.
 a. can't have b. can't have been c. mustn't have been d. shouldn't have
29. He on time because he missed his usual early train.
 a. had to arrive b. must have arrived
 c. won't have arrived d. couldn't have arrived
30. The police knew everything about the murderer. They have undertaken their investigations.
 a. should b. can't c. must d. might
31. Dina have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees الغائبين didn't include her name.
 a. must b. can't c. needn't d. mustn't
32. They left two hours ago, so they arrived by now. It's not far.
 a. must b. must have c. can't have d. have
33. She have caught her bus because she would have been here by now.
 a. can't b. might c. could d. must
34. She have gone far. I just saw her car leave a minute ago.
 a. must b. should c. can't d. can

35. John has forgotten about the meeting. We have reminded him about it yesterday.
a. might b. ought not to c. ought to d. must
36. He have told you yesterday, but he forgot.
a. might b. can c. must d. should
37. You have shouted at him. He'll never forgive you.
a. ought not to b. must c. might d. can't
38. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and killed.
a. may have b. must have been c. could have been d. might have
39. I revised more for my exams. I think I'll fail!
a. could have b. might have c. must have d. ought to have
40. The concert was fantastic. You really have come.
a. might b. can't c. must d. ought to
41. We agreed to meet yesterday but when I got there I didn't see him. He waiting elsewhere.
a. couldn't have b. can't have c. could have been d. must not have
42. You have tried to fix the roof yourself. You might have fallen off and been badly injured.
a. can't b. shouldn't c. should d. must

3 Check your understanding

43. "I know Ahmed is at school today. I have seen him enter the laboratory a moment ago." What does this mean?
a. Ahmed must be at school. b. Ahmed can't be at school.
c. Ahmed may be at school. d. Ahmed is at school.
44. "I'm sure Ahmed is at school today. It is a school day and Ahmed is a clever student." What does this mean?
a. Ahmed must be at school. b. Ahmed can't be at school.
c. Ahmed may be at school. d. Ahmed is at school.
45. "I don't know why he is late."
a. He must have missed the school bus.
b. He must be asleep.
c. He may have forgotten the time of the meeting.
d. I must have forgotten to remind him.
46. "Hoda can't have been ill."; this means
a. I'm sure Hoda is ill. b. I'm sure Hoda was ill.
c. I'm sure Hoda isn't ill. d. I'm sure Hoda wasn't ill.
47. A: What is Ahmed doing in the garden? B: I have no idea.
a. He must be watering the trees. b. He might be looking after the flowers.
c. He can't be playing there. d. He might have planted a tree.
48. "....., but I preferred watching the match on TV."
a. I could have gone to the stadium b. I might have gone to the stadium
c. I may have gone to the stadium d. I must have gone to the stadium

49. "He failed the driving test."

- a. He should have trained well.
- c. He must have trained well.

b. He can't have trained well.

d. a & b

50. "You made your sister upset again!"

- a. You may have shouted at her.
- c. You should have shouted at her.

b. You will have shouted at her.

d. You shouldn't have shouted at her.

Stop Here !

تدريب تلقائي على القواعد اللغوية

• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. I'm certain he isn't at school. (can't)
2. Maybe it is raining in London. (might)
3. I'm sure this is the right bus. (must)
4. I'm certain they are not serious. (can't)
5. Perhaps he is reading in his room. (could)
6. I'm certain Lujain took the photo. (must have)
7. I'm certain Nadeen is the top student. (must)
8. I'm certain these boys are twins. (must)
9. I'm sure Nour left early. (must have)
10. I'm sure this is Zeina's bag. (must)
11. I'm sure this isn't their car. (can't)
12. It was possible for you to win the race, but you didn't try hard enough. (could)
13. It was wrong for Ashraf to ignore the doctor's advice. (shouldn't)
14. It's impossible that he is telling the truth. (can't)
15. It's impossible that Omar made this mistake. (can't have)
16. It's possible that Rodayna knows the answer. (might)
17. It's possible that the bus is late. (may)
18. It's possible that they are related. (may)
19. It's possible that they missed the train. (could have)
20. Maybe Ahmed left his keys at home. (may have)
21. Maybe Karim saw the email. (might have)
22. Maybe the students are in the library. (might)
23. Perhaps Areej misunderstood the instructions. (might have)
24. Perhaps Ayman is still at work. (may)
25. She had time to call you, but she forgot. (could have)
26. There was a possibility that Nasser would help us, but he didn't. (could have)
27. You had the chance to see the show, but you decided not to go. (could have)
28. You made a mistake when you lied to your teacher. (shouldn't have)

A bit advanced

29. It's possible that Malak didn't hear the bell. (could have)
30. I regret eating so much rice. (shouldn't)
31. I regret not apologizing to my friends. (should)
32. I was able to answer the question, but I was too nervous. (could)



SB pages 44 : 46

PART THREE

Lessons

4 & 5

► Global Climate
► How to Help
Our Environment

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

accelerated (adj)	متسارع	inundation (n)	غمر بالماء - إغراق
accompanied (adj)	مصاحب /	megacity (n)	مدينة ضخمة
adaptation (n)	تكيف	migration (n)	هجرة
climate migration	هجرة المناخ	mitigate(d) (v)	يُخفف
commitment (n)	التزام	persistence (n)	إصرار - مثابرة
displacement (n)	نزوح	persistent (adj)	مثابر - مستمر
documented (adj)	مُوثق	phenomenon (n)	ظاهرة
expansion (n)	تمدد	projections (n)	توقعات
implemented (adj)	مُنفذ / مطبق	substantial (adj)	كبير / جوهري
implications (n)	تداعيات / آثار	thermal (adj)	حراري (أرضي)
indicate(d) (v)	يوضح - يشير إلى	transformative (adj)	تحويلي - يُحدث تغييرًا جذريًا

2 Important Vocabulary

address(ed) (v)	يعالج / يتعامل مع / يخاطب	meaningful (adj)	ذو مغزى - مؤثر
agreement (n)	اتفاقية - توافق - موافقة	measures (n)	تدابير / إجراءات
aim(ed) (v - n)	يهدف - هدف	mechanisms (n)	آليات
announcement (n)	إعلان	melting (n)	ذوبان
approximately (adv)	تقريباً	minor (adj)	ثانوي - بسيط
architecture (n)	فن (العمارة)	modification (n)	تعديل
atmosphere (n)	الغلاف الجوي	notably (adv)	بشكل ملحوظ
average (n - adj)	متوسط - مُعَدَّل	numerous (adj)	عديد
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب	opportunity (n)	فرصة
belief (n)	اعتقاد	overnight (adj)	بين عشية وضحاها
coastal (adj)	ساحلي	participation (n)	مشاركة
collect(ed) (v)	يجمع	potential (adj)	محتمل
collective (adj)	جماعي	poverty (n)	الفقر
collectively (adv)	بشكل جماعي	powerless (adj)	عاجز - لا حول له
combined (adj)	مشارك - مُدمج	pressing (adj)	مُلح
consequently (adv)	بالتالي	primarily (adv)	أساساً / في المقام الأول
contributor (n)	مساهم	process (n)	عملية
critical (adj)	حاسم - حرج	progression (n)	تقدم - تطور
current (adj)	الحالي - الجاري	recognition (n)	إدراك
deadly (adj)	قاتل / مميت	reduce(d) (v)	يقلل
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع	region (n)	منطقة

defense (n)	دفاع	remain(ed) (v)	يظل
demonstrate (d) (v)	يُظهر - يوضح	reside(d) (v)	يعيش - يقطن
dominant (adj)	مهيمن - سائد	resource (n)	قورد
effort (n)	جهد	reverse(d) (v)	يعكس - يغير جذرياً
essential (adj)	أساسي	risk(ed) (n - v)	خطر - يخطر بـ
estimated (adj)	مُقدَّر	ruin(ed) (n - v)	دمار - خراب - يدمر
ethical (adj)	أخلاقي	sandstorm (n)	عاصفة رملية
flood(ed) (n - v)	فيضان - فيض / يغمر	scenario (n)	سيناريو
flooding (n)	الفيض / الغمر بالمياه	severe (adj)	شديد - حاد
flood-prone	معرض للفيضانات	sheets (n)	صفائح - طبقات
fossil fuel (n)	وقود حفري	shift(ed) (n - v)	تَحَوَّل - يتحول
frequency (n)	تكرار	significant (adj)	بارز - هام
frustrated (adj)	محبط	situated (adj)	واقعة - موجودة
glaciers (n)	أنهار جليدية	slow(ed) (v - adj)	يُبطئ - بطن
growing (adj)	متزايد	societal (adj)	مجتمعي
hunger (n)	الجوع	strategy (n)	استراتيجية
hurricane (n)	إعصار	suffer (ed) (v)	يعاني
ignore(d) (v)	يتجاهل	sunscreen (n)	واقي من الشمس
intensify(ied) (v)	يشد - يزداد حدة	support (ed) (v - n)	يدعم - دعم
interrelated (adj)	مترابط	tax (n)	ضريبة
large-scale (adj)	واسع النطاق	thunderstorm (n)	عاصفة رعدية
low-lying (adj)	مُنخفض	trap (ped) (v)	يحاصر - يحتجز
majority (n)	الغالبية	trend (n)	اتجاه
matter (ed) (v)	يهم - يُحدث تأثير	urban (adj)	حضري
mean (n)	متوسط	zone (n)	منطقة

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1 Key vocabulary

- Everything we do is on paper and video.
a. accelerated b. accompanied c. persistent d. documented
- The policy has serious for low-income families.
a. implemented b. implications c. thermal d. transformative
- "Early symptoms may a serious illness," warned Dr Ali.
a. reside b. mitigate c. defend d. indicate
- Rapid city increased traffic in Cairo.
a. expansion b. projection c. persistence d. displacement
- Heavy rain led to the of low-lying farms.
a. commitment b. megacity c. migration d. inundation
- A rainbow is a natural after rain.
a. phenomenon b. adaptation c. agreement d. architecture

7. Aya was by her sister on the school trip.
a. accelerated b. accompanied c. persistent d. documented
8. Wool provides strong protection in winter.
a. implemented b. implicated c. thermal d. transformative
9. Planting more trees can heat.
a. indicate b. mitigate c. defend d. reside
10. The weather for July shows higher temperatures.
a. expansion b. displacement c. persistence d. projection
11. Cairo is a crowded with millions of people.
a. megacity b. inundation c. migration d. commitment
12. Desert plants show to heat and drought.
a. phenomenon b. adaptation c. argument d. architecture
13. Karim had a/an cough for two weeks.
a. accelerated b. accompanied c. persistent d. documented
14. Education can have a/an impact on students.
a. implemented b. geothermal c. thermal d. transformative
15. During the debate, Salah had to his idea.
a. defend b. mitigate c. dedicate d. reside
16. Amira's impressed us all.
a. expansion b. projection c. persistence d. displacement
17. Seasonal is what makes us see foreign birds along the Nile.
a. inundation b. megacity c. commitment d. migration
18. The two teams reached a/an after long talks.
a. phenomenon b. adaptation c. agreement d. architecture
19. The team worked on a/an schedule to meet the deadline.
a. accelerated b. accompanied c. persistent d. documented
20. "The rules are fully across all schools", said Omar.
a. implemented b. objected c. thermal d. transformative
21. The flood caused the of hundreds of residents.
a. expansion b. displacement c. persistence d. projection
22. Amira's strong to study won her a scholarship.
a. inundation b. megacity c. migration d. commitment

2 Important vocabulary

23. Many families near the river in the old district.
a. indicate b. mitigate c. defend d. reside
24. Rodayna knows we must never that some people are being bullied.
a. intensify b. demonstrate c. ignore d. matter
25. Mohammed says the government will the problem of power-cuts before summer.
a. address b. defend c. reside d. reverse

26. Ayman didn't want a single mistake to all his hard work.
a. ruin b. trap c. shift d. slow
27. The school made a/an about Reem's coming first during assembly.
a. announcement b. opportunity c. participation d. measure
28. During the debate, Yara supported our national systems.
a. poverty b. trend c. defense d. resource
29. After missing several goals in a row, Sherif felt completely with himself.
a. interrelated b. societal c. flood-prone d. frustrated
30. My father plays a/an role in my life.
a. collective b. overnight c. significant d. potential
31. The storm damaged several cities along the sea.
a. overnight b. coastal c. average d. urban
32. Hossam said the victory came from their planning and effort.
a. deadly b. critical c. average d. combined
33. Zeinab works in a tall building near the city's business district.
a. ethical b. low-lying c. situated d. overnight
34. Rising global temperatures can the strength of hurricanes.
a. ignore b. intensify c. matter d. demonstrate
35. Moaz had to himself against false accusations.
a. address b. reverse c. reside d. defend
36. Joury said the new speed bumps help down cars near the school.
a. slow b. trap c. shift d. ruin
37. Nasser believes every student should get an equal to improve his talents.
a. measure b. announcement c. opportunity d. participation
38. The graphs show a growing in the use of solar power worldwide.
a. trend b. defense c. poverty d. resource
39. Malak wrote in her essay that poverty and education are deeply and cannot be solved separately.
a. frustrated b. interrelated c. flood-prone d. societal
40. The engineering team said the cost of the project at about fifteen million pounds.
a. collective b. societal c. significant d. estimated
41. Nada received messages of support after posting her artwork online.
a. average b. overnight c. numerous d. coastal
42. Doctors in emergency rooms must make decisions in seconds.
a. deadly b. large-scale c. combined d. critical
43. The village where my grandparents live is in a/an area that floods every winter.
a. situated b. low-lying c. ethical d. urban
44. Kindness always in difficult situations.
a. demonstrates b. intensifies c. ignores d. matters
45. Salwa asked Sama if she would prefer to near the coast or in the city.
a. address b. reverse c. reside d. defend
46. Zein wants to his career from teaching to programming.
a. ruin b. trap c. shift d. slow

47. Amira said using seatbelts is an effective for reducing injuries in accidents.
a. measure b. opportunity c. participation d. announcement
48. Fresh water from the Nile is the most valuable natural in Egypt.
a. resource b. poverty c. trend d. defense
49. Noura presented a project about habits in traditional communities.
a. frustrated b. flood-prone c. societal d. interrelates
50. Abdu thinks this app has huge for helping students learn better.
a. collective b. estimated c. significant d. potential
51. The lab explosion was a accident caused by ignoring safety rules.
a. critical b. largely c. situated d. combined
52. Saja enjoys the fast life and opportunities of living in a/an area.
a. ethical b. low-lying c. situated d. urban
53. Ziad asked the teacher to the steps of the experiment more clearly.
a. demonstrate b. ignore c. intensify d. matter
54. Walid said it's hard to quickly the effects of a long-term disease.
a. matter b. defend c. address d. reside
55. This is a clever trap used to foxes on the farm.
a. trap b. shift c. ruin d. slow
56. Mr Ali's active in the Book Fair earned him an award.
a. measure b. opportunity c. announcement d. participation
57. Omar believes quality education can reduce
a. poverty b. defense c. trend d. resource
58. Mekka explained how zones near rivers are at highest risk during storms.
a. situated b. societal c. flood-prone d. frustrated
59. The project is a/an effort that required full class participation.
a. urban b. collective c. estimated d. potential
60. The teacher said the score on the final exam was 78%.
a. average b. coastal c. numerous d. overnight
61. Adam described the event as a campaign involving over 5,000 volunteers.
a. deadly b. large-scale c. low-lying d. critical
62. Using AI in education should follow standards and values.
a. urban b. low-lying c. ethical d. situated

3 A bit Tricky

هذا الجزء يعرض أفكار أسئلة التمييز الخاصة بالطلبة الفائزين في الامتحان

تنويه

63. In statistics, the arithmetic of the class scores was 62.5.
a. mean b. zone c. adaptation d. projection
64. After new radar data, the hurricane track was adjusted.
a. adaptation b. projection c. mean d. zone

II VOCABULARY STUDY

هذا الجزء هام جدًا سواء على مستوى تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية أو التميز في الامتحانات

تنويه

1 Definitions التعريفات

accelerated (adj)	متسارع	happening or moving faster than usual
accompanied (adj)	مصاحب بـ	occurring or existing at the same time as something else; coming with
adaptation (n)	تكيف	the process of changing to suit new conditions
climate migration	هجرة المناخ	the movement of people due to changes in climate conditions
commitment (n)	التزام	a promise or strong dedication to do something
displacement (n)	نزوح	the forced movement of people from their homes or places
documented (adj)	مُوثق	proven or recorded in writing or with evidence
expansion (n)	تمدد	the act of becoming larger or more extensive
implemented (adj)	مُنَفَّذ	put into action or carried out
implications (n)	تداعيات	possible effects or results of an action or decision
indicate(d) (v)	يوضح - يشير إلى	to show, point out, or suggest something
inundation (n)	غمر بالماء - غرق	flooding or being covered with water
megacity (n)	مدينة ضخمة	a very large city, typically with a population of over 10 million people
migration (n)	هجرة	the movement of people or animals from one place to another
mitigate(d) (v)	يُخفف	to make something less severe, harmful, or painful
persistence (n)	إصرار - مثابرة	the act of continuing firmly in an action despite difficulty
persistent (adj)	مُثابِر - مستمر	continuing to exist or endure over time; not giving up
phenomenon (n)	ظاهرة	an observable fact or event, especially one that is unusual or remarkable
projections (n)	توقعات	predictions or estimates of future trends or outcomes
substantial (adj)	كبير / جوهري	large in amount, size, or importance
thermal (adj)	حراري أرضي	related to heat or temperature
transformative (adj)	تحويلي - يُحدث تغييرًا جذريًا	causing a major change in someone or something

Mini Test 1 Definitions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- A change that leads to major improvement in society can be called a/an change.
a. persistent b. documented c. implemented d. transformative
- Which word best describes the act of adjusting to new environments?
a. Adaptation b. Commitment c. Displacement d. Implication

3. A/An is a prediction or forecast about future trends or data.
a. inundation b. projection c. migration d. persistence
4. A/An increase means a fast or faster-than-normal rise.
a. accompanied b. thermal c. accelerated d. substantial
5. The rapid growth of a city often results in the formation of a/an
a. migration b. expansion c. phenomenon d. megacity
6. Which word means something that has already been put into action?
a. Transformative b. Implemented c. Persistent d. Documented
7. Losing one's home due to conflict or disaster is known as
a. implication b. displacement c. adaptation d. commitment
8. Which word refers to the movement of people from one area to another?
a. Persistence b. Inundation c. Migration d. Projection
9. Something important in size, amount, or value is described as
a. substantial b. accompanied c. accelerated d. thermal
10. The movement of people from rural to urban areas is a type of
a. megacity b. phenomenon c. migration d. expansion
11. Which term describes someone who keeps trying and never gives up?
a. Documented b. Persistent c. Transformative d. Implemented
12. A long-term promise to do something important is a/an
a. displacement b. commitment c. adaptation d. implication
13. Continuing an effort despite challenges is an example of
a. migration b. persistence c. projection d. inundation
14. Heat energy found deep inside the earth is a type of energy.
a. thermal b. substantial c. accompanied d. accelerated
15. A rare or interesting event that can be observed is called a
a. phenomenon b. expansion c. megacity d. migration
16. A/An event is one that is officially recorded and proven with evidence.
a. implemented b. transformative c. documented d. persistent
17. A possible result or consequence of an action is called a/an
a. commitment b. adaptation c. implication d. displacement
18. A large flood that covers the land with water is called a/an
a. projection b. inundation c. persistence d. migration
19. He was by his friend when entering the new school.
a. accelerated b. accompanied c. mattered d. substantial
20. Urban refers to the physical spreading of cities and towns.
a. expansion b. migration c. phenomenon d. megacity

2 Derivatives المشتقات

accelerate		
acceleration (n)	تسارع	The acceleration of climate change is alarming.
accelerated (adj)	متسارع	We need accelerated efforts to reduce emissions.
accelerate (v)	يُسرع	Global warming will accelerate ice melting.

accompany		
accompaniment (n)	مُرافقة / شىء مصاحب	The floods came with heavy rainfall as an accompaniment .
accompanied (adj)	مصحوب بـ	The storm was accompanied by strong winds.
accompany (v)	يرافق / يصاحب	Rising temperatures often accompany droughts.
adaptation		
adapt (v)	يتكيف	Communities must adapt to rising sea levels.
adaptation (n)	تكيف	Adaptation strategies are vital for survival.
adaptable (adj)	قابل للتكيف	We need adaptable infrastructure in coastal cities.
commitment		
commit (v)	يلتزم	Nations must commit to climate agreements.
commitment (n)	الالتزام	The country showed strong commitment to change.
committed (adj)	ملتزم	He is committed to protecting the environment.
displacement		
displace (v)	يُهَجِّر	Floods displace thousands of people every year.
displacement (n)	تهجير / نزوح	Climate change causes mass displacement .
documented		
document (v)	يُوثِّق	Scientists document the changes in sea levels.
documented (adj)	مُوثَّق	There is documented evidence of the floods.
documentation (n)	توثيق	Accurate documentation helps track progress.
expansion		
expand (v)	يتوسَّع	Sea water will expand as temperatures rise.
expansion (n)	توسُّع	The expansion of urban areas increases risks.
expansive (adj)	واسع / ممتد	The ocean has an expansive surface.
implemented		
implement (v)	يُنَفِّذ	The government will implement new laws.
implemented (adj)	مُنَفَّذ	The implemented policies had great impact.
implementation (n)	تنفيذ	Successful implementation needs cooperation.
implications		
implication (n)	تَبِيعَات / آثار	Sea level rise has serious implications .
imply (v)	يُوحِي بـ	The data imply a need for action.
indicate		
indicate (v)	يُشِير إلى	Reports indicate an increase in flooding.
indication (n)	إشارة / دلالة	There is no clear indication of danger.
indicative (adj)	دال على	This is indicative to poor planning.

inundation		
inundate (v)	يغمر	The coastal city was inundated by waves.
inundation (n)	غمر / فيضان	Inundation destroyed many buildings.
migrate		
migrate (v)	يهاجر	Birds migrate in search of food.
migration (n)	هجرة	Climate change affects human migration .
migratory (adj)	هجري / متنقل	Migratory species need safe habitats.
persistence		
persist (v)	يستمر / يثابر	The drought may persist for months.
persistence (n)	الاستمرارية / المثابرة	Persistence is needed to solve climate issues.
persistent (adj)	مستمر / دائم	Persistent flooding affects daily life.
phenomenon		
phenomenon (n)	ظاهرة	Flooding is a natural phenomenon .
phenomena (n, plural)	ظواهر	Extreme weather events are common phenomena .
projection		
project (v)	يتنبأ بـ	Experts project a rise in sea levels.
projection (n)	توقع / تنبؤ	Projections show severe flooding by 2100.
substantial		
substance (n)	مادة / جوهر	This law lacks substance .
substantial (adj)	كبير / ملحوظ	We need substantial changes to adapt.
substantially (adv)	بشكل كبير	Flooding has substantially increased.
transformative		
transform (v)	يحوّل	Technology can transform our approach.
transformation (n)	تحوّل	The city underwent a full transformation .
transformative (adj)	يحدث تغييراً جذرياً	Education is a transformative force.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The government needs to new environmental policies immediately.
a. acceleration b. accelerated c. implement d. implementation
- Sea level rise has serious for coastal cities.
a. implications b. imply c. implied d. implying
- Scientists the melting of glaciers in several regions.
a. documented b. documenting c. documentation d. documenter
- The storm was by heavy rainfall and thunder.
a. accompaniment b. accompanied c. accompany d. accompanying

5. Planting drought - resistant crops is an important to climate change.
a. adaptation b. adapt c. adaptable d. adapting
6. These events are a rare natural
a. phenomenon b. phenomena c. phenomenal d. phenomenally
7. Millions of people will face because of rising water.
a. displace b. displaced c. displacement d. displacing
8. Climate experts more frequent storms in the next decade.
a. projection b. projective c. project d. projecting
9. The of urban areas increases pressure on resources.
a. expanded b. expansion c. expanding d. expand
10. His to helping the planet is inspiring.
a. committing b. commitment c. committed d. commit

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

address	a challenge	يواجه تحدياً	indicate	trends	يدل على توجهات
convince	the reader	يُقنع القارئ		data	يشير إلى بيانات
create	change	يُحدث تغييراً	make	a difference	يُحدث فرقاً
demonstrate	recognition	يُظهر اعترافاً أو وعياً	predict	displacement	يتنبأ بنزوح
document	an increase	يُوثق زيادة	project	sea level rise	يتنبأ بارتفاع مستوى البحر
drive	change	يسبب تغيير	share	your opinion	يُشارك رأيه
	a phenomenon	يسبب ظاهرة	slow	sea level rise	يُبطئ ارتفاع مستوى البحر
face	risks/problems	يواجه مخاطر/مشكلات	take	action	يُتخذ إجراءً
implement	solutions	يُنفذ حلول		meaningful steps	يُتخذ خطوات ذات معنى

Mini Test 3 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Ahmed had to a challenge when the new system failed unexpectedly.
a. predict b. demonstrate c. address d. project
- The latest report aims to trends that affect population growth in coastal cities.
a. implement b. indicate c. create d. drive
- The writer used powerful examples to the reader of the urgency of climate action.
a. convince b. address c. slow d. document
- Environmental campaigns can change in the way people consume plastic.
a. take b. create c. fight d. share
- Scientists used historical records to an increase in global temperatures.
a. protect b. share c. document d. create
- Governments must solutions, not just discuss the problems.
a. face b. convince c. ignore d. implement

4 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
accelerated (adj)	متسارع	quicken, boosted, rushed
accompanied (adj)	مصاحب بـ	followed by, associated with/attended
adaptation (n)	تكيف	adjustment, modification
commitment (n)	التزام	dedication, devotion
documented (adj)	مؤثق	recorded, written, verified
expansion (n)	تمدد	growth, increase, enlargement
implemented (adj)	مُنَفَّذ	applied, executed, carried out
implications (n)	تداعيات	consequences, outcomes, effects
indicate(d) (v)	يوضح - يشير إلى	show, point out, signal
inundation (n)	غمر بالماء - غرق	flooding, overflow
mitigate(d) (v)	يُخفف	reduce, lessen, ease
persistence (n)	إصرار - مثابرة	determination, perseverance
projections (n)	توقعات	predictions, forecasts, estimates
substantial (adj)	كبير	significant, considerable, large
transformative (adj)	تحويلي - يحدث تغييرًا جذريًا	revolutionary, life-changing, reformatory
displacement (n)	نزوح	migration / emigration هجرة

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
accelerated (adj)	متسارع	slowed, delayed, decelerated	بطئ
accompanied (adj)	مصاحب بـ	alone, unaccompanied, solo	وحيد - بمفرده
adaptation (n)	تكيف	resistance / maladaptation	مقاومة / سوء تكيف
commitment (n)	التزام	indifference, irresponsibility	لامبالاة - عدم المسؤولية
displacement (n)	نزوح	settlement, stability, return	استقرار - ثبات - عودة
documented (adj)	مؤثق	undocumented, unrecorded, unverified	غير مؤثق
expansion (n)	تمدد	reduction, contraction	تقلص - انكماش
implemented (adj)	مُنَفَّذ	unexecuted	غير مُنفذ
indicate(d) (v)	يوضح - يشير إلى	hide, obscure, deny	يُخفي
inundation (n)	غمر بالماء	drought, dryness	جفاف
mitigate(d) (v)	يُخفف	worsen, intensify, aggravate	يُفاقم
persistence (n)	إصرار - مثابرة	inconsistency, weakness, surrender	ضعف، استسلام
persistent (adj)	مثابر - مستمر	occasional, temporary, inconsistent	عرضي - مؤقت
substantial (adj)	كبير	minor, small, insignificant	بسيط - صغير - غير مهم
transformative (adj)	تحويلي - يحدث تغييرًا جذريًا	static, unchanging, traditional	غير متغير - تقليدي

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

• Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "The process was completed quickly due to an accelerated plan." The word '**accelerated**' is a synonym of
a. delayed b. quickened c. gradual
d. slowed e. boosted
2. "She walked into the hall unaccompanied." The word '**unaccompanied**' is an antonym of
a. accompanied b. alone c. solo
d. followed by e. isolated
3. "This solution required practical adaptation to the new environment." The word '**adaptation**' is a synonym of
a. adjustment b. resistance c. modification
d. settlement e. stability
4. "They showed total commitment to the project." The word '**commitment**' is an antonym of
a. honesty b. indifference c. dedication
d. irresponsibility e. bravery
5. "The event was documented in multiple official reports." The word '**documented**' is an antonym of
a. unrecorded b. unverified c. written
d. noted e. archived
6. "The city experienced rapid expansion over the decade." The word '**expansion**' is a synonym of
a. growth b. dryness c. enlargement
d. drought e. contraction
7. "The rising sea levels have serious implications for the region." The word '**implications**' is a synonym of
a. indicators b. consequences c. dryness
d. hopes e. outcomes
8. "This report indicates the need for action." The word '**indicates**' is a synonym of
a. silence b. shows c. hide
d. abandon e. signals
9. "The reform plan is unchanging; it keeps everything as it is." The word '**unchanging**' is an antonym of
a. committed b. supportive c. transformative
d. reformative e. static

6 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

advocating for fair policies	مناصرة سياسات عادلة	individual commitment	التزام فردي
amphibious architecture	عمارة/هندسة برمائية	low-lying zones	مناطق منخفضة
collective action	عمل جماعي	persistence leads to change	الإصرار يؤدي إلى التغيير
emotional appeals	مؤثرات عاطفية	rather than	بدلاً من
ethical businesses	شركات ذات أخلاقيات	small but meaningful	صغيرة ولكن ذات مغزى
flood-prone regions	مناطق مُعرّضة للفيضانات	strong reasons and evidence	أسباب وأدلة قوية
for instance	على سبيل المثال		

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

advocate for	يدافع عن	hear about	يسمع عن
be situated in	يقع في	lead to + inf. + ing	يؤدي إلى
begin with	يبدأ بـ	protect from	يحمي من
build on	يبني على (سابق معرفة/خبرة)	reside in	يقيم في
compare ... to	يقارن ... بـ ...	slow down	يُبطئ
driven by	مدفوع بـ / ناتج عن	support ... with	يدعم ... بـ

Mini Test 5 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "People must work together to solve climate issues." This means we need
a. small but meaningful b. collective action
c. individual commitment d. ethical businesses
- She supports helping poor communities and
a. amphibious architecture b. emotional appeals
c. advocating for fair policies d. low-lying zones
- building systems are used in places where water levels may rise.
a. Low-lying zones b. Amphibious architecture
c. Individual commitment d. Persistence leads to change
- He kept trying again and again, believing that
a. persistence leads to change b. rather than
c. emotional appeals are vital d. strong reasons and evidence are good
- ignoring the issue, we should take real steps.
a. Emotional appeals b. For instance
c. Collective action d. Rather than
- She began her speech a short story to grab attention.
a. to b. of c. with d. from
- We must protect endangered animals pollution and habitat loss.
a. in b. on c. from d. for
- The report compares current sea levels past decades.
a. of b. to c. in d. over
- These strategies are driven scientific evidence and data.
a. by b. in c. to d. with

10. Many coastal communities reside low-lying zones.

- a. at b. in c. on d. into

11. Hard work leads true success.

- a. achieving b. to achieving c. achieve d. to achieve

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

adaptation - modification

- **adaptation (n)** (التكيف: التغير للتأقلم مع ظروف جديدة)
- This film is an **adaptation** of a famous novel.
- **modification (n)** (تعديل: تغيير بسيط لتحسين شيء أو تعديله)
- We made a **modification** to the schedule.

announcement - advertisement

- **announcement (n)** (إعلان رسمي أو خبر مهم)
- The PM made an **announcement** that next Thursday is a holiday.
- **advertisement (n)** (إعلان تجاري للترويج لمنتج أو خدمة)
- I saw an **advertisement** for the new phone.

increase + by, to, in

- **increase by** (يزداد بنسبة)
- Sales **increased by** 10% last year.
- **increase to** (يزداد إلى حد معين)
- The price **increased to** 50 pounds.
- **increase in** (يزداد في)
- Sales **increased in** numbers and quantity.

inundation - flooding

- **inundation (n)** (فيضان - مصطلح رسمي)
- **Inundation** caused serious damage to crops.
- **flooding (n)** (غمر الأرض بالماء)
- Heavy rain led to **flooding** in the town.

migration - displacement

- **migration (n)** (الهجرة - غالباً طوعية أو دورية)
- Birds begin **migration** in autumn.
- **displacement (n)** (النزوح - إجباري)
- The war caused **displacement** of thousands of people.

night - overnight

- **night (n)** (الليل)
- I slept early last **night**.
- **overnight (adj/adv)** (خلال الليل أو بشكل مفاجئ)
- He became famous **overnight**.

phenomenon - phenomena

- **phenomenon (n)** (ظاهرة)
- A rainbow is a beautiful **phenomenon**.
- **phenomena (n, plural)** (ظواهر)
- Natural **phenomena** can be unpredictable.

rather than - other than

- **rather than (prep/conj)** (بدلاً من)
- He chose water **rather than** juice.
- **other than (prep)** (ما عدا / بخلاف)
- I don't watch TV **other than** football matches.

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The manager spoke about the new rules in a/an to the staff.
a. advertisement b. announcement c. adaptation d. modification
- The number of students increased 200 this year.
a. increase b. to c. in d. by
- The number of students increased 2% this year.
a. increase b. to c. in d. by
- The coastal town was hit by severe after the storm.
a. migration b. displacement c. flooding d. phenomenon
- Many birds make long-distance in winter.
a. displacement b. migration c. advertisement d. inundation
- The storm caused the of thousands of people for many days.
a. adaptation b. announcement c. displacement d. exclusion
- She became a millionaire I don't know how.
a. night b. dusk c. overnight d. late
- Earthquakes and volcanoes are dangerous natural
a. phenomena b. phenomenon c. phenomenon d. adaptations
- I prefer working with people I trust dealing with strangers.
a. other than b. rather than c. instead d. because of
- I have no goals this year passing my final exam.
a. except b. rather than c. other than d. instead
- "....." is to "one event" as is to "many".
a. Flooding - inundation b. Phenomenon - phenomena
c. Displacement - migration d. Night - overnight
- "....." is to "prefer" as "....." is to "exclude".
a. Migration - flooding b. Announcement - advertisement
c. Rather than - other than d. Modification - adaptation

III READING

Reading Texts

• on Lesson 4 SB page 44

Scientific data **indicate**⁽¹⁾ that global sea level in 2016 was **approximately**⁽²⁾ 82 mm higher than the 1983 **average**⁽³⁾. Projections suggest a **potential rise**⁽⁴⁾ of 0.2 to 2 meters by 2100. This trend is **accompanied**⁽⁵⁾ by a **documented increase**⁽⁶⁾ in the frequency of **coastal flooding**⁽⁷⁾ in numerous **regions**⁽⁸⁾ compared to mid-20th-century levels.



The **phenomenon**⁽⁹⁾ is **primarily**⁽¹⁰⁾ driven by two connected mechanisms: (1) The accelerated **melting**⁽¹¹⁾ of **glaciers**⁽¹²⁾ and **ice sheets**⁽¹³⁾ due to rising global temperatures, which has become the **dominant contributor**⁽¹⁴⁾ to sea level rise over the past decade. (2) **Thermal expansion**⁽¹⁵⁾ of seawater as ocean temperatures increase. These processes are expected to **intensify**⁽¹⁶⁾ under current climate change scenarios.

The implications are severe, with an estimated 275 million people currently residing in low-lying coastal zones **exposed to floods**⁽¹⁷⁾. Notably, the majority of the world's **megacities**⁽¹⁸⁾ are situated in coastal areas, including several major European urban centers facing **significant**⁽¹⁹⁾ flood risks. **Climate migration**⁽²⁰⁾ models predict large population shift in coming decades.

While international climate agreements aim to mitigate greenhouse gas emissions, their potential to slow sea level rise remains uncertain. Consequently, adaptation strategies are becoming increasingly critical. Innovative engineering solutions, such as amphibious architecture and large-scale coastal defense systems, are being implemented in flood-prone regions. These measures demonstrate the growing recognition that both modification and adaptation will be **essential**⁽²¹⁾ to address this pressing global challenge.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) يوضح / يشير إلى
- (2) تقريباً
- (3) متوسط
- (4) ارتفاع محتمل
- (5) مصحوب بـ
- (6) زيادة موثقة
- (7) فيضان ساحلي
- (8) مناطق
- (9) ظاهرة
- (10) في المقام الأول
- (11) ذوبان
- (12) أنهار جليدية
- (13) صفائح جليدية
- (14) عامل مساهم سائد
- (15) توسع حراري
- (16) يزداد حدة
- (17) معرض للفيضان
- (18) مدن ضخمة
- (19) كبير / هام
- (20) هجرة المناخ
- (21) ضروري / أساسي

• on Lesson 5 SB page 46

When we hear about worldwide issues like climate change, **poverty**⁽¹⁾, or **hunger**⁽²⁾, it might seem impossible for one person to make a **difference**⁽³⁾. However, these problems can't be ignored—they must require **collective**⁽⁴⁾ action. If everyone takes small but **meaningful**⁽⁵⁾ steps, the **combined**⁽⁶⁾ impact could be **huge**⁽⁷⁾.

We should use the knowledge we gain to **reflect on**⁽⁸⁾ our global responsibilities. **For instance**⁽⁹⁾, **reducing**⁽¹⁰⁾ waste, supporting **ethical**⁽¹¹⁾ businesses, or advocating for fair policies may seem **minor**⁽¹²⁾, but together, they must create **significant**⁽¹³⁾ change. The **belief**⁽¹⁴⁾ that individual actions don't **matter**⁽¹⁵⁾ couldn't be further from the truth – history shows that **social**⁽¹⁶⁾ **shifts**⁽¹⁷⁾ often begin with small, **insistent**⁽¹⁸⁾ efforts.

Environmental ruin can't be reversed overnight, but sustainable choices might slow its progression.

Rather than feeling powerless, we should recognize that every positive action contributes to a larger solution. The world's problems must be addressed collectively – and that starts with individual commitment. Change may not happen immediately, but **persistence**⁽¹⁹⁾ could lead to a fairer, healthier planet for all.

- (1) الفقر
- (2) الجوع
- (3) فرق - اختلاف
- (4) جماعي
- (5) ذو مغزى
- (6) مشترك - قديم
- (7) ضخم
- (8) يُعَمِّن التفكير في
- (9) على سبيل المثال
- (10) تقليل
- (11) أخلاقي
- (12) ثانوي - بسيط
- (13) بارز - هام
- (14) اعتقاد
- (15) يهم - يحدث تأثير
- (16) مجتمعي
- (17) تحولات
- (18) متابر - مستمر
- (19) إصرار - متابرة

أحرص على اقتناء

 EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للفصل الثالث الثانوي

(الجزء الثاني)

الفصل الدراسي الثاني





SKILLS

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية في الملحق

تنويه

WRITING SKILL: PERSUASIVE WRITING

• What is a persuasive writing?

ما هو الكتابات الإقناعية؟

A persuasive essay is a type of writing that aims to convince the reader to accept a particular opinion or to take a specific action.

المقال الإقناعي هو نوع من الكتابة يهدف إلى إقناع القارئ برأي معين أو دفعه إلى اتخاذ إجراء محدد.

• Purpose of persuasive writing

الغرض من الكتابة الإقناعية

1. Convincing the reader to take action
2. Changing someone's opinion
3. Motivating action
4. Presenting a strong argument

إقناع القارئ ان يتخذ قرار

تغيير رأي شخص ما

تحفيز اتخاذ إجراء

عرض حجة قوية

• Key characteristics of Persuasive Writing

الخصائص الرئيسية للمقال الإقناعي

1. Clear Opinion or Point of View

- The writer states their opinion or position clearly.

يعتبر الكاتب عن وجهة نظره بوضوح.

2. Strong Reasons and Evidence

- The writer gives reasons, facts, examples, or statistics to support their opinion.

يعطي الكاتب اسباب، حقائق، أمثلة أو احصاءات لدعم رأيه.

3. Emotional Appeal

- Uses words that make the reader feel something like fear, hope, guilt, or pride.

يستخدم كلمات تجعل القارئ يشعر بشئ ما مثل الخوف، الأمل، الذنب او الفخر.

4. Persuasive Language

- Includes words like: must, should, need to, important, urgent, we all know, clearly, obviously.

تتضمن كلمات قوية مثل: يجب، من الضروري، من المهم، من الواضح.

- Uses rhetorical questions

تستخدم أسئلة بلاغية

ex. - What will happen if we do nothing ?

- ماذا سيحدث اذا لم نفعل شئ ؟

5. Call to Action

- Tells the reader what they should do after reading.

أخبر القارئ بما سيفعل بعد القراءة.

Persuasive writing terminology مصطلحات المقال الاقناعي

Term	Definition
call to action دعوة لاتخاذ إجراء	A sentence that urges the reader to act. تحفيز مباشر للقارئ للقيام بشيء.
emotional appeal مؤثر عاطفي	A sentence that stirs emotions. جمل تثير المشاعر.
evidence دليل	Facts or data supporting your opinion. أدلة تدعم الرأي.
hook = attention grabber جملة جذب الانتباه	The first sentence to catch the reader's attention. الجملة الافتتاحية الجذابة.
opinion رأي	A personal belief or view. وجهة نظر شخصية.
rhetorical question سؤال بلاغي	A question asked to provoke thought, not an answer. سؤال لإثارة التفكير فقط.
thesis statement جملة الأطروحة	The central idea or argument of the essay. الفكرة الأساسية التي يدافع عنها الكاتب.
topic sentence جملة الموضوع	The first sentence in each body paragraph that presents the main idea. جملة تشرح فكرة الفقرة.

• Summary الخلاصة

To write a successful persuasive essay:

1. Clearly state your opinion (صريح برأيك بوضوح)
2. Support it with strong evidence (ادعم رأيك بأدلة قوية)
3. Use emotional and logical appeal (استخدم المنطق والعاطفة)
4. End with a powerful call to action (اختم بدعوة قوية لاتخاذ إجراء)

Model persuasive essay parts

① Write a six-line introduction to an essay on 'Climate change'.

Climate change is one of the biggest threats facing our planet today. From rising sea levels to extreme weather events, its effects are everywhere. Scientists agree that human activity is a major cause of global warming. Burning fossil fuels and cutting forests release harmful gases into the air. If we do nothing, the damage will continue to worsen. We must take immediate action to protect our environment and future.

② Write a six-line body paragraph of an essay on 'Climate change'.

One major reason to act on climate change is the increase in natural disasters. Floods, droughts, and wildfires are becoming more frequent and more intense. These events destroy homes, threaten food supplies, and cost billions of dollars. In many poor regions, people suffer without resources to rebuild. By reducing carbon emissions and using clean energy, we can slow these changes. We have the tools; what we need now is commitment and action.

3 Write a six-line conclusion to an essay on 'Climate change'.

Climate change is not a distant problem – it is happening now. Its effects threaten our health, economy, and the ecosystems we depend on. But there is still time to make a difference if we act together. To sum up, every individual, community, and government must take responsibility. In brief, we must reduce pollution, support green innovation, and protect nature. Only through bold, united action we can secure a safe future for all.

General Exercises

I WRITING SKILL

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A persuasive essay aims to the reader.
a. inform b. entertain c. convince d. explain
2. The sentence "We must act now to save our forests" is a/an
a. detail b. call to action c. example d. title
3. The first paragraph in any essay is the
a. body b. conclusion c. introduction d. topic
4. The sentence "Clearly, this cannot be allowed to continue" is an example of
a. persuasive language b. comparison
c. narration d. description
5. A is a sentence that introduces the main idea of a paragraph.
a. thesis b. topic sentence c. title d. hook
6. "What will happen if we ignore this problem?" is an example of a
a. direct answer b. rhetorical question c. factual detail d. summary
7. The sentence "Plastic waste harms marine life" is an example of a/an
a. opinion b. evidence c. hook d. feeling
8. Which of the following is best used to catch the reader's attention at the beginning?
a. A thesis b. A hook c. A transition d. A conclusion
9. In the conclusion, the writer should
a. restate the opinion b. list facts
c. start a new idea d. rewrite the hook
10. A thesis statement is found in the
a. conclusion b. body c. introduction d. last paragraph
11. A persuasive essay uses facts, examples, and
a. dialogue b. predictions c. statistics d. quotes only
12. An emotional appeal connects with the reader's
a. eyes b. feelings c. reason d. memory
13. The final paragraph is the
a. introduction b. argument c. hook d. conclusion

14. Good persuasive writing avoids
a. clear reasons b. examples c. strong opinions d. unclear ideas
15. Which of the following is NOT a feature of persuasive essays?
a. thesis b. body paragraphs c. dialogue d. conclusion
16. A persuasive writer supports opinions with
a. opinions b. evidence c. assumptions d. feelings only
17. The reader is more likely to be convinced if the writer is
a. emotional b. funny c. clear and organized d. quick
18. Which verb shows a strong call to action?
a. consider b. wonder c. act d. look
19. Persuasive essays should avoid using language.
a. polite b. simple c. vague d. direct
20. "It's obvious that we cannot ignore climate change" shows
a. persuasive tone b. comparison c. confusion d. summary
21. Using "firstly", "moreover", and "finally" shows good use of
a. quotes b. transition words c. punctuation d. emotion
22. Which phrase is most persuasive?
a. I guess b. We must c. I'm not sure d. It might
23. Which is the best way to end a persuasive essay?
a. With a joke. b. With a call to action.
c. With a question. d. With new facts.
24. The writer's main opinion is expressed in the
a. example b. detail c. thesis statement d. quote
25. Using words like "clearly" or "obviously" adds
a. fear b. detail c. emphasis d. confusion
26. The body paragraphs each present
a. new opinions b. one strong reason c. stories d. dialogue
27. "Children must be protected from harmful content" is an example of a
a. fact b. strong opinion c. summary d. joke
28. The phrase "for example" is used to introduce a/an
a. opinion b. conclusion c. detail d. feeling
29. Which of the following is part of persuasive writing?
a. question-and-answer b. call to action
c. scene setting d. time travel
30. A thesis statement should be
a. hidden b. clear and specific c. emotional only d. optional
31. A persuasive writer should understand the
a. colors b. weather c. audience d. culture only

II READING SKILL

• Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Who do you think is the most/least successful? In order to answer this question, we first need to define success. Everyone has different definitions. Many of us place a great value on performance, achievements, or reaching various goals. Others associate success with material goods, measuring it by how much one can acquire. Others measure success by how much they can contribute to the well-being of their families, or to the community and society in general. There are many other definitions, but mostly success is associated with becoming rich, famous, and respected at work. Yet, it doesn't have to be that way.

Being successful could mean simply being satisfied with oneself and one's career. For many people, a successful person is someone who feels that his or her work and life, in general, offer an exceptionally high degree of satisfaction. But how does one get from here to there? How does one reach this feeling of satisfaction with life and career? It seems that successful people consistently do two things: they use their natural abilities in their work, and they set career and life goals.

In other words, successful people choose careers where they can use their natural abilities or do what comes naturally to them. For example, successful teachers are people who instinctively know how to help people learn, and the best doctors are those who know how to listen to people. Successful people know where they are starting from, and what direction they want to take their lives and careers, even if it is something as simple and wonderful as raising a happy family. What are your natural abilities? What are your career and life goals? If you can answer these questions, you are on your way to have a successful career and life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- According to the passage, success is ".....".
 a. Getting high marks at school b. Everyone has a different definition
 c. Acquiring a lot of money at work d. Travelling abroad and working there
- According to most people, success is associated with
 a. contributing to the community
 b. contributing to the well-being of the families
 c. becoming rich, famous and respected at work
 d. getting high marks and joining university
- "Successful people" does not define successful people.
 a. choose careers that match their skills b. know where they are starting from
 c. use their natural abilities d. don't plan their lives
- Successful teachers are those who
 a. come to school early b. can control their classes
 c. know how to help students learn d. earn a lot of money
- The underlined word "it" refer to
 a. becoming rich b. being successful at work
 c. success in general d. being respected at work
- People in general can feel the pleasure of being successful by
 a. reaching their life goals b. helping their families or community
 c. having material goods d. a, b & c
- "Goal" in this passage is close in meaning to
 a. target b. request c. topic d. success
- True success usually makes people
 a. rich and powerful b. able to earn money
 c. satisfied and happy d. happy and greedy

III TRANSLATION

• **1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

1. Modern technology plays an important part in the progress of many aspects such as industry, agriculture, education, medicine, and even entertainment.

- a. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دوراً محورياً في تقدم العديد من المجالات مثل الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب، وحتى الترقية.
- b. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دوراً محورياً في تقدم العديد من المجالات مثل الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب، وحتى الترفيه.
- c. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دوراً محورياً في تقدم العديد من المجالات مثل الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب، وحتى الترفيه.
- d. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دوراً ثانوياً في تقدم العديد من المجالات مثل الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والأدوية، وحتى الترفيه.

2. Mass media play an important role in forming and guiding public opinion and spreading effective awareness of common issues in our country.

- a. تلعب وسائل الإعلام دوراً هاماً في تشكيل وتوجيه الرأي العام ونشر الوعي الفعال بالقضايا البنية في بلادنا.
- b. تلعب وسائل الإعلام دوراً هاماً في تشكيل وتوجيه الرأي العام ونشر الوعي الصحي بالقضايا المشتركة في بلادنا.
- c. تلعب وسائل الإعلام دوراً هاماً في تشكيل وتوجيه الرأي العام ونشر الوعي الفعال بالقضايا المشاركة في بلادنا.
- d. تلعب وسائل الإعلام دوراً هاماً في تشكيل وتوجيه الرأي العام ونشر الوعي الفعال بالقضايا العامة في بلادنا.

• **2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

ا. يتيح التسوق عبر الإنترنت للمستهلكين رؤية المنتجات والتحقق من السعر في مواقع مختلفة، كما أن إمكانية إرجاع المنتج يُعتبر ميزة ضرورية.

- a. Online shopping allows consumers to see products and check the price on different sites, and the ability to return the product is an essential feature.
- b. Online shopping allows consumers see products and check the price on different sites, and the ability to return the product is an essential feature.
- c. Online shopping allows costumes to see products and check the price on different sites, and the ability to return the product is an essential feature.
- d. Online shopping allows consumers to see products and check the price on different sites, and the ability to return the product is an essential creature.

ف. تتسابق الشركات في استخدام الإعلانات الموجهة للترويج لمنتجاتها وذلك من خلال الإعلانات التلفزيونية وعلى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي وحتى من خلال إعلانات الشوارع.

- a. Companies are racing to use targeted advertising to promote there products through television advertisements, on social media, and even through street advertisements.
- b. Companies are racing to use targeted advertising to promote their products through advertising on television, on social media, and even through street advertisements.
- c. Companies are racing to use targeted advertising to promote their products through advertising on television advertisements on social media, and even through street advertisements.
- d. Companies are racing to use targeted advertising to promote their products through advertising on television, on social media, and even though street advertisements.



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 37

Climate Justice

1. Climate change is not just an environmental issue but also a crisis of social justice.
2. Industrialized nations are the primary cause of greenhouse gas emissions, but marginalized communities, especially in the Global South, bear the brunt of the consequences like droughts and floods.
3. Climate justice advocates for fair solutions that address these unequal burdens.
4. Youth are leading the way in climate activism, creating innovative projects and demanding global action to ensure a fair and sustainable future for all.

on Lesson 2 SB page 39

Interview with a Meteorologist

1. The text is an interview with meteorologist Tamer Mansour about the weather.
2. He explains that meteorologists collect and analyze data to predict the weather, typically for the next five to seven days.
3. He confirms that the recent scorching heatwave in Egypt is unusual and part of a global trend of more frequent extreme weather.
4. While he is somewhat pessimistic about the immediate future, he remains hopeful that long-term solutions to climate change can be found.

on Lesson 3 SB page 41

Climate Change and Coastal Cities

1. Coastal cities like Alexandria are at high risk from climate change due to rising sea levels caused by melting glaciers and ice sheets.
2. Even a small rise in sea level can cause severe flooding in low-lying areas, threatening homes and neighborhoods.

- * Climate change and its effects
- * The dangers of rising sea levels

* Extreme weather events

3. Families are worried but also hopeful, as they take precautions and the state works to find solutions.

4. Authorities are investing in renewable energy, building sea walls to protect neighborhoods, and running awareness campaigns to teach citizens how to act during storms.

on Lesson 4 SB page 44

The Threat of Rising Sea Levels

1. Scientific data shows a significant increase in global sea levels, which were approximately 82 mm higher in 2016 than in 1983.
2. Projections indicate a potential sea-level rise of 0.2 to 2 meters by 2100.
3. The primary causes are the accelerated melting of glaciers and the thermal expansion of seawater as it warms.
4. This phenomenon threatens low-lying coastal zones and major cities worldwide, requiring innovative and large-scale solutions to protect communities.

on Lesson 5 SB page 46

The Power of Collective Action

1. Global issues like climate change and poverty can feel overwhelming for a single person.
2. However, individual actions, when combined into a collective effort, can lead to significant and meaningful change.
3. The belief that individual actions don't matter is incorrect; social history shows that change often starts with small, persistent efforts.
4. Sustainable choices and collective persistence are keys to creating a fairer, healthier planet for everyone.

العمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى : **تأليفه**

General Exercises | on Unit 3

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Communities pushed to the edge of society and given limited opportunities are called
a. marginalized communities b. climate resilience
c. greenhouse gas emissions d. extreme weather
2. Farmers faced a drought that lasted nearly eight months and destroyed most of the crops.
a. profound b. sustainable c. prolonged d. marginalized
3. Infants and the elderly are especially during severe weather events.
a. prolonged b. scorching c. marginalized d. vulnerable
4. Good education helps to people to make informed decisions.
a. empowerment b. empower c. empowered d. empowering
5. "The activists demand equal rights." The word 'activists' here is a synonym of
a. bystanders b. volunteers c. campaigners d. managers
6. A mindset can lead to major change.
a. transformed b. transformations c. transformative d. transforms
7. After new satellite data, the flood-risk excluded two streets.
a. projection b. adaptation c. zone d. mean
8. The film is a faithful of the 1960s novel, not a remake.
a. zone b. mean c. adaptation d. projection
9. Zein always submits homework on time. He late with it today.
a. can't be b. must be c. might have d. can't have
10. A: Where's Rodayna? Her coffee is still hot. B: She far.
a. must have gone b. can't be c. might have d. must
11. They about the event. No one told them.
a. must have known b. can't have known c. might be d. must know
12. "....., but I preferred watching the match on TV."
a. I could have gone to the stadium b. I might have gone to the stadium
c. I may have gone to the stadium d. I must have gone to the stadium
13. "He failed the driving test.".
a. He should have trained well b. He can't have trained well
c. He must have trained well d. a & b
14. "You made your sister upset again!".
a. You may have shouted at her b. You will have shouted at her
c. You should have shouted at her d. You shouldn't have shouted at her
15. All the students answered that question well; it so easy.
a. had to be b. mightn't be c. mustn't have been d. must have been
16. The light was off all night, they at home last night.
a. can't b. must be c. can't have been d. must have been
17. The cup is empty, he the tea.
a. must drink b. can't drink c. can't have drunk d. must have drunk

18. Which sentence is punctuated correctly?

- a. What amazing news, The police have found Uncle Adel's car.
- b. What amazing news! The police have found Uncle Adels' car.
- c. What amazing news! the police have found Uncle Adel's car.
- d. What amazing news! The police have found Uncle Adel's car.

19. You just cleaned the floor. It dirty already.

- a. must have
- b. might be
- c. can't be
- d. must be

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Artificial Intelligence (AI) refers to the simulation of human intelligence in machines that are programmed to think and learn like humans. Over the past few decades, AI has seen rapid development and has become an integral part of various industries, such as healthcare, finance, transportation, and entertainment.

AI systems are capable of performing tasks that typically require human intelligence, such as visual perception, speech recognition, decision-making, and language translation. One of the most well-known applications of AI is in virtual assistants, like Siri and Alexa, which can perform a wide range of tasks based on voice commands.

In healthcare, AI is being used to improve diagnostics and treatment plans by analyzing large amounts of medical data. For instance, AI algorithms can help detect diseases like cancer at an early stage by examining medical images. In finance, AI is used for fraud detection, algorithmic trading, and personalized financial advice.

However, the rise of AI also raises ethical concerns and challenges. Issues such as data privacy, job displacement, and algorithmic bias need to be addressed to ensure that AI is developed and used responsibly. As AI continues to evolve, it is crucial to strike a balance between leveraging its potential and mitigating its risks.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

20. What does AI stand for ?

- a. Automated Intelligence.
- b. Artificial Intelligence.
- c. Advanced Intelligence.
- d. Analytical Intelligence.

21. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a field where AI is used ?

- a. Healthcare
- b. Finance
- c. Agriculture
- d. Transportation

22. What is one of the well-known applications of AI in daily life ?

- a. Smart refrigerators
- b. Virtual assistants
- c. Autonomous cars
- d. Drones

23. How is AI used in healthcare ?

- a. To perform surgeries.
- b. To analyze medical data for diagnostics.
- c. To replace doctors.
- d. To manufacture medical equipment.

24. In which field is AI used for fraud detection and algorithmic trading ?

- a. Healthcare
- b. Education
- c. Finance
- d. Entertainment

25. What ethical concern is associated with AI ?

- a. Increased productivity
- b. Data privacy
- c. Enhanced entertainment
- d. Improved accuracy

26. What must be balanced according to the text ?

- a. Innovation and regulation
- b. Speed and efficiency
- c. Cost and benefit
- d. Potential and risk

27. Why is it important to address issues like algorithmic bias ?

- a. To improve technology
- b. To reduce costs
- c. To ensure responsible development and use of AI
- d. To increase sales

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

With the birth of the big cities and their exploding population has become the problem of getting rid of their wastes. Many people believe that these cities will eventually bury themselves in their own rubbish unless something is done, and done quickly. They support their argument by stating that in 1985 Mexico City produced 6,000 more tons of rubbish than could be collected.

The worries about land pollution, shortage of natural resources (especially wood and oil), increasing costs of raw materials and growing unemployment all point to one solution: recycling. Recyclable waste falls into seven basic groups: paper, glass, plastics, metals, rags, bones and organic matter. The first five groups can be recycled to produce similar products a second time. Organic matter can be used to feed animals or used as fertilizer. Bones produce fat, gelatin and calcium which can be used in animal feed or to make filters.

Among the many advantages of recycling are: saving valuable natural resources, preventing land pollution, saving manufacturers' money, creating a lot of jobs (to recycle the waste of Cairo would need 17,000 - 20,000 collectors, 6,000 sorters plus transporters, processors .etc.), creating new small businesses which can supply many of the major industries and generating money (e.g. in Cairo, if all the rubbish that could be recycled was recycled, it would generate \$ 73, 467 a day).

For recycling to be a success, it needs the support of the government in supplying areas for dumping, sorting and recycling, and to launch a campaign to persuade the public to co-operate. It needs experts to find suitable people or companies to recycle each material.

All the way along the line, from the collector to the seller of the recycled product, there has to be an acceptable income. In this way, meeting **this demand** is easier in the developing world, where people are on lower incomes, than in developed countries where expectations of reward are higher.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

28. Why has recycling become a necessity?

- a. It helps reduce land pollution.
- b. It addresses the shortage of natural resources.
- c. It mitigates the increasing costs of raw materials.
- d. All of the above.

29. How does recycling help save valuable natural resources?

- a. By increasing waste production.
- b. By reducing the need for new materials.
- c. By promoting deforestation.
- d. By encouraging resource depletion.

30. In what way does recycling save manufacturers' money?

- a. By increasing production costs.
- b. By providing cheaper raw materials.
- c. By requiring more energy consumption.
- d. By decreasing efficiency.

31. How does recycling contribute to job creation?
 a. By eliminating job opportunities. b. By creating new jobs in recycling industries.
 c. By outsourcing jobs to other countries. d. By reducing workforce needs.
32. What does “it” refer to in the text?
 a. All the rubbish that could be recycled. b. The process of recycling.
 c. The recycling industry. d. Waste management.
33. What does “this demand” refer to in the text?
 a. A need for more recycling facilities. b. An acceptable income.
 c. Increased public awareness. d. Government regulations.
34. According to the text which of the following is not a product of recycling?
 a. calcium b. oil c. fertilizer d. paper
35. Which of the following statements is not true?
 a. Recycling costs much and could only be afforded in developed countries.
 b. People in the developing countries need acceptable incomes to share in recycling work.
 c. In developed countries, people are less likely to accept recycling work.
 d. Recycling jobs provide low incomes that are more acceptable in the developing countries than in developed countries.

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

36. “We should emphasize the importance of clean energy.” The word ‘emphasize’ here is a synonym of
 a. hide b. stress c. highlight
 d. lessen e. delay
37. “The valley suffered from months of inundation.” The word ‘inundation’ is an antonym of
 a. heat b. warmth c. season
 d. drought e. dryness

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

38. Artificial Intelligence (AI) is revolutionizing the world at an unprecedented pace. Its applications are vast, ranging from healthcare to finance, and its potential for future advancements seems limitless.
- a. الذكاء الاصطناعي يعيد تشكيل العالم بسرعة غير مسبوقة. تطبيقاته واسعة النطاق، بدءًا من الرعاية الصحية وحتى التمويل، ويبدو أن إمكانياته المستقبلية لا حدود لها.
 b. يُحدث الذكاء الاصطناعي ثورة في العالم بوتيرة غير مسبوقة. تطبيقاته متعددة، من الرعاية الصحية إلى التمويل، وإمكانياته المستقبلية تبدو بلا حدود.
 c. الذكاء الاصطناعي يغيّر العالم بشكل غير مسبوق. تتنوع تطبيقاته من الرعاية الصحية إلى المالية، وإمكانياته المستقبلية تبدو غير محدودة.
 d. يُحدث الذكاء الاصطناعي تغييرًا جذريًا في العالم بسرعة غير مسبوقة. تتعدد تطبيقاته، بدءًا من الرعاية الصحية إلى التمويل، ويبدو أن إمكانياته المستقبلية لا نهاية لها.
39. For some people, the idea of a car without a driver is a frightening thought. However, experts say that 90% of accidents are because of mistakes made by people.
- a. تعتبر فكرة السيارة بدون سائق فكرة مخيفة لبعض الناس. ومع ذلك، يقول الخبراء أن ٩٠٪ من الحوادث تكون بسبب أخطاء يرتكبها الناس.
 b. تعتبر فكرة السيارة بدون سائق فكرة خائفة لجميع الناس. ومع ذلك، يقول الخبراء أن ٩٠٪ من الحوادث تكون بسبب أخطاء يرتكبها الناس.
 c. تعتبر فكرة السيارة بدون سائق فكرة سابقة لجميع الناس. ومع ذلك، يقول الخبراء أن ٩٠٪ من الحوادث تكون بسبب أخطاء يرتكبها الناس.
 d. تعتبر فكرة السيارة بدون سائق فكرة ثورية لجميع الناس. ومع ذلك، يقول الخبراء أن ٩٠٪ من الحوادث تكون بسبب أخطاء يرتكبها الناس.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

٤٠. التعليم هو الوسيلة التي يرتقي من خلالها الإنسان ويصل إلى أعلى المراتب، فالعلم هو سلاح هذا الزمان والذي نحارب به الجهل وبه نحقق أحلامنا ونتقدم إلى الأمام.

- a. Education is the mean through which a person rises and reaches the highest levels. Science is the weapon of this time with which we fight ignorant, achieving our dreams and moving forward.
- b. Education is the means through which a person raises and reaches the higher levels. Science is the weapon of this age with which we fight ignorant, achieving our dreams and moving upward.
- c. Education is the means through which a person rises and reaches the highest levels. Science is the weapon of this age with which we fight ignorance, achieve our dreams and move forward.
- d. Education is the mean through which a person rises and reaches the higher levels. Science is the weapon of this time with which we fight ignorance, achieve our dreams and move upward.

٤١. لقد يسرت التجارة الإلكترونية على الكثير من الناس عملية البيع والشراء إلكترونياً، وهذا بدوره يوفر الوقت والجهد فضلاً عن خلق مناخ تنافسي يصب في صالح المستهلك أولاً.

- a. E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and trade electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive climate that benefits the producer first.
- b. E-learning has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a complete climate that benefits the consumer first.
- c. E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive environment that benefits the consumer first.
- d. E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electrically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive environment that fits the consumer first.

• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

42. I'm sure Yasmeen is feeling happy. (must)

.....

43. It was a mistake not to study for the exam. (should)

.....

• Answer the following questions:

44. **SB** Why was Edmond arrested even though he was innocent ?

.....

45. Who tried to defend Edmond publicly ?

.....

46. **Write a six-line conclusion to an essay on :**

"Global Warming"

.....

Review 1

Based On Units 1, 2 & 3

SB pages 47 : 54

A VOCABULARY

1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. She found the work rewarding because she could see the positive impact she was making. The synonym of the underlined word “**rewarding**” is
a. hateful b. fulfilling c. satisfying
d. wasteful e. unpleasant
2. Engineers are constantly working to improve the efficiency of solar panels. The synonym of the underlined word “**efficiency**” is
a. productivity b. toughness c. electricity
d. effectiveness e. ease
3. The museum featured a sophisticated security system to protect the priceless artworks. The synonym of the underlined word “**sophisticated**” is
a. advanced b. complex c. simple
d. humble e. tolerant
4. Planting trees in cities can help mitigate the effects of air pollution. The synonym of the underlined word “**mitigate**” is
a. finish b. invest c. lessen
d. endanger e. reduce
5. “She preferred handmade tools over an automated system.” The word “**automated**” here is an antonym of
a. manual b. mechanical c. hand-operated
d. robotic e. digital

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6. The school year always with an opening ceremony.
a. kicks at b. kicks off c. collapses d. clutches
7. Nurses usually work in an 8-hour
a. buzz b. shift c. scope d. household
8. The atmosphere in the office had a positive after the big announcement.
a. equity b. urgency c. chaos d. buzz
9. Paramedics are trained to first aid quickly.
a. administer b. moan c. collapse d. migrate
10. Pay close to the teacher’s instructions.
a. migration b. lever c. attention d. urgency
11. The hospital received many patients after the
a. emergency b. version c. chores d. dynasty

12. The of the accident was taken to the ER.
 a. diver b. victim c. paramedic d. phenomenon
13. The fire caused complete in the market.
 a. scope b. equity c. migration d. chaos
14. Seeing children suffer is truly
 a. sophisticated b. sustainable c. automated d. heartbreaking
15. The old bridge might if we don't repair it.
 a. collapse b. groan c. migrate d. shift
16. If someone stops breathing, you might need to perform
 a. CPR b. chores c. equity d. urgency
17. She lost during the surgery but regained it later.
 a. phenomenon b. infrastructure c. consciousness d. automation
18. She broke her while skiing.
 a. collarbone b. lever c. household d. artifact
19. The child her mother's hand tightly while crossing the road.
 a. migrated b. kicked off c. grabbed d. administered
20. The new project's is to help rural farmers.
 a. scope b. lever c. equity d. buzz
21. The Ming ruled China for centuries.
 a. dynasty b. equity c. infrastructure d. migration
22. Workers used a to lift the heavy stone.
 a. lever b. stitch c. collarbone d. phenomenon
23. Roads and bridges are part of a country's
 a. chaos b. consciousness c. infrastructure d. equity

B LANGUAGE

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

24. He said he call me the next day.
 a. will b. would c. can d. may
25. She told me the door.
 a. close b. to close c. closing d. closed
26. The teacher asked us quiet.
 a. to be b. be c. being d. is
27. He must be the new teacher. The modal "must" shows.....
 a. obligation b. strong deduction c. permission d. advice
28. That be his bag — it's too small.
 a. could b. must c. can't d. shouldn't
29. She might be at the library. Here "might" expresses.....
 a. possibility b. certainty c. permission d. obligation
30. This machine the clothes automatically.
 a. washes b. is washing c. washed d. wash

31. The project by engineers at the moment.
a. is being designed b. designs c. was designed d. design
32. He he could swim fast.
a. ordered b. asked c. told d. said
33. He told me that button.
a. not touch b. not to touch c. to not touch d. no touching
34. They said they going to the park.
a. are b. were c. will d. would
35. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
a. He told me that he will comes tomorrow.
b. He told me that he would come the next day.
c. He told me that he is coming the next day.
d. He told me that he has come the next day.
36. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
a. He said to not to be late. b. He said to not be late.
c. He told to not be late. d. He told me not to be late.
37. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
a. They asked us do the project. b. They asked us to doing the project.
c. They asked us to do the project. d. They asked us did the project.
38. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
a. She might be know the answer. b. She might knows the answer.
c. She might know the answer. d. She might to know the answer.
39. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
a. He asked me to help him. b. He asked me to helping him.
c. He asked me if I can helped him. d. He asked me help him.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

40. "I am studying English now," she said. (She said...)
41. "We live in Cairo," they told me. (They told me...)
42. "I will call you tomorrow," he promised. (He promised...)
43. "Don't be late," my mother told me. (My mother told me...)
44. "We can finish this project today," they said. (They said...)
45. I'm certain he isn't at school. (can't)
46. Maybe it is raining in London. (might)
47. I'm sure this is the right bus. (must)
48. I'm certain they are not serious. (can't)
49. Perhaps he is reading in his room. (could)

C TRANSLATION

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

50. Machines increase efficiency and accuracy in tasks, reducing human effort and error during industrial processes and daily life activities.

a. تعمل الماكينات على زيادة الكفاءة والدقة في المهام، مما يزيد من الجهد البشري وعدم الخطأ أثناء الصناعات والحياة اليومية.

b. تعمل الآلات على تقليل الكفاءة والدقة في المهام، مما يقلل من الجهد البشري أو الخطأ أثناء تحويل الصناعات والحياة النشيطة اليومية.

c. تعمل الآلات على زيادة الكفاءة والدقة في المهام، مما يقلل من الجهد البشري والخطأ أثناء العمليات الصناعية أنشطة الحياة اليومية.

d. تعمل الماكينات على زيادة الكفاءة والدقة في المهام، مما يزيد الجهد البشري والخطأ أثناء نقل الصناعات والحياة اليومية.

51. Modern devices are essential because they streamline communication, provide instant access to information, and automate complex tasks, significantly enhancing productivity and quality of life

a. تعتبر الأجهزة الحديثة ضرورية لأنها تعمل على تعقيد الاتصالات وتوفير الوصول المؤقت إلى المعلومات وإتمام المهام المعقدة، مما يعزز الإنتاجية وجودة الحياة بشكل كبير.

b. تعتبر الأجهزة الحديثة ضرورية لأنها تعمل على سهولة الاتصالات وتوفير الوصول الفوري إلى المعلومات وإتمام المهام المعقدة، مما يعزز الإنتاجية وجودة الحياة بشكل كبير.

c. تعتبر الأجهزة الحديثة ضرورية لأنها تعمل على تسهيل الاتصالات وعدم توفير الوصول الفوري إلى المعلومات وإتمام المهام البسيطة، مما يعوق الإنتاجية وجودة الحياة بشكل كبير.

d. تعتبر الأجهزة الحديثة ضرورية لأنها تعمل على سهولة الاتصالات وتوفير الوصول الفوري إلى المعلومات وإتمام المهام المعقدة، مما يعوق الإنتاجية وجودة الحياة بشكل كبير.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

٥٢. بإمكاننا حماية مستقبلنا من خلال تبني الممارسات المستدامة، والحد من التلوث، والحفاظ على الموارد الطبيعية، واتخاذ إجراءات ضد تغير المناخ.

a. We can prevent our future from embracing sustainable practices, reducing pollution, conserving normal resources, and taking action against climate change.

b. We can protect our future by embracing sustainable practices, reducing pollution, conserving natural resources, and taking action against climate change.

c. We can protect our future by bracing sustainable practices, reducing pollution, conserving natural sources, and taking action against climate charge.

d. We can protect our future by embracing sustainable practices, reducing pollution, preserving natural sources, and taking action for climate change.

٥٣. تلعب الممرضات دورًا حيويًا في رعاية المرضى من خلال مراقبة الصحة، وإعطاء الأدوية، وتقديم الدعم المعنوي، والتعاون مع الأطباء لضمان العلاج الآمن والفعال.

a. Nurse plays a vital role in patients care by monitoring health, administering medications, providing emotional support, and collaborating with doctors to ensure safe and affective treatment.

b. Nurses play a vital role in patience care by monitoring health, administering medications, providing emotional support, and collaborating with doctors to ensure safe and effective treatment.

c. Nurses play a vital role in patient care by monitoring health, demonstrating medications, providing emotional support, and collaborating with doctors to sure safe and effective treatment.

d. Nurses play a vital role in patients care by monitoring health, administering medications, providing emotional support, and collaborating with doctors to ensure safe and effective treatment.

D READING COMPREHENSION

• Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

"A friend in need is a friend indeed" Has that proverb been proven to you? Has any of your close friends ever supported you at times of sorrow, distress or times of joy? That has become a needle in a haystack at these times of struggling and climbing on the shoulders of others.

At the very beginning of their life, a child makes friends with a lot of peers who may be a mixture of good and evil. They, due to their young age, can't perfectly judge or decide who to continue keeping or losing friendship with. By the time they become older, the number of friends decreases to a number that may not exceed the number of one hand fingers. It all depends on to what extent they are faithful, selfless and honest to each other.

Friendship that all mankind always searches for, as it's mainly a human instinct and man is social by nature, has become a rare value. Friends can help you celebrate good times and provide support for you in bad ones. They prevent isolation and loneliness and increase your sense of belonging. The so-called friends on social media only limit themselves in comments or emojis to congratulate and condole instead of hastening to stand right next to you unless they have tough conditions. You'd better carefully choose your friends.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In the writer's point of view, true friends have become
a. widely spread b. available c. common d. rare
- "Close" in the first paragraph has the same meaning as
a. locked b. best c. hateful d. selfish
- The expression "Climbing on the shoulders of others" describes
a. true friends b. selfish friends
c. all friends on social media d. all friends on real life
- The word "decrease" in the second paragraph is an antonym of
a. decline b. shrink c. go down d. expand
- Man always needs friends because
a. they need to joke others b. they have much free time
c. this is how they were created d. they are greedy by nature
- "Emojis" are
a. games and entertainments b. tools and equipment
c. electronic devices d. figures and symbols
- Friendship helps prevent us from the feelings of
a. loneliness and isolation b. relief and relaxing
c. fear and horror d. joy and excitement
- The writer advises us to
a. carefully select our friends b. text our friends at times of sorrow
c. correctly socialise online d. reduce the number of friends

E WRITING

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A blog post is usually written in
a. formal, academic style b. casual, personal style
c. legal style d. poetic style
2. An argumentative essay should
a. present both sides of an issue and support one b. tell a personal story
c. be completely one-sided without evidence d. list daily activities
3. A persuasive essay's main goal is to
a. inform b. entertain c. convince d. summarize
4. Blog posts often include
a. charts and data tables only b. personal opinions and experiences
c. only references and citations d. none of the above
5. In an argumentative essay, evidence can include
a. facts, statistics, and expert opinions b. only personal opinions
c. random examples d. unrelated stories
6. Which of these is a good blog title?
a. "Analysis of Thermal Migration in Birds" b. "Why My Morning Coffee is Sacred"
c. "The Effects of Lever Mechanics" d. "A Study on Urban Infrastructure"
7. A persuasive essay is different from an argumentative essay because it
a. focuses more on emotional appeal b. uses no evidence
c. avoids taking a stance d. is always shorter
8. The introduction of an essay should
a. immediately give all details b. present the topic and thesis statement
c. start with unrelated jokes d. list references
9. Blog posts may include hyperlinks to
a. sources and related content b. poems
c. advertisements only d. random websites
10. In a persuasive essay, the conclusion should
a. restate the thesis and encourage action b. introduce new evidence
c. start a new argument d. list unrelated facts
11. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated:
a. Its going to be a long day. b. Its going to be a long day!
c. It's going to be a long day. d. It's going to be a long day?
12. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated:
a. However, we decided to leave early. b. However we decided to leave early.
c. However we, decided to leave early. d. However! we decided to leave early.

13. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated:
- She spent her summer in New York, New York - Los Angeles, California - and Miami, Florida.
 - She spent her summer in New York, New York; Los Angeles, California; and Miami, Florida.
 - She spent her summer in New York, New York: Los Angeles, California: and Miami, Florida.
 - She spent her summer in New York, New York, Los Angeles, California, and Miami, Florida.
14. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated:
- I love cooking my family and my pets.
 - I love cooking, my family, and my pets.
 - I love cooking, my family and my pets.
 - I love cooking my family, and my pets.
15. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated:
- Don't forget to bring your notebook, laptop, and charger.
 - Don't forget to bring your notebook, laptop and, charger.
 - Don't forget to bring your notebook laptop and charger.
 - Don't forget, to bring your notebook, laptop, and charger.

2 Write on one of the following:

- a) A persuasive essay about "Wearing a School Uniform at High Schools."

.....

.....

- b) A blog post about "What We Can Learn from Animals About Adapting to Change."

.....

.....

3 Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

- a) An introduction for an argumentative essay that claims "Social media does more harm than good for teenagers' mental health."

.....

.....

- b) Write an engaging introductory paragraph for a blog post titled: "Why Taking Mental Health Days Should Be Normalized at Work."

.....

.....

F THE NOVEL

• Answer the following questions:

- In what ways does Edmond's return to Marseilles mark the beginning of both promising opportunities and serious threats in his life?
- What plans did Edmond and Mercédès have for their life together before everything changed?
- Why did Ville fort destroy the letter?

.....

UNIT 4

SB pages 55 : 67

Marine Life



Learning Outcomes

• Reading

- Read articles and texts about marine ecosystems, including coral reefs and various ocean creatures
- Identify key details, define vocabulary from context, and understand idioms and figurative language

• Language

- Use and identify different types of adjectives, including participles as adjectives and compound adjectives

• Listening

- Extract key information from a podcast about whales and their conservation

• Writing

- Write a short story following a specific three-part structure

• Speaking

- Discuss opinions about marine life and environmental conservation
- Express complaints and how to address them persuasively



SB pages 56 - 59

PART ONE

Lessons

1 & 2

► A Colorful Underwater City
► The Ocean's Gentle Giants

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bleach(ed) (v)	يَبْهَتُ / يَفْهَدُ لَوْنَهُ	hazardous (adj)	خَطِير
breathtaking (adj)	يُخْطَفُ الْأَنْفَاسُ	magnificent (adj)	زَائِعَةٌ
dedicated (adj)	مُخْلِص	non-invasive (adj)	سطحي/ظاهري
disrupt (ed) (v)	يُسْوَشُ عَلَى / يَفْطَعُ	pose(d) (v)	يُسْكَلُ - يُمَثِّلُ - يفرض
diverse (adj)	مُتَنَوِّع	struggle(d) (n-v)	كفاح/نضال - يكافح
entangled (adj)	مُتَشَابِك - غَالِق	thrive(d) (v)	يَزْدَهَرُ
erosion (n)	الْتَأْكُلُ	underestimate(d) (v)	يَسْتَهَيِّنُ بِ - يبخس قدر
fragile (adj)	هَسَل - ضَعِيف	vivid (adj)	زَاهِيَةٌ
haunting (adj)	مُؤَثِّر (صعب النسيان)		

2 Important Vocabulary

accidentally (adv)	عن طريق الخطأ	journey (n)	رحلة
act(ed) (v)	يَتَصَرَّفُ	known for (adj)	مَعْرُوف بِ
admire (d) (v)	يُعْجَبُ بِ - يُقَدِّرُ	lifeless (adj)	بِلا حَيَاةٍ
alive (adj)	حَيٌّ	long-term (adj)	طَوِيل الْأَمَدِ
attract (ed) (v)	يجذب	marine (adj)	بَحْرِيٌّ
awareness (n)	الْوَعْيُ	massive (adj)	ضَخْم
ban(ned) (v)	يَحْظُرُ	matter (ed)(n - v)	يَهْمُ - أَمْرٌ
beneath (prep)	تَحْتَ	memorable (adj)	لا يُنْسَى - غَالِقٌ بِالذَّهْنِ
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء	migratory (adj)	خَاصٌّ بِالْهَجْرَةِ
brilliant (adj)	زَائِعٌ - مُتَأَلِّقٌ	motion (n)	حَرَكَه
brightly - colored	زاهي الألوان	pollution (n)	الْتَلَوُثُ
cheerful (adj)	بَشُوْشٌ / فَرِحٌ	poor (adj)	رديء
colorful (adj)	مُتَوَنِّعٌ	practices (n)	مُمَارَسَاتٌ
conditions (n)	ظُرُوفٌ	preserve(d) (v)	يَحَافِظُ عَلَى
conservation (n)	الْحِفَاظُ عَلَى	prevent(ed) (v)	يَمْنَعُ
contrast(ed) (n-v)	التَّضَادُّ - يُنَاقِضُ	priceless (adj)	لَا يُقَدَّرُ بِثَمَنٍ
coral reef (n)	الشَّعَابُ الْمَرْجَانِيَّةُ	promote(d) (v)	يعزز / يدعم / يرقى
creamy (adj)	كَرِيمِي - غَنِيٌّ بِالْقِشْدَةِ	protection (n)	جَمَاعِيَّة
creature (n)	مَخْلُوق - كَائِنٌ	recover(ed) (v)	يَتَعافى - يستفيق
crystal-clear	صافٍ كَالْبُلُورِ - واضح	reliable (adj)	يُعْتَمَدُ عَلَيْهِ - مُوثِقٌ
damage(d) (n-v)	ضَرَرٌ / يَتلف / يدمر	renewed (adj)	مُتَجَدِّدٌ
dangers (n)	مَخَاطِرُ		

destination (n)	وجهة - مقصد	human-made (adj)	من صنع الإنسان
destructive (adj)	مدمر	role (n)	دور
disturbance (n)	إزعاج	role-play (n-v)	تمثيل أدوار - يلعب دور
divine (adj)	مقدس - لذيذ جدًا (مجازًا)	shelter(ed) (n-v)	مأوى - يؤوي
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	slow-moving (adj)	بطيء الحركة
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	sonar (n)	السونار
ecosystem (n)	النظام البيئي	species (n)	أنواع
ensure(d) (v)	يضمن	stitch(ed) (n-v)	غرز - يغرز
essential (adj)	ضروري	stricter (adj)	أشد صرامة
fictional (adj)	خيالي	surprisingly (adv)	بشكل مفاجئ
fishing (n)	صيد السمك	survival (n)	البقاء
frightened (adj)	خائف جدًا - مرعوب	tasteless (adj)	بلا طعم
fussy (adj)	ضغبي الإرضاء	threat (n)	تهديد
gentle (adj)	لطيف - راقى	tirelessly (adv)	بلا كلل
giant (n)	عملاق	tone (n)	نبرة - أسلوب
grand (adj)	عظيم - كبير	track(ed) (v)	يتعقب
graceful (adj)	رشيق	vital (adj)	حيوي
habitat (n)	موطن	widespread (adj)	واسع الانتشار
home (n)	موطن	wooden (adj)	خشبي

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- The strong chemical my favorite T-shirt.
a. bleached b. posed c. underestimated d. thrived
- This book paints a picture of village life.
a. dedicated b. hazardous c. fragile d. vivid
- The patient chose a treatment option.
a. haunting b. diverse c. breathtaking d. non-invasive
- She to keep her grades up during exams.
a. disrupted b. struggled c. banned d. mattered
- The coral reef is full of colors.
a. banned b. hazardous c. vivid d. dedicated
- The palace has a view of the valley.
a. hazardous b. destructive c. divine d. magnificent
- Wind and rain caused soil on the hill.
a. erosion b. conservation c. awareness d. emotion
- Climate change a serious threat to coastal cities.
a. bleaches b. poses c. underestimates d. thrives

9. Be careful! That glass is very
 a. vivid b. hazardous c. fragile d. dedicated
10. We enjoyed watching the sun set over a landscape.
 a. non-invasive b. breathtaking c. haunting d. banned
11. Loud noises can your sleep.
 a. disrupt b. struggle c. dedicate d. matter
12. In protected areas, there are groups to rescue whales.
 a. long-term b. entangled c. vibrant d. vivid
13. Some plants even in hot, dry environments.
 a. bleach b. pose c. underestimate d. thrive
14. She is a doctor who works with refugees.
 a. vivid b. hazardous c. fragile d. dedicated
15. Our school has groups of students.
 a. non-invasive b. haunting c. diverse d. breathtaking
16. Don't her ability to lead the team.
 a. underestimate b. pose c. bleach d. thrive
17. These chemicals are to touch. Keep away
 a. fragile b. hazardous c. vivid d. dedicated
18. The movie's music stayed with me all night.
 a. banned b. non-invasive c. haunting d. fragile

2 Important Vocabulary

19. The school decided to phones in class.
 a. disrupt b. haunt c. ban d. matter
20. It to me how others treat me.
 a. struggles b. bans c. disrupts d. matters
21. We have to follow orders and instructions from Allah.
 a. destructive b. magnificent c. divine d. crystal-clear
22. The camera captured every slight
 a. motion b. conservation c. awareness d. erosion
23. Dolphins and whales are animals.
 a. marine b. entangled c. long-term d. vibrant
24. We must raise public about climate change.
 a. conservation b. awareness c. motion d. erosion
25. This plan will bring benefits. Be patient.
 a. destructive b. marine c. long-term d. entangled
26. The earthquake had effects on the city.
 a. vibrant b. destructive c. divine d. magnificent
27. Wildlife is important for future generations.
 a. erosion b. destruction c. conservation d. motion
28. The lake water was so that we could see the fish.
 a. divine b. crystal-clear c. destructive d. magnificent
29. The singer's angry surprised the audience.
 a. tone b. habitat c. ecosystem d. disturbance
30. The government quickly after the disaster.
 a. acted b. contrasted c. preserved d. promoted

31. The lost dog found under a bridge and soon fell asleep.
a. shelter b. threat c. destination d. home
32. The disease caused panic in the city.
a. widespread b. human-made c. eco-friendly d. memorable
33. Doctors the safety of the vaccine. They say it is safe.
a. ensure b. track c. prevent d. recover
34. Good can improve your language skills.
a. practice b. condition c. creature d. coral reef
35. The desert is an extreme for many animals.
a. tone b. habitat c. ecosystem d. disturbance
36. We must our forests for the next generation.
a. act b. preserve c. recover d. contrast
37. Climate change is a serious to coral reefs.
a. home b. threat c. shelter d. destination
38. That river was polluted by waste.
a. human-made b. memorable c. eco-friendly d. memorable
39. The police the thief's movements and arrested him.
a. ensured b. tracked c. thrived d. recovered
40. Plants grow best in warm with sunlight.
a. coral reefs b. creatures c. conditions d. practices
41. Protecting our needs cooperation from all nations.
a. tone b. habits c. ecosystem d. disturbance
42. The artist light with dark in his painting.
a. acted b. preserved c. contrasted d. promoted
43. The forest is a natural for many animals.
a. home b. destination c. practice d. tone
44. We should use products to protect nature.
a. memorable b. eco-friendly c. widespread d. human-made
45. The patient quickly after surgery.
a. prevented b. tracked c. recovered d. ensured
46. The diver saw colorful fish around the
a. coral reefs b. conditions c. practices d. creatures
47. The noise from the factory caused to the wildlife.
a. tone b. habitat c. ecosystem d. disturbance
48. The school aims to healthy eating habits.
a. fight b. preserve c. contrast d. promote
49. Paris is a top travel for tourists.
a. threat b. shelter c. destination d. home
50. It was a/an trip that we will never forget.
a. eco-friendly b. widespread c. memorable d. human-made

51. This fence helps animals from escaping.

- a. recover b. ensure c. track d. prevent

52. The spider is a small but smart

- a. coral reef b. creature c. condition d. practice

3 A bit Tricky

هذا الجزء يعرض أفكار أسئلة التمييز الخاصة بالطلبة الفائقين في الامتحان

تنويه

53. Sama's feelings make her suffer. She's so sensitive.

- a. tasteless b. haunting c. vibrant d. non-invasive

54. Strong chemicals used to clean the fabric may its original color.

- a. thrive b. disrupt c. pose d. bleach

55. The horror film left a feeling that stayed in our minds long after we left the cinema.

- a. massive b. haunting c. fragile d. non-invasive

56. During the fire drill, students were told not to any danger by standing near the doors.

- a. bleach b. pose c. thrive d. disrupt

57. Some plants can in dry climates where others would quickly die.

- a. pose b. bleach c. disrupt d. thrive

58. The new medical technique is completely and doesn't require cutting the skin.

- a. haunting b. non-invasive c. tasteless d. fragile

II VOCABULARY STUDY

هذا الجزء هام جداً سواء على مستوى تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية أو التمييز في الامتحانات

تنويه

1 Definitions التعريفات

bleach(ed) (v)	يَبْهَتُ / يَفْقِدُ لَوْنَهُ	to lose color and become pale or white, often due to damage
breathtaking (adj)	يُخْطَفُ الْأَنْفَاسُ	extremely beautiful or amazing; stunning
dedicated (adj)	مُخْلِصٌ	giving a lot of time and effort to something because you care about it
disrupt (ed) (v)	يَشْوِشُ عَلَى / يَفْطَعُ	to interrupt or break up something, causing disorder
diverse (adj)	مُتَنَوِّعٌ	very different or varied; showing a wide range
entangled (adj)	مُتَشَابِكٌ - غَالِقٌ	twisted or scrambled together in a complicated way
erosion (n)	التَّآكُلُ	the gradual wearing away of land, often by water or wind
fragile (adj)	هَسٌ - ضَعِيفٌ	easily broken or damaged; delicate
haunting (adj)	مُؤَثِّرٌ	something that stays in your mind, often in a sad or memorable way
hazardous (adj)	خَطِيرٌ	dangerous or risky
magnificent (adj)	زَائِعَةٌ	very impressive, beautiful, or splendid
non-invasive (adj)	سطحي - ظاهري	not entering the body; often used for medical procedures that don't involve cuts or instruments going inside

pose(d) (v)	يُشَكِّل - يُمَثِّل	to present or create (a danger, threat, or challenge)
struggle(d) (v)	يكافح	to try very hard to do something difficult
thrive(d) (v)	يَزدهِر	to grow, develop, or be successful
underestimate(d) (v)	يَسْتَهينُ بِ - يَخسِ قَدْر	to think something is less important or smaller than it really is
vivid (adj)	زَاهِيَّةُ الألوان	very bright, strong, and clear in color

Mini Test 1 Definitions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The process by which something loses its color or brightness is called
a. struggle b. disrupt c. bleach d. pose
- When you someone or something, you believe they are less capable, skilled, strong, etc. than they truly are.
a. promote b. stitch c. thrive d. underestimate
- Something extremely beautiful is best described as
a. hazardous b. dedicated c. breathtaking d. fragile
- A group that contains many different types is said to be
a. diverse b. non-invasive c. entangled d. vivid
- When you a system, you interrupt its normal operation.
a. pose b. bleach c. disrupt d. struggle
- The ability to grow or succeed strongly means to
a. thrive b. underestimate c. stitch d. promote
- A person who gives enough time and serious effort to a cause is said to be
a. fragile b. breathtaking c. dedicated d. hazardous
- When things are twisted together in a complicated way, they are
a. vivid b. diverse c. non-invasive d. entangled
- If something is extremely grand and beautiful, it is
a. magnificent b. fragile c. human-made d. haunting
- To present a challenge, threat, or risk means to
a. bleach b. pose c. disrupt d. struggle
- To encourage the development or progress of something means to
a. stitch b. underestimate c. thrive d. promote
- When something is easily broken or damaged, it is considered
a. breathtaking b. fragile c. hazardous d. dedicated
- A medical method that doesn't enter the body is described as
a. diverse b. entangled c. non-invasive d. vivid
- An image or memory that stays in your mind in a moving way is
a. haunting b. magnificent c. entangled d. human-made

15. A person who tries hard to overcome difficulty.
 a. poses b. bleaches c. disrupts d. struggles
16. To is to join or repair something using needle and thread.
 a. thrive b. stitch c. underestimate d. promote
17. A place or activity that involves risk or danger is
 a. hazardous b. dedicated c. fragile d. breathtaking
18. Something full of bright, clear color is best described as
 a. non-invasive b. vivid c. entangled d. diverse
19. Something built or created by people rather than nature is called
 a. magnificent b. hazardous c. haunting d. human-made

2 Derivatives المشتقات

bleach		
bleach (v)	يَنْهَثُ / يَفْقِدُ لَوْنَهُ	- The strong sun can bleach the color of your clothes.
bleachable (adj)	قَابِلٌ لِلتَّبْيِضِ	- This fabric is bleachable with safe products.
bleached (adj)	بَاهِتٌ	- The bleached walls made the room look dull.
bleaching (n)	تَبْيِضٌ / إِزَالَةُ اللَّوْنِ	- Bleaching is used in textile industries.
breathtaking		
breathtaking (adj)	يُخْطَفُ الْأَنْفَاسُ	- The view from the mountain was breathtaking .
breathtakingly (adv)	يَشْكُلُ يُخْطَفُ الْأَنْفَاسُ	- The city looked breathtakingly beautiful at night.
dedicated		
dedicate (v)	يُخْرِسُ / يُخْلِصُ	- He dedicated his time to community work.
dedicated (adj)	مُخْلِصٌ	- She is a dedicated teacher who cares about her students.
dedication (n)	إِخْلَاصٌ / تَفَانٌ	- His dedication to the job is remarkable.
disrupt		
disrupt (v)	يُشَوِّشُ عَلَى / يَقْطَعُ	- Loud sounds disrupt my concentration.
disrupted (adj)	مُشَوِّشٌ / مُقَاطِعٌ	- The disrupted class couldn't focus.
disruption (n)	تَشْوِيشٌ / قَطْعٌ	- The accident caused disruption in traffic.
disruptive (adj)	مُشَوِّشٌ / مُزِعِجٌ	- His disruptive behavior affected the whole class.
diverse		
diverse (adj)	مُتَنَوِّعٌ	- The school has a diverse student population.
diversified (adj)	مُتَنَوِّعٌ	- They offer a diversified menu.
diversify (v)	يَتَنَوَّعُ	- The company plans to diversify its products.
diversity (n)	تَنَوُّعٌ	- We celebrate the diversity of cultures in our class.

entangle		
entangle (v)	يُشْتَبِكُ / يَشْتَبِكُ	- The fishing net entangled the turtle.
entangled (adj)	مُتَشَابِكٌ / غَالِقٌ	- The cables got entangled under the desk.
entanglement (n)	تَشَابُكٌ / تَغْقُدٌ	- He avoided emotional entanglement .
erosion		
erode (v)	يُسْتَبِبُ تَاكُلًا	- The waves erode the cliff slowly.
eroded (adj)	مُتَاكِلٌ	- The eroded surface needed repair.
erosion (n)	التَّالُكُ	- Soil erosion affects farming.
fragile		
fragile (adj)	هَسٌ / ضَعِيفٌ	- Be careful, that vase is fragile .
fragility (n)	الهَسَاشَةُ	- The fragility of the system caused problems.
haunting		
haunt (v)	يُطَارِدُ (ذَهَيْبًا)	- The memory of her voice still haunts me.
haunting (adj)	مُؤَثِّرٌ	- The story had a haunting ending.
hazardous		
hazard (n)	خَطَرٌ	- The fire created a major hazard .
hazardous (adj)	خَطِيرٌ	- Handling chemicals can be hazardous .
hazardously (adv)	بِشْكَلٍ خَطِيرٍ	- He drove hazardously through the storm.
magnificent		
magnificence (n)	رُوعَةٌ	- Everyone admired the magnificence of the hall.
magnificent (adj)	زَانِعٌ	- The palace was magnificent .
magnificently (adv)	بِشْكَلٍ زَانِعٍ	- The stage was magnificently lit.
pose		
pose (v)	يُشْكَلُ / يفرض	- Pollution poses a real threat to marine life.
pose (n)	وضع الوقوف بشكل معين للتصوير	- She took a pose for the camera and smiled.
struggle		
struggle (n)	جَفَاخٌ / بَضَالٌ	- His struggle inspired many people.
struggle (v)	يُكَافِحُ / يُنَاضِلُ	- Students often struggle with time management.
thrive		
thrive (v)	يَزْدَهَرُ	- Some plants thrive in the desert.
thriving (adj)	مُزْدَهَرٌ	- She runs a thriving business.
underestimate		
underestimate (v)	يَسْتَهِينُ بِـ / يُقَلِّلُ مِنْ	- Don't underestimate my abilities.

underestimated (adj) مُسْتَهْتَهَانْ بِه / غير مُقَدَّر بِشَكْل كاف	- He was underestimated by his competitors.
underestimation (n) إِسْتِهْتَاهَانَة	- The underestimation of the risks led to failure.
vivid	
vivid (adj) زَاهِيَّة / وَاضِحَة	- She gave a vivid description of the accident.
vividly (adv) بِشَكْل وَاضِح	- I vividly remember my first day of school.
vividness (n) وُضُوح / زَهَاوَة	- The vividness of the dream was strange.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The sun can cloth if it's left outside for too long.
a. bleach b. bleached c. bleaching d. bleaches
- His shirt looked very old and after many washes.
a. bleach b. bleached c. bleaching d. bleachable
- This chemical is not safe for
a. bleach b. bleached c. bleaching d. bleachable
- The rescue team admired her to help others.
a. dedicate b. dedication c. dedicated d. dedicates
- Mr Ayman is known as a teacher.
a. dedicated b. dedication c. dedicates d. dedicate
- The strong winds may the signal.
a. disruption b. disrupt c. disruptive d. disrupted
- There was serious during the ceremony.
a. disrupted b. disruption c. disrupt d. disruptive
- She avoided emotional with others.
a. entangled b. entangle c. entanglement d. entangling
- The area suffers from coastal every year.
a. eroded b. erosion c. erode d. eroding
- These plants in warm, sunny weather.
a. is thriving b. thrive c. thriving d. thrives
- That was a scene; I will never forget.
a. haunt b. haunting c. haunted d. haunts
- The palace stood in its full on the hill.
a. magnificence b. magnificent c. magnificently d. magnify
- We shouldn't his skills just because he's quiet.
a. underestimated b. underestimate c. underestimation d. underestimating
- The of the threat led to major problems.
a. underestimate b. underestimation c. underestimating d. underestimated
- The of the coral reef is a serious issue.
a. erosion b. erode c. eroded d. eroding

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

ban	harmful sonar harmful practices	يُحْظَرُ السُونَارُ الضَّارَّ يُحْظَرُ المَقَارِضَاتُ الضَّارَّةُ	lose	color	يَفْقِدُ اللَّوْنَ
build	protection	يُحْمَى - يُحْصَن	play	a role in	يَلْعَبُ دَوْرًا فِي
call	for action	يَدْعُو إِلَى الْعَمَلِ	pose	a threat	يُسَكِّلُ خَطَرًا
cause	damage	يُسَبِّبُ ضَرْرًا	preserve	biodiversity	يُحَافِظُ عَلَى التَّنَوُّعِ الْخَبَوِيِّ
disrupt	communication	يُشَوِّشُ عَلَى التَّوَاصُلِ	prevent	damage	يَمْنَعُ الضَّرَرَ
educate	communities	يُثَقِّفُ الْمُجْتَمَعَاتِ	promote	eco-friendly tourism	يُرَوِّجُ لِلسِّيَاحَةِ الصَّدِيقَةِ لِلْبَيئَةِ
encourage	conservation	يَشْجَعُ عَلَى الْجِفَافِ	raise	awareness	يَرْيِّدُ الْوَعْيَ
face	threats	يُوجِّهُ تَهْدِيدَاتٍ	reduce	waste	يَقْلِلُ النِّفَاقَاتِ
gain	awareness	يُكْتَسِبُ وَعْيًا	restore	habitats	يُرْمِمُ الْمَوَاطِنَ الطَّبِيعِيَّةَ
			support	marine life	يُدْعِمُ الْحَيَاةَ الْبَحْرِيَّةَ

Mini Test 3 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Factories that dump waste into the sea can to marine life.
a. call for action b. pose a threat c. reduce waste d. gain awareness
- Environmental groups often when urgent change is needed.
a. promote eco-friendly tourism b. pose a threat
c. call for action d. face threats
- Many travel companies now to protect nature and attract responsible tourists.
a. raise awareness b. promote eco-friendly tourism
c. build protection d. restore habitats
- When corals are stressed by heat, they and become white.
a. lose color b. disrupt communication
c. face threats d. prevent damage
- Ship noise can between whales.
a. build protection b. disrupt communication
c. support marine life d. reduce waste
- Using reusable bags helps and protect the environment.
a. cause damage b. reduce waste
c. increase waste d. face threats
- Volunteers often cleaning beaches and planting trees.
a. ban harmful sonar b. gain awareness c. play a role in d. cause damage
- Doctors and teachers often in society's well-being.
a. pose a threat b. ban harmful practices
c. cause damage d. play a vital role

- #### 4 Synonyms مترادفات

188

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
bleach(ed) (v)	darken, stain, dye
breathtaking (adj)	dull, ordinary, unimpressive
dedicated (adj)	uncommitted, indifferent, careless
diverse (adj)	similar, identical
entangled (adj)	free, clear, untangled
erosion (n)	buildup, strengthening, growth
fragile (adj)	strong, sturdy, durable
haunting (adj)	forgettable, unimpressive, ordinary
hazardous (adj)	safe, secure, harmless
magnificent (adj)	awful, poor, unimpressive
non-invasive (adj)	invasive, penetrating, intrusive
struggle(d) (v)	rest, ease, relax
thrive(d) (v)	fail, decline, wither
underestimate(d) (v)	overestimate, exaggerate, over value
vivid (adj)	pale, faint, dull

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

• Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "The bright paint will in the sun." The word here is a synonym of 'fade'.
 a. darken b. bleach c. thrive
 d. struggle e. whiten
- "She was fully to helping the poor." The word here is a synonym of 'devoted'.
 a. struggled b. committed c. dedicated
 d. posed e. fragiled
- "The rope was free and easy to move." The word 'free' is an antonym of
 a. entangled b. pale c. breathtaking
 d. twisted e. dedicated
- "Years of waves caused of the coastline." The word here is a synonym of 'wearing away'.
 a. deterioration b. erosion c. weathering
 d. pose e. construction
- "The bridge is very strong and won't break easily." The word 'strong' is an antonym of
 a. breathtaking b. fragile c. durable
 d. delicate e. hazardous

6. "Her story was and stayed in my mind." The word here is a synonym of 'unforgettable'.
- a. hazardous b. haunted c. haunting
d. touching e. struggle
7. "The playground is safe for children." The word 'safe' is an antonym of
- a. hazardous b. bleached c. risky
d. underestimated e. entangled
8. "The palace lookedin the sunlight." The word here is a synonym of 'glorious'.
- a. splendid b. bleached c. magnificent
d. struggled e. dedicated
9. "The storm may a danger to ships." The word here is a synonym of 'present'.
- a. pose b. struggle c. bleach
d. cause e. vivid
10. "The plants will in the garden." The word here is a synonym of 'grow and succeed'.
- a. flourish b. bleach c. thrive
d. hazardous e. disrupt
11. "He often the skill of his classmates." The word here is an antonym of 'overestimate'.
- a. undervalue b. bleach c. underestimate
d. diverse e. exaggerate
12. "The music was" The word here is a synonym of 'full of life and energy'.
- a. fragile b. vibrant c. haunting
d. energetic e. erosion
13. "The colors of the painting were 'pale and unclear' ." The phrase is an antonym of
- a. dedicated b. vivid c. brilliant
d. entangled e. hazardous

6 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a colorful underwater city	مَدِينَةٌ مُلَوَّنَةٌ تَحْتَ الْمَاءِ	every little action makes a difference	كُلُّ تَصَرُّفٍ صَغِيرٍ يُحْدِثُ فَرْقًا
a matter of time	مَسْأَلَةٌ وَقْتٍ		
a stitch in time saves nine	الْوَقَايَةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ الْجُلَاغِ	in contrast	عَلَى التَّقْيُضِ
a thing of the past	شَيْءٌ مِنَ الْمَاضِي	in real life	فِي الْحَيَاةِ الْوَاقِعِيَّةِ
as the saying goes	كَمَا يَقُولُ الْمَثَلُ	in the context of	فِي سِيَاقِ
before it's too late	قَبْلَ فَوَاتِ الْأَوَانِ	protect for future generations	يُخَمِّي لِلْأَجْيَالِ الْقَادِمَةِ
connected to everything	مُرْتَبِطٌ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ		

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

deal with	يَتَعَامَلُ مَعَ	pass on	يَنْقُلُ
engage in	يُشَارِكُ فِي	protect from	يُخَمِّي مِنْ
focus on	يَرْكُزُ عَلَى	result in	يُؤَدِّي إِلَى
look after	يرعى - يعتنى بـ		

Mini Test 5

5

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The coral reef is often called because of its beauty and life.
a. a matter of time b. a colorful underwater city
c. a thing of the past d. before it's too late
2. Plastic pollution will be gone forever – it will become
a. a thing of the past b. as the saying goes
c. connected to everything d. a stitch in time saves nine
3. We must protect whales
a. in the context of winning b. before it's too late
c. a colorful underwater city d. a matter of time
4. It is certain that coral reefs will recover; it's only
a. a matter of time b. the gentle giants
c. a stitch in time saves nine d. connected to everything
5. "Act now to avoid bigger problems later." This gives the meaning of ".....".
a. The gentle giants b. Before it's too late
c. A stitch in time saves nine d. In real life
6. In the ocean, every creature is
a. a thing of the past b. a matter of time
c. before it's too late d. connected to everything
7. The elderly should pass important traditions to the next generation.
a. in b. at c. on d. for
8. Students are encouraged to engage community service projects.
a. on b. in c. at d. for
9. Rodayna needs to focus her studies before the exams.
a. in b. at c. on d. for
10. Too much pollution can result serious environmental problems.
a. of b. in c. at d. on

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

alive, live, lively

- **alive (adj):** living, not dead. Usually used after a verb like be.

حَتَّى: تُسْتَعْمَد لوصف كائن أو إنسان ما زال على قيد الحياة ولا تأتي قبل الاسم.

- The injured bird is still **alive**.

- **live (adj):** happening right now; also used before a noun to mean “living.”

مُبَاشِر/حَيٍّ: تُسْتَخْدَم لوصف حدث يجري الآن (بث مباشر) أو قبل اسم للدلالة على أَنَّ الشيء حَيٌّ.

- We are watching a **live** football match.

- **lively (adj):** full of energy and activity.

مَفْعَمٌ بِالْحَيَوِيَّةِ: تُسْتَخْدَمُ لوصف شخص أو مكان مليء بالنشاط والحركة.

- The children were **lively** during the festival.

brehtaking – breathless

- **brehtaking (adj):** extremely beautiful or amazing, making you feel surprised or in awe.
خاطف يَلْتَفَاس: يُسْتخدَم لوصف منظر أو تجربة رائعة جدًا تجعل الشخص مندهشًا.
- The view from the mountain was **brehtaking**.
- **breathless = out of breath (adj):** unable to breathe easily, often because of excitement, fear, or physical effort.
لاهِث: يُسْتخدَم لوصف حالة انقطاع النفس أو صعوبة التنفس بسبب مجهود أو شعور قوي.
- She was **breathless** after running up the stairs.

colored – colorful

- **colored (adj):** having a particular color or painted in a certain color.
مصبوغ / ملُون: يُشير إلى وجود لون مُعيّن على الشيء عن طريق التلوين أو الصباغة.
- He wore a **colored** shirt.
- **colorful (adj):** having many bright and different colors; also used to describe something interesting or exciting.
ملُون / زاو: يُسْتخدَم لوصف أشياء ذات ألوان كثيرة ومشرقة، أو تصف شيئًا شيقًا أو مثيرًا.
- The garden is full of **colorful** flowers.

fragile – weak

- **fragile (adj):** easily broken or damaged; delicate.
هش: يُسْتخدَم لوصف شيء يمكن أن يتلف بسهولة.
- This vase is very **fragile**.
- **weak (adj):** not physically strong; lacking power or ability.
ضعيف: يُسْتخدَم لوصف قلة القوة الجسدية أو المعنوية.
- After the illness, he felt **weak**.

haunting – hunted

- **haunting (adj):** staying in your mind because it is beautiful or sad.
مؤثر: يُسْتخدَم لوصف ذكرى أو لحن أو منظر يبقى في الذاكرة.
- The song has a **haunting** melody.
- **hunted (adj):** chased or looked for by someone, often to be captured or killed.
مُطارَد: يُسْتخدَم لوصف شخص أو حيوان يتم ملاحقته.
- The deer was **hunted** by wolves.

known for – known as – known to

- **known for (phrase):** famous because of a particular quality or achievement.
مَعْرُوف بـ: يُسْتخدَم عند ذكر سبب شهرة الشخص أو الشيء.
- Egypt is **known for** its Pyramids.
- **known as (phrase):** having a particular name or role.
مَعْرُوف كـ: يُسْتخدَم لتحديد الاسم أو الوظيفة.
- He is **known as** the best player in the team.
- **known to (phrase):** familiar to someone.
مَعْرُوف لـ/عند: يُسْتخدَم للتعبير عن شيء مألوف لشخص ما.
- This fact is **known to** scientists.

pose - pause

- **pose (v):** to create or present (a problem, danger, or question); also to position oneself for a photo.
يُشكّل / يطرح: يُستخدم لوصف خطر أو تحدٍ أو سؤال، أو عند الوقوف لالتقاط صورة.
- Smoking can **pose** a health risk.
- **pause (v):** to stop doing something for a short time.
يَتَوَقَّف لِلْحَظَّة: للتوقف المؤقت قبل الاستمرار.
- He **paused** before answering the question.

vivid - vibrant

- **vivid (adj):** very clear, bright, or detailed.
زاهٍ: يُستخدم لوصف لون أو صورة أو وصف دقيق وواضح.
- I have a **vivid** memory of my first day at school.
- **vibrant (adj):** full of life, energy, and strong colours.
مفعم بالحياة: يُستخدم لوصف مكان أو شخصية مليئة بالنشاط أو الألوان القوية.
- The city is **vibrant** with culture and art.

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "The patient is still after the operation.
a. live b. lively c. alive d. lives
2. This is a/an concert broadcast. That means it is directly on TV.
a. lively b. live c. alive d. livable
3. The little boy is so and full of energy.
a. alive b. live c. livable d. lively
4. The view from the mountain was truly
a. breathtaking b. breathless c. breathing d. breathed
5. After running for ten minutes, he felt
a. breathtaking b. breathed c. breathing d. breathless
6. This sheet of paper is blue.
a. colored b. colorful c. coloring d. colors
7. The garden was with flowers.
a. colorful b. colored c. coloring d. color
8. Glass is, so handle it carefully.
a. weak b. week c. fragile d. frail
9. He is too to carry the heavy bag.
a. fragile b. weak c. frail d. weary
10. This problem a serious danger to the project.
a. poses b. pauses c. post d. pausing

III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Text

• on Lesson 1 SB page 56

Coral Reefs



Beneath the surface of the warm, **crystal-clear**⁽¹⁾ ocean lies a **breathtaking**⁽²⁾, world **known as**⁽³⁾ the **coral reef**⁽⁴⁾. Often called a “colorful underwater city,” the reef is home to thousands of marine species, from **graceful**⁽⁵⁾ sea turtles to tiny, brightly-colored fish.

These ecosystems are incredibly **diverse**⁽⁶⁾ and provide essential shelter, food, and protection for ocean life.

Coral reefs grow slowly over thousands of years, but they are surprisingly **fragile**⁽⁷⁾. Pollution, climate change, and **destructive**⁽⁸⁾ fishing practices **pose**⁽⁹⁾ serious threats to these natural wonders. When conditions are poor, corals bleach, losing their **vivid**⁽¹⁰⁾ colors, and becoming **lifeless**⁽¹¹⁾. In contrast, a healthy reef is alive with **motion**⁽¹²⁾ and brilliant colors.

Marine biologists⁽¹³⁾ work **tirelessly**⁽¹⁴⁾ to protect coral reefs. Their efforts include educating communities and promoting eco-friendly tourism. As the saying goes, “a stitch in time saves nine” – acting early can prevent **long-term**⁽¹⁵⁾ damage. We must act now, before the reefs become a thing of the past.

Some people may **underestimate**⁽¹⁶⁾ the importance of coral reefs, but they are **priceless**⁽¹⁷⁾. They not only support marine life, but also protect coastal areas from storms and **erosion**⁽¹⁸⁾.

With **renewed effort**⁽¹⁹⁾ and **widespread awareness**⁽²⁰⁾, we can help these underwater cities recover and **thrive**⁽²¹⁾ again. Every little action makes a difference – because in the ocean, everything is connected.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

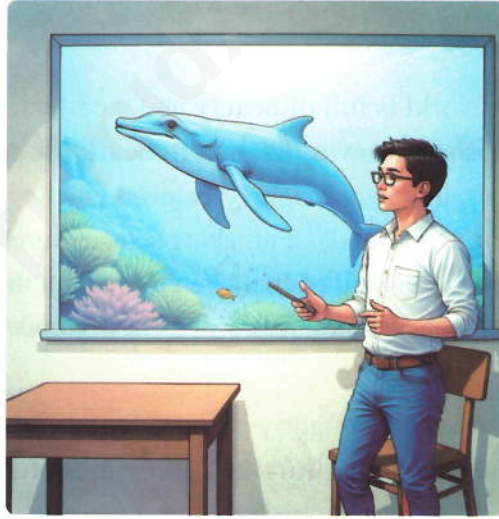
- (1) صاف كالبلور
- (2) يخطف الأنفاس
- (3) معروف بـ
- (4) الشعاب المرجانية
- (5) رشيق
- (6) متنوع
- (7) هئ / سهل الكسر
- (8) مدمر
- (9) يشكل
- (10) زاهية
- (11) بلا حياة
- (12) حركة
- (13) علماء أحياء بحرية
- (14) بلا ملل / تعب
- (15) طويل المدى
- (16) يقلل من شأن
- (17) لا يقدر بثمن
- (18) التاكل
- (19) مجهود متجدد
- (20) وعى منتشر
- (21) يزدهر

2 Listening Text

on Lesson 2 SB page 58

Saving the Whales

“Whales are some of the ocean’s most **grand**⁽¹⁾ creatures, yet today, many species face critical threats. These gentle giants, known for their **haunting**⁽²⁾ songs and massive size, are struggling against human-made dangers. Noisy ship traffic **disrupts**⁽³⁾ their communication, while deadly fishing nets trap them **accidentally**⁽⁴⁾. Pollution makes their **migratory**⁽⁵⁾ journeys even more **hazardous**⁽⁶⁾.



(1) عظيمة / كبيرة

(2) مؤثرة

(3) يشوش على - يقطع

(4) عن طريق الخطأ

(5) مهاجر / متنقل

(6) خطيرة

(7) مخلصون

(8) غير تدخل - بعيد

(9) طائرات مسيرة

(10) إزعاج / اضطراب

(11) أشد صرامة

(12) يحظر

(13) السونار

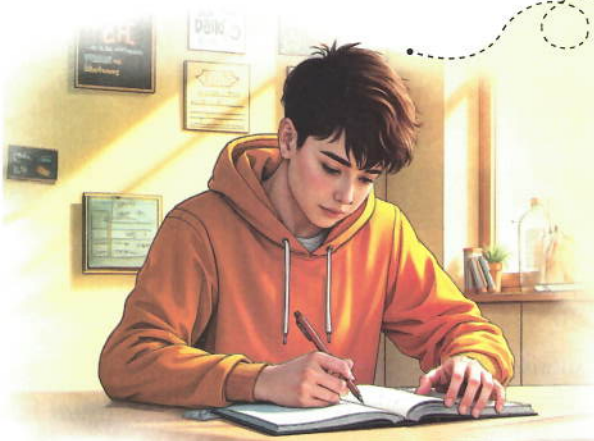
(14) متشابكين - عالقين

(15) يحافظ على

(16) بهم

But there’s hope! **Dedicated**⁽⁷⁾ scientists are working tirelessly to protect them. Using **non-invasive**⁽⁸⁾ **drones**⁽⁹⁾, they track whale movements without **disturbance**⁽¹⁰⁾. **Stricter**⁽¹¹⁾ laws now **ban**⁽¹²⁾ harmful **sonar**⁽¹³⁾ in protected areas, and conservation groups rescue **entangled**⁽¹⁴⁾ whales. Even small actions—like reducing plastic waste—help **preserve**⁽¹⁵⁾ their fragile habitats.

Why does this **matter**⁽¹⁶⁾? Whales play a vital role in our ecosystem. Their survival ensures healthier oceans for all. So next time you see a news story about these magnificent animals, remember: their future depends on us.”



احرص على اقتناء

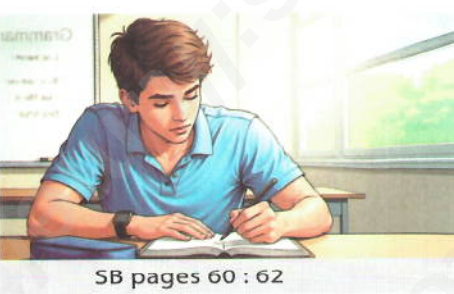
كتاب EL-MOASSER

فى اللغة الإنجليزية

للف 3 الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الثانى

امنح نفسك لمن يستحق



SB pages 60 : 62

PART TWO

Lesson

3

► The Underwater World

I LISTENING

• on Lesson 3 SB page 60

The underwater world is full of beauty and wonders. It's a **fascinating**⁽¹⁾ and **little-known place**⁽²⁾. **Beneath the surface**⁽³⁾ of the deep-blue oceans, there are **brightly-colored corals**⁽⁴⁾, **strange-looking plants**⁽⁵⁾, and thousands of amazing sea creatures. Scientists emphasize that the ocean is full of life, even more than the land we live on. Every **deep-sea journey**⁽⁶⁾ shows us new wonders from this hidden world.

In warm **tropical seas**⁽⁷⁾, brightly-colored fish swim through coral reefs, while **slow-moving turtles**⁽⁸⁾ **glide gracefully**⁽⁹⁾ through the water. Dolphins use **high-pitched sounds**⁽¹⁰⁾ to talk to one another, and whales sing **long-distance songs**⁽¹¹⁾ that can travel for miles. Deeper in the ocean, the water becomes **ice-cold**⁽¹²⁾ and **really-dark**⁽¹³⁾. Unusual creatures survive there, some with **light-producing**⁽¹⁴⁾ bodies that help them find food.

Sadly, the underwater world faces many **human-made**⁽¹⁵⁾ problems. **Plastic-filled waters**⁽¹⁶⁾, **overfishing**⁽¹⁷⁾, and **fast-rising temperatures**⁽¹⁸⁾ damage marine life. Coral reefs are dying, and sea animals are losing their safe spaces. To protect this fragile but beautiful environment, countries build protected marine areas, scientists study endangered species, and people are encouraged to use **eco-friendly habits**⁽¹⁹⁾ like recycling. Working together, we can keep the underwater world safe for future generations.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) ساحر / فائن
- (2) مكان غير معروف
- (3) تحت السطح
- (4) شعاب مرجانية زاهية الألوان
- (5) نباتات غريبة الشكل
- (6) رحلة في البحر العميق
- (7) البحار الاستوائية
- (8) سلاحف بطيئة الحركة
- (9) يتحرك بسلاسة ورشاقة
- (10) أصوات حادة
- (11) أغاني للمسافات الطويلة
- (12) بارد جدًا (كالجليد)
- (13) مظلم تمامًا
- (14) منتج للضوء
- (15) من صنع الإنسان
- (16) مياه ملينة بالبلاستيك
- (17) الصيد الجائر
- (18) درجات حرارة متزايدة
- (19) عادات صديقة للبيئة

II LANGUAGE

Compound Adjectives

الصفات المركبة

What is a compound adjective? ما هي الصفة المركبة؟

- It is an adjective that has two or more words.

- هي صفة تتكون من كلمتين أو أكثر، لاحظ الصفات المركبة في الأمثلة التالية:

- Mohammed Salah is a **well-known** footballer. - Omar is a **never-to-be-forgotten** leader.

فيما يلي شرح مُبَسَّط للصفات المُركَّبة من خلال تقسيمها إلى أربع تصنيفات رئيسية:

Compound Adjectives

1

Starting with numbers

صفات مركبة تبدأ برقم

2

Starting with adjectives

صفات مركبة تبدأ بصفة

3

Starting with adverbs

صفات مركبة تبدأ بظرف

4

Starting with a noun

صفات مركبة تبدأ باسم

1

Compound adjectives with numbers

الصفات المُركَّبة مع الأرقام

١ استخدم (رقم و بعده اسم مفرد ثم صفة) و بينهم (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

- My son is a **twelve-year-old** child.
- My house is in a **ten-metre-wide** street.

٢ استخدم (رقم و بعده اسم مفرد) و بينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

- Mr Omar is an expert on **twentieth-century** history.
- We're going on a **ten-day** trip. - It's a **four-hour** journey.

٣ استخدم (رقم و بعده اسم جمع) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها، وفي هذه الحالة ينتهي الاسم الجمع بـ (s') :

- My work is **two hours' drive** from here.

وتستخدم هذه الصيغة غالبا مع الكلمات التي تدل علي مسافة وتستخدم كأسماء وأفعال مثل :

(drive - walk - swim - fly - ride...)

- We have **three hours' walk** every weekend.

في هذه الحالة يجب مراعاة ألا يسبق هذا النوع من الصفات المركبة (a / an) :

- My work is a **two hours' drive** from here. ❌
- My work is **two hours' drive** from here. ✅

٤ في حالة وجود كلمة **time** نستخدم (s') في حالة المفرد، و (s') في حالة الجمع :

- She'll be back in a **week's time**.
- In **two weeks' time**, I am traveling to Spain.

2

Compound adjectives with adjectives

الصفات المُركَّبة التي تبدأ بـ (صفة)

هناك ثلاثة أنواع رئيسية من الصفات المُركَّبة التي تبدأ بصفة وهي:

Compound Adjectives Starting with an Adjective

1

adj. + p.p.

2

adj. + -ing

3

adj. + noun

1 adj. صفة + p.p.

- بعض الصفات المركبة الهامة التي تتكون من (صفة + التصريف الثالث للفعل) :

absent-minded	تشارد الذهن / كثير النسيان	middle-aged	في منتصف العمر
big-eared	كبير الأذنين	narrow-minded	ضيق الأفق / مُنغلق
clear-cut	بَيِّن / مُخَدَّد، مُعَيَّن / وَاضِح	old-fashioned	قديم / عفا عليه الزمن
deep-seated	مُتَأَصِّل / مُتَجَدِّر	open-minded	واسع الأفق / مُنفتح
green-eyed	أخضر العينين	quick-witted	سريع البديهة
high-spirited	ذو معنويات مرتفعة	red-handed	مُذْنِب
kind-hearted	طيب القلب	short-haired	قصير الشعر
long-awaited	طال انتظاره	short-sighted	لديه قُصْر نظر
long-haired	طويل الشعر	strong-willed	قوي الإرادة
long-nosed	طويل الأنف	tight-fisted	بخيل
long-sighted	لديه طول نظر		

- A **strong-willed** student will surely achieve their goal.
- I have a **deep-seated** love for my parents.
- He wants to marry that **green-eyed** girl.
- I was very sad when my **kind-hearted** grandfather died.

2 adj. صفة + -ing

- بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (صفة + صيغة اسم الفعل)

good-looking	جذاب / حسن المظهر	slow-moving	بطيء الحركة
long-lasting	يدوم لفترة طويلة	far-reaching	بعيد المدى
easy-going	مَرِين		

- Leen is a **good-looking** student.
- This **long-lasting** perfume is very expensive.
- This law will have **far-reaching** effect on the economy.

3 adj. صفة + noun

- بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (صفة + اسم)

last-minute	في اللحظة الأخيرة	second-hand	مُسْتَعْمَل
full-length	بالطول الكامل		

- I had to make **last-minute** changes to my article.
- He made his last **full-length** film in 2002.

3 Compound adjectives with adverbs (ظرف) الصفات المُركَّبة التي تبدأ بـ (ظرف)

هناك نوعان رئيسيان من الصفات المُركَّبة التي تبدأ بظرف وهي :

Compound Adjectives Starting with an Adverb

1
adv. + p.p.

2
adv. + -ing

1 adv. ظرف + p.p.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (ظرف + تصريف ثالث)

brightly lit	ساطع الإضاءة	badly written	مكتوب بشكل سيء
highly respected	يحظى باحترام كبير	well-educated	مُتعلَّم جيّدًا
densely populated	كثيف السكّان	well-known	معروف / مشهور
well-balanced	جيد التوازن - مُتّزن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	widely recognized	معروف على نطاق واسع
well-behaved	حَسَن السلوك	widely spoken	يتم التحدّث بها على نطاق واسع
well-paid	ذو أجر مرتفع	well-informed	فُطِّلِع

- Mr Ayman is a **well-balanced** manager.
- I live in a **brightly lit** street.
- This is a **well-informed** journalist.

- Arabic is a **widely spoken** language.
- Mr Nasser is a **highly respected** teacher.

2 adv. ظرف + -ing

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (ظرف + صيغة اسم الفعل)

never-ending	دائم	ever-lasting	دائم
forward-thinking	سابق في التفكير/سابق لعصره		

- I don't like his **never-ending** inquiries.

- Mrs Maha has an **ever-lasting** smile.

4 Compound adjectives with nouns (اسم) الصفات المُركَّبة التي تبدأ بـ (اسم)

هناك أربعة أنواع رئيسية من الصفات المُركَّبة التي تبدأ باسم وهي:

Compound Adjectives Starting with a noun

1
noun + p.p.

2
noun + -ing

3
noun + adj.

4
noun + noun

1 noun اسم + p.p.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (اسم + التصريف الثالث)

sun-baked	مُجفّف بالشمس	left-handed	أعسر/يستخدم اليد اليسرى
child-wanted	محبوب من الأطفال	right-handed	يستخدم اليد اليمينية
middle-aged	في منتصف العُمر	heart-broken	حزين/منفطر القلب

- No plant will grow in such a **sun-baked** ground.
- He buys the most **child-wanted** toys for his children.
- My mother is a **middle-aged** woman.

2 noun + -ing

- بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (اسم + صيغة اسم الفعل)

record-breaking	مُحطَّم الرقم القياسي	English-speaking	مُتَحَدِّث باللغة الإنجليزية
mouth-watering	مُسِيل للعاب/ شهّي /لذيذ	time-saving	مُوفِّر للوقت
thought-provoking	مثير للتفكير	labour-saving	مُوفِّر للعمالة

- Omar ran at a **record-breaking** speed.
- It was a **thought-provoking** quiz.
- The table was covered with **mouth-watering** dishes.
- To achieve your tasks quickly, follow these **time-saving** techniques.

3 noun + adjective

- بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (اسم + صفة)

ice-cold	في برودة الثلج	brand-new	جديد تمامًا
world-famous	ذو شهرة عالمية	self-reliant	مُعْتَمِد على نفسه
fat-free	خالي من الدهون	self-centered	أناني
smoke-free	ممنوع التدخين فيه		

- To avoid gaining weight, I prefer **fat-free** food.
- Mohamed Salah is a **world-famous** footballer.
- I can't live in the **ice-cold** weather of Canada.

4 noun + noun

egg-box	صندوق بيض	tea-pot	براد شاي
hair-cream	كريم شعر	eye-drop	قطرة العين

- I had to look for a **part-time** job.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) والتي تُسمَّى (hyphen) لتفصل بين أجزاء الصفة المُركَّبة فقط إذا كانت هذه الصفة المُركَّبة قبل الاسم الموصوف، أما إذا لم يأت الاسم الموصوف بعدها فلا نستخدم (-):

- Mohammed Salah is a **well-known** footballer.
- As a footballer, Mohammed Salah is **well known**.

٢ لا تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الظرف (very) والصفة التي تليه حتى وإن جاء بعدهما الاسم الموصوف:

- Ahmed is a **very-clever** student. ❌
- Ahmed is a **very clever** student. ✅

٣ بعض الصفات المُركَّبة لها أكثر من صيغة مقارنة وتفضيل، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good-looking	better-looking OR more good-looking	best-looking OR most good-looking
well-known	better-known OR more well-known	best-known OR most well-known

٤ تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين أجزاء الصفة المُركَّبة التي تتكون من أكثر من كلمتين عندما تسبق الاسم

الموصوف:

- Sama is a **ten year old** girl. ❌

- Sama is **ten-year-old**. ❌

- Sama is a **ten-year-old** girl. ✔️

- Sama is **ten years old**. ✔️

General Exercises On Language

● Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

- Cairo's streets are always crowded. It is one of the most capitals in the world.
a. densely-populated b. fat-free c. well-behaved d. ice-cold
- Mr A. Elhassan is in his fifties, so he is a man.
a. middle aged b. middle age c. middle-aged d. aged-middle
- The Aymans enjoyed a trip across the desert, watching the sunrise every morning.
a. ten days b. ten-day c. ten-days d. ten day
- The Suez Canal has a effect on international trade.
a. far reaching b. far reach c. far-reaching d. far-reaches
- Leen bought a dress that reached her ankles.
a. full length b. full-length c. length-full d. fully length
- Karim is a friend who is always ready to help others.
a. strong will b. strongly-willed c. strong-willed d. strong well
- The table was full of dishes that made everyone hungry.
a. mouth watered b. mouth watering c. mouth-watering d. mouthwatered
- This shop sells only clothes to raise money for charity.
a. secondhand b. second-hand c. second hand d. second-hands
- I can't live in this weather; it's too cold for me.
a. ice-cold b. ice-cold c. icy cold d. ice coldly
- We live in a hotel with lights shining everywhere.
a. brightly-lit b. bright-lit c. brightly light d. bright light
- A well has been dug in the desert to provide people with water.
a. twenty-metres b. twenty-metre c. twenty metres' d. twenty metre's
- Do you think French is all over Africa?
a. speaking b. speaking widely c. widely speaking d. widely spoken

13. It is a fact that being bilingual can improve some brain functions.
 a. knowing b. widely knowing c. well knows d. well-known
14. Which of the following is NOT a compound adjective?
 a. old-fashioned b. Multicultural c. Deep-seated d. Clear-cut
15. Dr Zewail is a world scientist.
 a. fame b. -fame c. famous d. -famous
16. Abdulrahman is my son.
 a. five-year-old b. five year old c. five-years-old d. five years old
17. Abdulrahman, my son, is.....
 a. five-year-old b. five year old c. five-years-old d. five years old
18. I had a five - holiday to refresh myself.
 a. day b. day's c. days d. days'
19. I had a holiday for five
 a. day b. day's c. days d. days'
20. I have a middle uncle. He is thirty-five.
 a. age b. -age c. aged d. -aged
21. When someone has a strong will, we say he or she is a person.
 a. strong-willed b. strong willed c. strong-wills d. strong will
22. When someone can't see near objects, we say he or she is long
 a. sight b. -sighted c. sighted d. sighting
23. When someone can't see near things, we say he or she is a long individual.
 a. sight b. -sighted c. sighted d. sighting
24. Mr Ashraf is a man.
 a. good-looking b. well-looking c. good-looking d. good looking
25. Mr Ashraf is
 a. good-looking b. well-looking c. good-looking d. good looking
26. Asmaa's a green girl.
 a. -eyed b. eyed c. eyes d. b&c
27. Mr Mohammed is a respected teacher.
 a. highly- b. height- c. high- d. highing-
28. As a teacher, Mr Mohammed is respected.
 a. highly b. highly- c. high d. highing

2 Special Cases

29. The new policy was introduced at the , just before the meeting ended.
 a. last minutes b. last minute c. last-minute d. last-minutes

30. The thieves were caught while trying to escape.
 a. red-handed b. red hands c. hand-red d. hand reddened
31. This is a perfume; its scent lasts all day.
 a. long lasting b. long-lasting c. lasts long d. longlasted
32. Aya is and always respects her friends' ideas.
 a. open minded b. open mind c. open-minded d. opened-minded
33. The teacher asked a question that made the students think deeply.
 a. thinking-provoke b. thought provoke
 c. provoke thought d. thought-provoking
34. Rodayna has a love for her father.
 a. deep-seated b. deep seat c. seated deep d. deepseated
35. Omar ran at a speed, breaking the national record.
 a. record break b. record-breaking c. break record d. record-broken
36. We took a journey through the mountains; it lasted four hours.
 a. four hours b. four-hours c. four-hour d. four hour
37. Ahmed bought a car directly from the factory.
 a. brand new b. brand-new c. new-brand d. new-brand
38. Yasmeen enjoys working with people who see both sides of an argument.
 a. narrow minded b. narrow mind c. open-minded d. opened mind
39. Ibrahim drove through a road during the mountain trip.
 a. snow covered b. snow-covering
 c. snow-covered d. snow covers
40. The team celebrated their victory in the national tournament.
 a. long waited b. long-waiting c. long-awaited for d. long-awaited
41. I am traveling abroad in two time.
 a. week b. weeks c. week's d. weeks'
42. It is only from here to Alexandria.
 a. a two-hour-drive b. two hours' drive
 c. a & b d. two-hour drive
43. I will join you in an time.
 a. hours b. hours' c. hour's d. hours's
44. Mr Baleigh is about the new changes; he has no objection to them.
 a. narrow-minded b. tight-fisted
 c. open-minded d. well-informed
45. She was shocked by his response to the proposal.
 a. cold-blood b. cold-blooded
 c. cold blooded d. colder-blooded

46. Sorry! I didn't answer Mr Mohammed's question because I was
 a. narrow-minding b. absent-minded c. open-minded d. red-handed
47. Don't expect him to pay for the meal. He is
 a. tight-fisted b. narrow-minded c. open-minded d. well-informed
48. To be a TV presenter, you need to be about different topics.
 a. tight-fisted b. narrow-minded c. red-handed d. well-informed
49. The report is
 a. bad-writing b. bad-written c. badly-written d. badly written
50. It is a report.
 a. bad-writing b. bad-written c. badly-written d. badly written
51. I trust this young man as he is.....looking.
 a. friendly b. friendly- c. friending- d. friended-
52. I trust this looking young man.
 a. friendly b. friendly- c. friending- d. friended-
53. My school tablet is
 a. updated b. up-to date c. up-to-date d. a & c

3 Check your understanding

54. Which sentence uses a compound adjective correctly before a noun?
 a. She wore a red new-dress. b. She wore a new-red dress.
 c. She wore a brand new dress. d. She wore a brand-new dress.
55. Which is correct according to the rules?
 a. Hossam is a well informed teacher. b. Hossam is a well-inform teacher.
 c. Hossam is a well-informed teacher. d. Hossam is a good-informed teacher.
56. Which sentence is correct?
 a. She is a ten years old girl. b. She is a ten-years-old girl.
 c. She is ten-year-old. d. She is a ten-year-old girl.
57. Which keeps the meaning but changes the form correctly?
 a. Mohammed Salah is a well-known footballer.
 b. Mohammed Salah is well known as a footballer.
 c. a & b
 d. Mohammed Salah is well knowing.
58. Which sentence uses a compound comparative form correctly?
 a. Zein is more better-looking than his brother.
 b. Zein is better-looking than his brother.
 c. Zein is better-looker than his brother.
 d. Zein is best-looking than his brother.

59. Choose the correct hyphenation:

- a. This is a world famous-scientist.
- b. This is a-worldfamous scientist.
- c. This is a world - famous scientist.
- d. This is a world-famous-scientist.

60. Which is the most accurate choice?

- a. Noha is ten-years-old.
- b. Noha is ten years old.
- c. Noha is ten-year-old.
- d. Noha is a ten-years-old girl.

61. "Rahma is fifteen years old." This means that

- a. Rahma is fifteen year old.
- b. Rahma is fifteen-year-old.
- c. Rahma is fifteen-years- old.
- d. Rahma is a fifteen-year-old girl.

62. "No other Egyptian footballer is as well-known as Mohammed Salah." This means that

- a. Mohammed Salah is more well-known than other Egyptian players.
- b. Mohammed Salah is better-known than other Egyptian players.
- c. a & b
- d. Mohammed Salah is not as well-known as other Egyptian players.

63. "This dish makes me feel I want to eat it." This means that

- a. this dish is mouth-watered.
- b. this dish is mouth-watered.
- c. this dish is water mouthed.
- d. this is a mouth-watering dish.

64. Which of the following is correctly structured?

- a. Ibrahim is left hand.
- b. Ibrahim is hand lefted.
- c. Ibrahim is a left-handed student.
- d. Ibrahim is hand-lefted student.

Stop Here !

تدريب تلقائي على القواعد اللغوية

• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Ahmed passed an assignment in the last minute. (last-minute)
2. He finished a marathon that was forty-two kilometers. (forty-two-kilometre)
3. I ate a sandwich that was prepared at home. (home-prepared)
4. I have a meeting that lasts for two hours. (thirty-minute)
5. I use a car that runs on electricity. (electric-powered)
6. Mr Omar wrote a story that breaks readers' hearts. (heart-breaking)
7. Mom made a cake with the flavour of chocolate. (chocolate-flavoured)
8. Rodayna enjoyed a pizza made in Italy. (Italy-made)
9. Sama, my daughter, is ten years old. (ten-year-old)
10. She wore high heels that were ten centimeters tall. (ten-centimetre)
11. The farmer lived in a house made of wood. (wood-built)
12. The motorbike is a vehicle that has two wheels. (wheeled)
13. The vase that the artist made has a perfect shape. (perfectly-shaped)

14. They watched a video of full length.
15. This is a bag that weighs three kilograms.
16. We have a building with five floors.

(full-length)
(three-kilo)
(five-storey)

A bit advanced

17. He gave a performance that everyone praised high.
18. He gave an answer that showed he had a quick wit.
19. Mom made a meal that made us hungry and eager to eat.
20. She lives in an area that has dense population.
21. They had a talk that was marked by open mindedness.
22. Walid gave a speech in which he chose his words carefully.
23. We entered a wedding hall that was bright with light.
24. We took a decision that was far to reach.

(highly)
(witted)
(mouth-watering)
(populated)
(open-minded)
(carefully-chosen)
(lit)
(reaching)

☆ احرص على اقضاء ☆



☆ في اللغة الإنجليزية
للصف الثالث الثانوي
(الجزء الثاني)
الفصل الدراسي الثاني





SB pages 63 : 67

PART THREE

Lessons

4 & 5

► Into the Depth of
the Ocean
► Ocean Legends and
Storytelling

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

awe-inspiring (adj)	مثير للإعجاب	hatch(ed) (v)	يفقس
coordinated (adj)	منسّق - متناغم	in deep water	في ورطة
detect(ed) (v)	يكتشف	literally (adv)	حرفيًا
figuratively (adv)	مجازيًا	mind-blowing (adj)	مذهل - مذهل
glowing (adj)	متوهج - براق	turn a blind eye	يتجاهل
glow-producing (adj)	منتج للضوء		

2 Important Vocabulary

afford(ed) (v)	يستطيع تحمّل	reputation (n)	سمعة
attract(ed) (v)	يجذب	resolution (n)	حل - تباين
calm(ed) (v-adj-n)	يهدئ - هادئ - هدوء	respectful (adj)	مُحترم
clear (adj)	واضح	roaring (adj)	صاخب - عالي
conflict (n)	صراع	sadly (adv)	من المؤسف
connection (n)	إتصال - تواصل - ارتباط	sail(ed) (v-n)	يبحر - يسافر
crash(ed) (v-n)	يرتطم - ارتطام	secret (n-adj)	سري - سري
darkness (n)	ظلام	sense (n)	حاسة
endangered (adj)	مُهدّد بالانقراض - مُعرّض للخطر	silver (n-adj)	الفضة - فضي
fade(d) (v)	يتلاشى / يبهت	social (adj)	إجتماعي
fast-changing	سريع التغيّر	soft (adj)	ناعم
figure (n)	شخصية - رقم	species (n)	أنواع
gather(ed) (v)	يتجمّع	stare(d) (v)	يُحدّق - يحدّق النظر
hard-to-survive	صعب البقاء	storms (n)	غواصف
leap - leapt (v-n)	يقفز - قفزة	stormy (adj)	عاصف
legend (n)	أسطورة	strange (adj)	غريب
life-saving (adj)	مُنقذ للحياة	tension (n)	توتر
long-distance (adj)	بعيد المسافة	thunder (n)	رعد
organ (n)	عضو	tiny (adj)	صغير جدًا
overfishing (n)	الصيد الجائر	turtles (n)	سلاحف
coral polyps	زوائد مرجانية	unable (adj)	عاجز
powerful (adj)	قويّ - ذو نفوذ	unbelievable (adj)	غير مُصدق
prey (n)	فريسة	value(d) (n-v)	قيمة - يُقيم - يُثمن
quotation marks	علامات الاقتباس	variety (n)	تنوع - تعددية
rainforests (n)	غابات مطيرة	whisper(ed) (v)	يهمس
refer(red) (v)	يشير	wise (adj)	حكيم

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The mountains looked in the morning light.
a. glow-produced b. hard-to-survive c. awe-inspiring d. wise
2. The performers' moves in the show were perfectly
a. mind-blowing b. coordinated c. endangered d. life-saving
3. The police could the stolen car in minutes.
a. fade b. hatch c. afford d. detect
4. Karim's joke was meant and not seriously.
a. literally b. figuratively c. sadly d. in deep water
5. Some people to problems they see around them.
a. turn a blind eye b. attract c. gather d. stare
6. Jellyfish are a type of creatures in the deep sea.
a. awe-inspired b. glow-producing c. easy-to-catch d. wise
7. The space view was so that we couldn't stop looking.
a. coordinator b. life-saving c. endangered d. mind-blowing
8. The chicks will from eggs in three weeks.
a. detect b. fade c. afford d. hatch
9. The heart is an important in the body.
a. member b. sense c. organ d. species
10. We are because of this huge debt.
a. figuratively b. in deep water c. sadly d. literally
11. The story is true; it really happened.
a. literally b. figuratively c. sadly d. in deep water

2 Important Vocabulary

12. The news caused in the meeting room.
a. variety b. value c. tension d. reputation
13. Lions usually hunt their at night.
a. prey b. overfishing c. figure d. conflict
14. Technology is changing in this world.
a. strange b. long-distance c. respectful d. fast-changing
15. The bug is a very insect. It can't be noticed easily.
a. roaring b. powerful c. tiny d. social
16. The story came to a happy at the end.
a. resolution b. sense c. species d. organ
17. Bright flowers bees in spring.
a. whisper b. hatch c. attract d. stare

18. Education has great in our lives.
a. tension b. value c. variety d. danger
19. has reduced the number of fish in the sea.
a. Prey b. Conflict c. Figure d. Overfishing
20. Ahmed took part in a race for charity.
a. fast-changing b. long-distance c. respectful d. strange
21. The storm was so that it blew trees down.
a. powerful b. tiny c. roaring d. social
22. Adam has a good of humour. We never stop laughing in his company.
a. resolution b. sense c. species d. organ
23. The desert is a place for small plants.
a. awe-inspiring b. glow-producing c. hard-to-survive d. wise
24. Tigers are animals in many countries.
a. coordinated b. mind-blowing c. life-saving d. endangered
25. We cannot another delay in the project.
a. afford b. hatch c. glow d. fade
26. Fatma got low marks.
a. figuratively b. literally c. sadly d. in deep water
27. The children around the fire to stay warm.
a. turn a blind eye b. gather c. attract d. stare
28. This shop offers a wide of clothes for all ages and sizes.
a. variety b. value c. tension d. reputation
29. The sales show a big increase for this year.
a. preys b. storms c. figures d. conflicts
30. He is always to his teachers. They also think high of him.
a. respectful b. long-distance c. fast-changing d. strange
31. We heard the sea from the cliff.
a. tiny b. roaring c. powerful d. social
32. Many bird migrate each year.
a. resolution b. sense c. species d. organ
33. My grandfather is very in giving advice.
a. stormy b. glow-producing c. hard-to-survive d. wise
34. Quick medical help can be in accidents.
a. coordinated b. mind-blowing c. endangered d. life-saving
35. The sound began to as the train moved away.
a. fade b. hatch c. afford d. detect
36. It's rude to at strangers, especially women.
a. turn a blind eye b. attract c. stare d. gather
37. Mr Yaseen has a good for being honest.
a. tension b. value c. variety d. reputation
38. The two teams had a serious during the match.
a. prey b. conflict c. figures d. overfishing
39. We saw a animal in the forest. We have never expected to see things like that.
a. strange b. long-distance c. respectful d. fast-changing
40. Bees are insects that live in groups.
a. giant b. powerful c. roaring d. social

3 A bit Tricky

41. His explanation of quantum physics was so that even the experts paused to think.
a. glowing b. vibrant c. inspiring d. mind-blowing
42. In the middle of the meeting, she managed to a warning that only I could hear.
a. valued b. detect c. calm d. whisper
43. The charity received a/an support from the country's president, boosting its credibility.
a. glowing b. mind-blowing c. vibrant d. inspired
44. Over the years, I've truly the lessons my parents taught me, especially during hard times.
a. whispered b. valued c. detected d. calmed
45. Even on a rainy afternoon, the little café felt with music and lively conversation.
a. mind-blowing b. vibrant c. glowing d. inspiring
46. The new radar system can aircrafts that are invisible to the human eye.
a. whisper b. value c. detect d. calm
47. Her journey from poverty to success was and gave hope to many others.
a. mind-blowing b. glowing c. vibrant d. inspiring

II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Definitions التعريفات

awe-inspiring (adj)	مثير للإعجاب	causing a strong feeling of respect, admiration, or wonder
coordinated (adj)	مُنسَّق - متناسم	arranged or organized so that all parts work together effectively
detect(ed)(v)	يُكتَشَف	to discover or notice something, especially something that is not easy to see, hear, or smell
figuratively (adv)	مَجَازِيًا	in a way that uses words or expressions with a meaning that is different from their usual, literal meaning
glowing (adj)	مُنَوِّج - بِرَّاق	shining with a steady light; showing strong positive feeling
glow-producing (adj)	مُنَبِّج لِلضَّوْء	capable of creating or emitting light
hatch(ed) (v)	يَفْقَس	(of a young bird, fish, insect, etc.) to come out from an egg; to break out from an egg
in deep water	في ورطة	in serious trouble or difficulty
literally (adv)	حَرْفِيًّا	actually true and exactly as stated; without exaggeration or metaphor
mind-blowing (adj)	مُذهِّش - مُذهِّل	extremely impressive, exciting, or shocking
turn a blind eye	يَتَجَاهَل	to deliberately ignore something that you know should be noticed or dealt with

Mini Test 1 Definitions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Something that causes great admiration and respect can be described as
a. coordinated b. glow-producing
c. awe-inspiring d. mind-blowing
2. To be in serious difficulty or trouble means you are
a. in deep water b. literally c. glowing d. figuratively
3. To is to ignore something you know is wrong.
a. turn a blind eye b. hatch c. detect d. glow
4. means arranged in a way that all parts work well together.
a. Awe-inspiring b. Coordinated c. Glow-producing d. Mind-blowing
5. means without exaggeration, exactly as stated.
a. Figuratively b. Glowing c. In deep water d. Literally
6. When a young bird comes out of its egg, we say it
a. detects b. hatches c. glows d. turns a blind eye
7. If something is able to emit light, we can call it
a. awe-inspiring b. coordinated c. glow-producing d. mind-blowing
8. To is to discover or notice something, especially that is not easy to find.
a. turn a blind eye b. glow c. detect d. hatch
9. means extremely exciting, impressive, or shocking.
a. Mind-blowing b. Coordinated c. Awe-inspiring d. Glow-producing
10. means in a non-literal, symbolic sense.
a. Glowing b. Figuratively c. Literally d. In deep water
11. To shine steadily with light is to
a. hatch b. turn a blind eye c. detect d. glow

Derivatives

المشتقات

awe-inspiring

awe-inspiring (adj)	يثير الإعجاب	- The view of the sunset is awe-inspiring .
awe-inspiringly (adv)	بشئ كل يُلهِم الإعجاب	- Messi shot the ball awe-inspiringly into the goal.
awe (n)	إعجاب ممزوج بالمهابة	- She looked at the minister in awe .
inspire		
inspire (v)	يُلهِم	- His story inspires young people.
inspiring (adj)	مُلهِم	- The teacher gave an inspiring speech.
inspired (adj)	مُلهَم	- The team felt inspired after the win.
inspiration (n)	إلهام	- Nature is a great source of inspiration .
inspirational (adj)	مُلهِم	- Her journey is truly inspirational .
inspirationally (adv)	بشئ كل يُلهِم	- He spoke inspirationally about the project.

coordinated		
coordinate (v)	يُنَسِّق	- Mr Samuel coordinates the school trip.
coordinated (adj)	مُنَسَّق	- The team worked in a coordinated way.
coordination (n)	تَنَاسُّق / تَنَسِيق	- Coordination is needed in team sports.
coordinator (n)	مُنَسِّق	- The event coordinator planned it well.
detect		
detect (v)	يُكْتَشِف	- A doctor can detect signs of illness early.
detection (n)	اِكْتِشَاف	- Early detection of disease can save lives.
detector (n)	جهاز كَشَف	- The smoke detector rang loudly.
detectable (adj)	قابل للاكتشاف	- The fault was barely detectable .
undetectable (adj)	غير قابل للاكتشاف	- The change is undetectable to the eye.
figuratively		
figurative (adj)	مَجَازِي	- In a figurative sense, he was the "heart" of the team.
figuratively (adv)	بمَنَاحِل مَجَازِي	- Sama figuratively lit up the room with her smile.
glow		
glow (v)	يَتَوَهَّج	- Cats' eyes glow at night.
glowing (adj)	مُتَوَهَّج	- She gave a glowing report about the project.
glow (n)	تَوَهُّج - وَهَج	- The glow of the sunset filled the sky.
glowingly (adv)	بتألُق	- He spoke glowingly of his friends.
glow-producing (adj)	مُنِيج لِلضَّوء	- Glow-producing animals live deep in the sea.
hatch		
hatch (v)	يَفْقِس	- The chicks will hatch in three weeks.
hatched (v/adj)	مُفَرَّغ	- Hatched eggs are empty.
hatching (n)	فَقْس	- The hatching of the baby turtles took hours.
hatchery (n)	مَفَرَّغَة - معمل تفريغ	- The chick hatchery produces thousands of chicks a day.
literally		
literal (adj)	حَرْفِي	- The literal meaning of the word is "light".
literally (adv)	حَرْفِيًّا	- The room was literally freezing cold.
mind-blowing		
mind-blowing (adj)	مُذهِب	- The magic show was mind-blowing .
mind-blowingly (adv)	بمَنَاحِل مُذهِب	- The view from the top was mind-blowingly beautiful.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The mountain view was so that everyone took photos.

- a. awe-inspiring b. awe-inspiringly c. awe d. inspirational

2. Rokaya spoke about the success of her students.
a. awe b. inspiring c. awe-inspiringly d. inspiration
3. Mr Ayman's words were truly to the team.
a. awe b. inspiring c. inspiration d. awe-inspiringly
4. The event planner will the activities for the festival.
a. coordination b. coordinate c. coordinated d. coordinator
5. The rescue was quick and thanks to the trained team.
a. coordinate b. coordinator c. coordinated d. coordination
6. Good is important when playing basketball.
a. coordination b. coordinator c. coordinated d. coordinate
7. The new device can easily changes in body temperature.
a. detection b. detected c. detect d. detector
8. Early of diseases can improve chances of complete recovery.
a. detect b. detector c. detection d. detected
9. The smoke rang loudly during the fire drill.
a. detect b. detection c. detected d. detector
10. He used the words to compare Rodayna to the moon.
a. figurativeness b. figuratively c. figurative d. figure
11. The poet's style is highly and full of rich images.
a. figuratively b. figurativeness c. figurative d. figure

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

add	tension or surprise يُضِيفُ تَوْتَرًا أَوْ مَفَاجَأَةً	find	oneself in deep water يَجِدُ نَفْسَهُ فِي مَازِقٍ
attract	prey يَجْذِبُ الْفَرِيسَةَ	leap	through the waves يَقْفِزُ عَبْرَ الْأَمْوَاجِ
cause	coral bleaching يُسَبِّبُ بَيَاضَ الشَّعَابِ الْفَرْجَانِيَّةِ	set	the time and place يُخَدِّدُ الزَّمَانَ وَالْمَكَانَ
create	awareness about يُنْشِرُ الْوَعْيَ بِشَأْنِ	turn	a blind eye يَغْضُ الطَّرْفَ / يَتَجَاهَلُ
face	a hard-to-survive journey يُوَاجِهُ رَحْلَةً صَعْبَةً النُّجَاةِ	underestimate	the value يَقَلِّلُ مِنْ قِيَمَةِ

Mini Test 3 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The lantern fish uses light to prey for its food.
a. swim b. found c. build d. attract
2. Dolphins are often seen to the waves during shows at the aquarium.
a. leap through b. drive c. attract d. catch

3. Rising sea temperatures can coral bleaching and harm marine life.
 a. clean b. cause c. break d. protect
4. After hatching, baby turtles must a hard-to-survive journey to reach the sea.
 a. escape b. cross c. face d. search
5. Teachers sometimes organise events to awareness about conservation among students.
 a. delay b. create c. ignore d. hide
6. Some evil people tend to the value of cultural heritage.
 a. underestimate b. clean c. save d. move
7. The manager chose to to the ongoing conflict in the team.
 a. see b. turn a blind eye c. speak d. stop

4 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
awe-inspiring (adj) مثير للإعجاب	brehtaking, magnificent, stunning, impressive, extraordinary
coordinated (adj) مُنَسَّق - متناغم	organized, arranged, systematic, unified
detect(ed) (v) يكتشف	discover, notice, observe, identify, recognize
glowing (adj) مُتَوَهِّج - بَرَّاق	radiant, shining, luminous, brilliant, gleaming
hatch(ed) (v) يفقس	break out, come out
in deep water في ورطة	in trouble, in difficulty, in danger, in a predicament
literally (adv) حرفياً	exactly, precisely, word-for-word
mind-blowing (adj) مذهش - مذهل	astounding, amazing, incredible, phenomenal, stunning
turn a blind eye يتجاهل	ignore, overlook, disregard, pay no attention

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
awe-inspiring (adj) مثير للإعجاب	unimpressive, ordinary, dull, plain غَيْرُ مثير للإعجاب - عادي
coordinated (adj) مُنَسَّق - متناغم	disorganized, chaotic, messy, unplanned غَيْرُ مُنَظَّم - فَوْضَوِي
detect(ed) (v) يكتشف	miss, overlook, ignore, lose يَفُوت - يَتَغافل - يَتَجاهل - يَفْقِد
figuratively (adv) مجازياً	literally, factually, exactly حرفياً - واقعياً - بدقة
glowing (adj) مُتَوَهِّج - بَرَّاق	dull, dim, faded باهت - خافت
in deep water في ورطة	safe, secure, protected آمِن - مَحْمِيّ - مَصُون
mind-blowing (adj) مذهش - مذهل	boring, dull, tedious, ordinary مُمِلّ - زَيِّب - عادي
turn a blind eye يتجاهل	notice, observe, pay attention, watch closely يُلَاحِظ - يُولِي اِهْتِمَام

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

- Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "He failed to see the sign and completely it." The word is an antonym of 'detected'.
a. overlooked b. missed c. noticed
d. recognized e. found
2. "He followed the map literally as it was written." This means he followed the map
a. loosely b. exactly c. figuratively
d. precisely e. symbolically
3. "He meant his statement figuratively; it was not symbolic." The word 'figuratively' is an antonym of
a. allegorically b. literally c. figuratively
d. metaphorically e. exactly
4. "He refused to turn a blind eye to the problem." The phrase 'turn a blind eye' is an antonym of
a. ignore b. overlook c. notice
d. disregard e. pay attention
5. "Her face was glowing after hearing the happy news." The words and are synonyms of "glowing".
a. shining b. dull c. radiant
d. dark e. dim
6. "Her speech was flat and" The missing word is an antonym of 'awe-inspiring'.
a. exciting b. unimpressive c. dull
d. amazing e. stunning
7. "The ancient temple was truly to behold." The missing word is a synonym of 'awe-inspiring'.
a. dull b. breathtaking c. ordinary
d. plain e. impressive
8. "The cave was cold and glow-producing" 'Glow-producing' is an antonym of
a. bright b. luminous c. dark
d. dim e. radiant
9. "The detective managed to the hidden camera in the room." The word is a synonym of detect.
a. discover b. miss c. overlook
d. observe e. lose
10. "The event was coordinated and well planned." The word 'coordinated' is an antonym of
a. disorganized b. arranged c. messy
d. structured e. ordered
11. "The team worked in a/an way to finish on time." The missing word is a synonym of coordinated.
a. messy b. systematic c. chaotic
d. organized e. random
12. "With the gang nearby, the villagers felt in deep water" This means they didn't feel
a. secure b. worried c. safe
d. troubled e. endangered

13. is to mind-blowing as dangerous is to hazardous.

- a. Astonishing b. Amazing c. Ordinary
d. Plain e. Boring

6 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

full of secrets	مُفْتَلِيٌّ بِالْأَسْرَارِ	make it survive	يَنْجُو
glow-producing organs	أَعْضَاءٌ مُسَبِّبَةٌ لِلتَّوَهُجِ	over the moon	فِي غَايَةِ الْفَرْحِ
hard-to-survive	ضَعْفُ النِّجَاةِ	refer to ... as	يُشِيرُ إِلَى ... كَ ...
heart-stoppingly beautiful	جَمِيلٌ لِدَرْجَةِ تَوَقُّفِ الْقَلْبِ	storm slowly fade	العاصِفَةُ تَلَاشَتْ تَذْرِيجًا
in complete darkness	فِي ظَلَامٍ دَامِسٍ	the sea is angry tonight	الْبَحْرُ عَالِي الْمَوْجِ اللَّيْلَةَ
in the end	فِي النِّهَايَةِ	turn a blind eye	يَغْضُ الطَّرْفَ
life-saving	مُنْقِذٌ لِلْحَيَاةِ		

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

believe in	يُؤْمِنُ بِـ	look for	يَنْتَحِظُ عَنْ
care for	يَعْتَنِي بِـ	make up	يَخْتَلِقُ
connect to	يَرْتَبِطُ بِـ	refer to (as)	يُشِيرُ إِلَى ... كَ ...
hear of	يَسْمَعُ عَنْ	sail away	يَنْجِرُ مُبْتَعِدًا
leap through	يَقْفِزُ غَيْرَ	turn around	يَسْتَدِيرُ

Mini Test 5 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The ancient cave still holds mysteries; it is said to be full of
a. danger b. secrets c. waves d. joy
- "The nurse's quick action in giving CPR was truly for the drowning child.
a. hard-to-survive b. over the moon c. life-saving d. heart-stopping
- Some jellyfish have organs that can light in the dark ocean.
a. fade b. survive c. produce d. hide
- Climbing Everest without oxygen is considered a journey.
a. life-saving b. complete darkness c. hard-to-survive d. in deep water
- When the teacher announced her scholarship, Leen was
a. the sea is angry b. over the moon c. in deep water d. full of secrets
- The mountain view was so beautiful; it was almost
a. storm fading b. in deep water c. heart-stopping d. life-saving
- The divers moved carefully because they were working in complete
a. danger b. joy c. water d. darkness
- By morning, the clouds broke apart and the storm began to
a. fade b. survive c. protect d. make it
- As a leader, you must always believe your team's potential.
a. on b. in c. for d. to

10. Good parents naturally care their children's needs.
a. for b. on c. in d. at
11. The printer will not work unless it is connected the network.
a. at b. to c. for d. in
12. Have you ever heard the famous lighthouse of Alexandria?
a. in b. to c. of d. on
13. Dolphins leap the waves in coordinated groups.
a. through b. to c. over d. on
14. I've been looking my missing keys everywhere.
a. on b. of c. in d. for
15. In his speech, the writer chose to refer the story as a modern fairy tale.
a. on b. to c. for d. at

III READING

Reading Texts

• on Lesson 4 SB pages 63 & 64

The ocean is home to a wide variety of **amazing**⁽¹⁾ creatures. Some are deep-sea animals that live in complete darkness, using **glow-producing**⁽²⁾ organs to attract prey. Others, like dolphins, are intelligent and **social**⁽³⁾, often seen **diving**⁽⁴⁾ through the waves in **coordinated**⁽⁵⁾ groups.

Sharks have an unbelievable sense of smell and can **detect**⁽⁶⁾ a single drop of blood from miles away. Despite their **reputation**⁽⁷⁾, most sharks are not dangerous to humans. In fact, many species are endangered because of **overfishing**⁽⁸⁾ and pollution.

Coral reefs are another **awe-inspiring**⁽⁹⁾ part of marine life. These colorful underwater ecosystems are built by tiny animals called coral polyps. They support thousands of marine species and are often referred to as the "rainforests of the sea." Sadly, rising sea temperatures and human activities have caused coral bleaching, putting these habitats at risk.

Sea turtles are known for their **long-distance**⁽¹⁰⁾ migrations and their strong connection to the beach where they were born. After **hatching**⁽¹¹⁾, baby turtles face a **hard-to-survive**⁽¹²⁾ journey to the sea. Many do not make it.

Marine biologists work hard to protect the ocean. They study **fast-changing**⁽¹³⁾ environments and create awareness about conservation. Protecting marine life is not just important – **it's life-saving**⁽¹⁴⁾.

It's clear that we cannot afford to underestimate the **value**⁽¹⁵⁾ of the ocean. If we turn a **blind eye**⁽¹⁶⁾ to the damage being done, we might find ourselves **in deep water**⁽¹⁷⁾ – **literally**⁽¹⁸⁾ and **figuratively**⁽¹⁹⁾.



أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) مذهش
- (2) مُنِج للضوء
- (3) إجتماعي
- (4) الغوص
- (5) مُنَسَّق
- (6) يُكتشف
- (7) سُمعة
- (8) الصيد الجائر
- (9) مُلهِم للإعجاب
- (10) تبديد المسافة
- (11) فقس
- (12) ضعف البقاء
- (13) سريع التغير
- (14) مُهدد للحياة
- (15) قيمة
- (16) يتجاهل
- (17) في ورطة
- (18) حرفياً
- (19) مجازياً

The Song of the Sea Woman

Many years ago, in a quiet fishing village, people spoke of a **strange** (1) **legend** (2). They believed a sea woman lived in the deepest part of the ocean. Her voice was so **heart-stoppingly beautiful** (3) that it could **calm** (4) **storms** (5) – or cause them.

One summer evening, young Elias was out fishing alone. The sea was calm, but suddenly, dark clouds **gathered** (6). **Thunder** (7) **crashed** (8), and waves crashed against his boat. Then, through the **roaring** (9) wind, he heard singing. It was **soft** (10), sweet, and haunting.

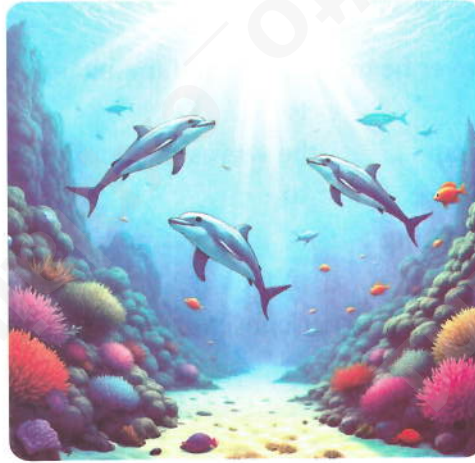
He followed the sound. There, sitting on a rock in the **stormy** (11) sea, was a **glowing** (12) **figure** (13) with long **silver** (14) hair. Elias **stared** (15), **unable** (16) to move.

“Go home,” the sea woman **whispered** (17). “The sea is angry tonight.”

Elias turned his boat around. As he **sailed** (18) away, the storm slowly **faded** (19). By the time he reached the shore, the sky was clear again.

The next day, no one believed his story. But Elias never forgot the voice. He became a **wise** (20) sailor, always **respectful** (21) of the ocean.

They say if you listen carefully on stormy nights, you can still hear the sea woman’s song – reminding people that the sea is beautiful, powerful and full of secrets.



- (1) غريب
- (2) أسطورة
- (3) بشكل مذهش
- (4) يَهْدئ
- (5) غواصف
- (6) تَجْمَع
- (7) زَعَد
- (8) يرتطم
- (9) مُدَوّ
- (10) ناعم
- (11) عاصف
- (12) مُتَوَهّج
- (13) شَخْصِيَّة
- (14) فِضِّي
- (15) يدفق النظر
- (16) عاجز
- (17) هَمَس
- (18) يبحر
- (19) تَلاشى
- (20) حَكيم
- (21) مُخْتَرِم



أحرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للف 3 الثانوي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



SKILLS

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية في الملحق

تنويه

WRITING SKILL : A SHORT STORY

ما هي القصة القصيرة؟ What is a Short Story?

A **short story** is a brief work of fiction that focuses on a single event, character, or theme. It is designed to be read in one sitting and often leaves a strong impression on the reader. القصة القصيرة هي عمل أدبي قصير يركز على حدث أو شخصية أو موضوع واحد، وهي تصمم لتقرأ في جلسة واحدة وتترك في الغالب أثراً قوياً في القارئ.

الأجزاء الرئيسية للقصة القصيرة Main Parts of a Short Story

Parts of a Short Story

1. Beginning (Introduction) البداية

Introduces characters, setting, and sometimes hints at the conflict.

تقدّم الشخصيات، والإطار الزماني والمكاني، وأحياناً تلمح إلى الصراع.

2. Middle (Development) الوسط

Shows the main events, builds tension, and develops the conflict.

تظهر الأحداث الرئيسية، وترفع التوتر، وتطوّر الصراع.

3. End (Resolution) النهاية

Resolves the conflict and shows the outcome.

تحلّ المشاكل ويُعرَضُ النتيجة.

Detailed Techniques of Short-Story Writing

التقنيات التفصيلية لكتابة القصة القصيرة:

Term	Definitions
theme الموضوع	the main message or moral lesson
characters الشخصيات	believable people/animals with clear traits
setting الإطار الزماني والمكاني	where and when the story happens
plot الحبكة	the sequence of events (Beginning–Middle–End)
conflict الصراع	the main problem or challenge
tension & suspense التوتر والتشويق	feelings that keep readers engaged
climax الذروة	the most exciting turning point
resolution الحل	how the problem is solved
dialogue الحوار	conversations that reveal character and advance the plot
style & tone الأسلوب وجو التعبير	the writer's way of expression and emotional attitude

General Exercises

I WRITING SKILL

Write a short story of (200) words on a friend's turning point.

A friend's Turning Point

One quiet morning, Mrs Nevine, Rodayna's Arabic teacher, stood before the class with a mysterious smile. "Today," she announced, "We will have a surprise quiz." Rodayna's heart sank. By the end of the lesson, the papers were collected, and the truth was undeniable – she failed miserably. A flush of embarrassment burned her cheeks, and disappointment weighed on her like a heavy cloak.

That evening, her father, Mr Mohammed, found her sitting silently at her desk. He placed a gentle hand on her shoulder. "You have a sharp mind, Rodayna," he said in a warm but firm voice, "but you are letting time slip through your fingers. Time, once gone, never returns. If you learn to guide it, you can guide your life."

His words struck something deep within her. That very night, she sketched a new plan for herself: work first, leisure later. It was not easy. Messages from friends buzzed on her phone, and the pull of distraction was strong. Yet, step by step, she held her course.

Two months later, her grades rose, her mind was lighter, and her heart was proud. She learned her lesson well – time was a treasure, and she would guard it fiercely.

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A short story is a brief work of
a. history b. fiction c. poetry d. biography
2. A short story usually focuses on
a. multiple timelines b. a single event, character, or theme
c. different countries d. long descriptions
3. One feature of a short story is that it can be read
a. over weeks b. in one sitting c. at night d. during travel
4. A short story often leaves on the reader.
a. a question b. a puzzle c. a strong impression d. no effect
5. The beginning of a short story is also called the
a. resolution b. introduction c. climax d. ending
6. The introduction usually presents the
a. conflict only b. characters and setting
c. resolution d. dialogue only
7. In the beginning, the writer may hint at the
a. resolution b. conflict c. style d. conclusion
8. The middle of the story is also known as the
a. fiction b. development c. resolution d. prologue
9. The development part shows the
a. resolution b. main events c. introduction d. tone
10. In the middle, the writer builds and develops the conflict.
a. style b. tension c. theme d. setting

11. The end of a story is called the
 a. introduction b. climax c. resolution d. development
12. The resolution the conflict.
 a. ignores b. solves c. repeats d. delays
13. The main message or moral lesson is called the
 a. theme b. plot c. style d. dialogue
14. Characters are with clear traits.
 a. imaginary only b. believable people or animals
 c. historical figures only d. settings
15. The setting refers to the story happens.
 a. how b. why c. where and when d. what
16. The plot is the of events.
 a. conflict b. sequence c. theme d. tension
17. The conflict is the main
 a. ending b. problem or challenge
 c. character d. tone
18. Tension and suspense keep the readers
 a. confused b. engaged c. bored d. relaxed
19. The climax is the most turning point.
 a. slow b. exciting c. sad d. dull
20. Resolution shows how the problem is
 a. created b. solved c. worsened d. hidden
21. Dialog is the conversation between
 a. narrator and reader b. characters
 c. setting and plot d. climax and resolution
22. Dialog can reveal character and the plot.
 a. delay b. advance c. destroy d. confuse
23. Style and tone refer to the writer's of expression.
 a. theme b. way c. setting d. character

II READING SKILL

• Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

About 349 million people across 79 countries are facing acute food insecurity - up from 287 million in 2021. The global community must not fail on its promise to end hunger and malnutrition by 2030. Many innovations that were once heavily supported and publicized, such as fish-protein concentrate and protein from algae grown on petroleum substrates, have fallen by the wayside. The proposals themselves were technically feasible, but they proved to be economically unviable and to yield food products culturally unacceptable to their consumers. Recent innovations such as opaque-2 maize seems promising, but it is too early to predict its ultimate fate.

Despite having extensive governmental support, these unsuccessful innovations often have not been technologically adapted or culturally acceptable to the people for whom they had been developed. A successful new technology, therefore, must fit the entire sociocultural system in which it is to find a place. Security of crop yield, particularity of storage, taste and costs should be put in consideration. For example, the better protein quality in bread made from opaque-2 maize will be of only limited benefit to a family on the margin of subsistence if the new maize is not culturally acceptable or is more likely to be attacked by insects.

The adoption of new food technologies depends on more than these technical and cultural considerations; economic factors and governmental policies also strongly influence the ultimate success of any innovation. Some economists exaggerate in claiming that profitability is the key factor guiding technical change and disregard the substantial effects of culture. Most technological innovations in agriculture can be fully used and adopted only by large landowners in case they believe that the innovations will increase their incomes even if they harm sectors of the population and reduce the availability of food in a country.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- This passage deals with
 a. the practical steps to have food alternatives easily
 b. how to have healthy food from opaque-2 maize
 c. some solutions to the food shortage problem
 d. the problem of food shortage in the developing countries
- Any new crop needs mainly to be to be a successful food alternative.
 a. accepted by people
 b. grown by people
 c. technically adopted
 d. advertised in media
- The best sentence that can summarize the last paragraph is “.....”.
 a. Many new innovations can be adopted by both small and big landowners.
 b. Some economists think that new adoptions should be adopted for people’s sake.
 c. There are many new solutions for food shortage that can be adopted
 d. The adoption of new solutions depends mainly on financial profit
- To ensure the success of the new innovation in developing countries, is necessary.
 a. building new organizations
 b. a wide advertising campaign
 c. the governmental support
 d. ignoring the scientific research
- After reading the passage, we can say that
 a. we have some very successful innovations.
 b. we are still looking for new innovations.
 c. the developing countries’ innovations must be applied.
 d. we don’t have food shortage problem with the new innovations.
- According to the passage, opaque-2 maize
 a. is only suitable for the developed countries
 b. can only solve the world food shortage
 c. has been adopted by many countries
 d. can be attacked by insects easily
- The writer thinks that before the innovation of new crops, we should know that
 a. both of the profitability and the cultural effects are very important.
 b. the profitability is the main key factor guiding the technological change.
 c. the new changes need the governmental support to the small landowners.
 d. the new innovations can be applied on condition that they don’t harm people.
- According to the passage, fish-protein concentrate
 a. isn’t supported by many governments
 b. is culturally accepted and supported
 c. is an unsuccessful solution to food lack problem
 d. isn’t healthy and causes many diseases

III TRANSLATION

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

1. Sleep is nature's best nurse. People, in particular, usually sleep to renew their energy and look joyful.

- a. النوم هو أفضل ممرض للطبيعة، وعادةً ما ينام الناس على وجه الخصوص لتجديد طاقتهم والظهور بمظهر مُبهج.
- b. النوم هو أفضل ممرض طبيعي، وعادةً ما ينام الناس على وجه الخصوص لتجديد طاقتهم والظهور بمظهر مُبهج.
- c. النوم هو أفضل ممرضة للطبيعة، وعادةً ما ينام الناس على وجه الخصوص لتجديد طاقتهم والظهور بمظهر مُبهج.
- d. النوم هو أفضل ممرض طبيعي، وأحياناً ما ينام الناس لتجديد طاقتهم والظهور بمظهر مُبهج على وجه الخصوص.

2. Healthcare is considered an important element in increasing production. A healthy worker can work harder and more efficiently than a sick one.

- a. تُعدّ الرعاية الصحية أحد العناصر الهامة في زيادة الإنتاج، فالعامل السليم يمكنه أن يعمل بجدية أكبر وكفاءة أعلى من العامل المريض.
- b. تُعدّ الرعاية الصحية أحد العناصر الهامة في زيادة الإنتاج، فالعامل السليم يمكنه أن يعمل بجدية أكبر وكفاءة أعلى من العامل المريض.
- c. تُعدّ الرعاية الصحية أحد العناصر الهامة في زيادة المنتجين، فالعامل السليم يمكنه أن يعمل بجدية أكبر وكفاءة أعلى من العامل المريض.
- d. تُعدّ الرعاية الصحية العنصر الأهم في زيادة الإنتاج، فالعامل السليم يمكنه أن يعمل بجدية أكبر وكفاءة أعلى من العامل المريض.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

1. لابد من إيجاد حلول عملية لمواجهة مشكلة نقص الغذاء في معظم دول العالم، فعدد السكان في تزايد مستمر وذلك يتطلب زيادة مستمرة في الإنتاج الغذائي.

- a. We have to find scientific solutions to confront the problem of food shortage in the world. The global population is constantly decreasing and this inquires a continuous increase in food production.
- b. We have to find practical solution to confront the problem of food shortage in most of the countries of the world. The global population is constantly increasing and this enquires a continuous increase in food products.
- c. We have to find scientific solutions to confront the problem of food shortage in the world. The global pollution is constantly increasing and this requires a continuous increase in food production.
- d. We have to find practical solutions to confront the problem of food shortage in most of the countries of the world. The global population is constantly increasing and this requires a continuous increase in food production.

2. لكي نتجنب الأمراض والعدوي، يجب علينا الحفاظ على نمط حياة صحي وذلك من خلال نظام غذائي صحي متوازن، وممارسة الرياضة بانتظام، والحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم.

- a. To avoid diseases and infection, we should maintain a healthy lifestyle by having a balanced diet, exercising regularly and getting little sleep.
- b. To avoid infectious diseases, we should maintain a healthy lifestyle by having a balanced diet, exercising regularly and getting enough sleep.
- c. To avoid diseases and infection, we should maintain a healthy lifestyle by having a balanced diet, exercising regularly and getting enough sleep.
- d. To avoid diseases and infection, we should entertain a healthy lifestyle by having a balanced diet, exercising regularly and getting enough sleep.



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 56

Coral Reefs

1. The text describes coral reefs as a crystal-clear "underwater city" that is home to thousands of marine species.
2. Reefs are incredibly diverse and provide essential shelter, food, and protection for ocean life.
3. They are surprisingly fragile and face serious threats from pollution, climate change, and destructive fishing practices.
4. Marine biologists work to protect reefs through education and promoting eco-friendly tourism.
5. The text emphasizes the need for long-term damage prevention, using the saying "a stitch in time saves nine" to highlight that every small action makes a difference.

on Lesson 2 SB page 58

Saving the Whales

1. Whales are described as some of the ocean's grandest and most gentle creatures, yet they face critical threats.
2. These threats are human-made and include noisy ship traffic that disrupts their communication, deadly fishing nets, and pollution.
3. There is hope for their survival thanks to dedicated scientists who work tirelessly to protect them.
4. Modern tools like drones are used to track whale movements without disturbance, and stricter laws ban harmful sonar in protected areas.
5. The text concludes that whales play a vital role in our ecosystem, and their survival ensures healthier oceans for all.

on Lesson 3 SB page 60

The Underwater World

1. The underwater world is portrayed as a fascinating and little-known place full of life, especially in the deep sea.
2. It contains brightly-colored corals, strange-looking plants, and thousands of amazing sea creatures.

* The importance of coral reefs in marine life

* Saving marines animals

* Keeping underwater world safe for future generations

3. The text describes how dolphins use high-pitched sounds and whales sing long-distance songs to communicate and travel.
4. Sadly, this fragile world faces many human-made problems, including plastic-filled waters, overfishing, and rising temperatures.
5. The message is a call to action to work together to keep the underwater world safe for future generations.

on Lesson 4 SB pages 63 & 64

The Diversity of Ocean Life

1. The ocean is home to a wide variety of amazing creatures, some of which live in complete darkness and have glow-producing organs.
2. Dolphins are highlighted as intelligent and social animals that often dive through waves in coordinated groups.
3. Sharks have a powerful sense of smell, while most are not dangerous to humans. Many species are endangered due to overfishing and pollution.
4. Coral reefs are called the "rainforests of the sea" for their biodiversity, and sea turtles face a difficult journey to survive after hatching.
5. The text concludes that protecting marine life is important and ultimately "life-saving."

on Lesson 5 SB page 67

The Song of the Sea Woman

1. The text tells a legend about a sea woman whose voice was so beautiful that it could calm a storm.
2. A fisherman named Elias hears her singing during a storm while he is out fishing alone.
3. He follows the sound and sees a glowing figure who tells him the sea is "angry tonight." Her voice calms the storm, and it slowly fades.
4. When Elias returns and tells his story, no one believes him, but he never forgets the voice.
5. The legend reminds people that the sea is beautiful, powerful, and full of mystery.

ننوه : الحمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى :

General Exercises | on Unit 4

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Loud construction noise can seriously learning in nearby classrooms.
a. pose b. thrive c. disrupt d. bleach
2. She always remembers her childhood that was full of memories.
a. haunt b. haunting c. haunts d. haunted
3. Nature activists often about the effects of pollution on health.
a. promote eco-friendly tourism b. educate communities
c. ban harmful sonar d. support marine life
4. "The old flag has started to after years in the sun." The word here is a synonym of 'discolor'.
a. thrive b. struggle c. bleach d. pose
5. Pollution a serious threat to marine life.
a. poses b. pausing c. posed d. pauses
6. From across the room, I heard her my name quietly.
a. value b. detect c. calm d. whisper
7. She wrote a/an review of the book, praising every detail.
a. glowing b. mind-blowing c. vibrant d. literal
8. I have always honesty more than cleverness.
a. whisper b. valued c. detect d. calm
9. The rescue team arrived in a helicopter, ready for the storm
a. high speed b. high-speed c. high-speeded d. high speed-
10. Walid is known as a leader who inspires his team even in hard times.
a. high spirited b. high-spirited c. spirited-high d. highly spirit
11. We visited a temple that had stood for over 500 years.
a. world-famous b. world famous c. world-famously d. famous-world
12. Areej showed us a building designed by a famous architect.
a. modern-looking b. modern-looking c. modernlooking d. modern looking
13. Ola presented a argument that convinced even her critics.
a. well-researched b. well researched c. researched-well d. well, researched
14. The old market is full of stalls selling handmade crafts.
a. colorful-decorated b. colorfully-decorated
c. colorful decorated d. colorfully decorates
15. Aya bought a sofa that fits perfectly in her small living room.
a. space saving b. space-saved c. space-saving d. saving-spaced
16. We enjoyed a journey across the desert, watching the sunset.
a. once-in-a lifetime b. once-in-a-lifetime c. once in a lifetime d. once-in lifetime

17. Ahmed lives in a apartment overlooking the Nile.
 a. river facing b. river-facing c. facing-river d. river faced
18. The teacher praised Yara for writing a essay on climate change.
 a. thought provoking b. thought-provoking
 c. provoking-thought d. thought, provoking
19. Tone refers to the writer's emotional
 a. attitude b. theme c. plot d. conflict

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Most people worry about forgetting things as they get older. Do you know that we have different kinds of memories? what most people think of as a memory is, in fact, five different **categories** of memory. Remembering things from the past depends on two categories of memory: remote and recent memory. If you can't remember things about your last birthday, you are having a problem with your remote memory. If you can't remember what you ate for lunch yesterday, that's a problem with your recent memory.

When we take a test, we need to draw on our semantic memories. That's the sum of our acquired knowledge, or we want to remember to do or use something in the future. Here we use our immediate and prospective memories. Many people think that developing a bad memory is inevitable as we get older, but this is actually not correct. Of our five kinds of memory, immediate; remote and prospective don't degrade with age.

To have good memories, we need to do some activities like learning new things or even doing crossword puzzles. Regular physical activity is useful to have a better blood supply to the brain. The only thing to avoid is stress. When we are stressed, our bodies release a hormone called cortisol, which is harmful to our brain cells and our memories. Reducing stress through meditation, exercise, or other activities can help to preserve our mental abilities.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

20. What is the main idea of the passage?
 a. Tricks for remembering things b. Human memory
 c. The functions of brain d. How to stay active and healthy
21. would positively affect your memory.
 a. Watching much TV b. Living alone
 c. Reducing stress d. Working a lot
22. To remember where your car keys were, you use memory.
 a. recent b. immediate c. remote d. semantic
23. The synonym of the underlined word "**categories**" is ".....".
 a. events b. kinds c. facts d. hormones
24. We need to do some activities like doing crossword puzzles to have good
 a. hearts b. bodies c. memories d. technologies
25. Remembering things from the past depends on and recent memory.
 a. long-term b. intensive c. near d. late

26. Regular activity helps to have a better blood supply to the brain.
 a. social b. physical c. psychological d. medical
27. Cortisol is a/an which harms our brain cells and our memories.
 a. hormone b. tissue c. enzyme d. organ

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Sight, hearing, touch, smell and taste are the five senses we have, through which we learn, see, hear and discover the world around us. Many people believe that our senses work separately, but in fact they collaborate together and work as a team to enable the mind to understand its surroundings.

But, do all creatures have five senses? Some people may have six senses. A sixth sense could be predicting something without using the known five senses. Researchers have discovered that some dolphins have seven senses. Dolphins can feel electricity produced by the heart beats of other sea creatures. This could help dolphins to find their next victim to hunt as their meal. This seventh sense may also help **them** to navigate using the Earth's magnetic field. Dolphins also use their eyesight and sonar to feel what is around them.

The researchers performed a study on two dolphins to make sure that they really have the seventh sense. Experiments tested what kinds of electricity the dolphins could feel. They felt two kinds, direct current and alternating current. They were better at sensing direct current. All sea creatures produce direct current electricity.

Being able to discover this means dolphins can feel how near other fish are to them. Dolphins could use this to hunt and eat, even if they cannot see or hear well, or if they cannot use their other senses.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

28. The text asserts that "....." is common knowledge.
 a. We all have five senses b. Dolphins have seven senses
 c. Most of us have a sixth sense d. Humans can have seven senses
29. Dolphins can feel in the hearts of sea creatures.
 a. blood pressure b. electric pulse of the heart
 c. the speed of heart pulse d. tastiness of the creature
30. Besides their excellent eyesight, dolphins have excellent as well.
 a. skin b. fins c. sonar d. tail
31. Dolphins might use the earth's to move around.
 a. tides b. Equator c. North Pole d. magnetic field
32. The underlined pronoun "**them**" can be alternated by
 a. dolphins b. researchers c. the five senses d. creatures
33. The sense is the ability to know something without using the ordinary five senses.
 a. ordinary b. 5th c. 6th d. 7th
34. The word "....." in the passage means "to co-operate and work as a team".
 a. navigate b. feel c. collaborate d. perform

35. Dolphins could use their seventh sense for

- a. communicating b. laughing c. swimming d. hunting

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

36. "The market offers choices for customers." The word here is a synonym of 'varied'.

- a. fragile b. diverse c. different
d. pose e. hazardous

37. "Without help, they will soon be in deep water." This means they will be

- a. safe b. in trouble c. secure
d. protected e. in danger

• **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

38. It has been proven that meditation helps create a stress-free work environment and improves productivity rates.

- a. لقد ثبت أن التأمل يُساعد على تهيئة بيئة عمل خالية من التوتر ويحسن أسعار الإنتاجية.
b. لقد ثبت أن التأمل يُساعد على تهيئة بيئة عمل خالية من التوتر ويحسن معدلات الإنتاجية.
c. لقد ثبت أن الوساطة تساعد على تهيئة بيئة عمل بلا توتر وتحسين معدلات الإنتاجية.
d. قد ثبت أن التأمل يساعد في خلق بيئة عمل بلا توتر وتحقيق إنتاجية كبيرة.

39. Do you know that vitamins are essential for a good, healthy and balanced diet as they protect us from many fatal diseases, so they are called protective foods?

- a. هل تعلم أن الفيتامينات ضرورية للنظام الغذائي الجيد الصحي والمتوازن، لأنهم يقوموا بحمايتنا من كثير من الأمراض المزمنة، لذلك يُطلق عليهم الأطعمة الوقائية؟
b. هل تعلم أن الفيتامينات ضرورية للوجبة الجيدة الصحية والمتوازنة، لأنهم قاموا بحمايتنا من كثير من الأمراض المزمنة، لذلك يُطلق عليهم الأطعمة المحمية؟
c. هل تعرف أن الفيتامينات ضرورية للوجبة الجيدة الصحية والمتوازنة، لأنهم يقوموا بحمايتنا من كثير من الأمراض المستدامة، لذلك يُطلق عليهم الأطعمة الواقية؟
d. هل تعرف أن الفيتامينات ضرورية للنظام الغذائي الجيد الصحي والمتوازن، لأنهم قد يقوموا بحمايتهم من كثير من الأمراض المزمنة، لذلك يُطلق عليهم أطعمة الحماية؟

• **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

ع. لابد أن تتعلم كيفية إدارة الوقت وترتيب أولوياتك حتى تنجز الكثير من المهام المختلفة بكفاءة وفي وقت مناسب، وهذا بالتأكيد يجعلك شخصاً منتجاً وناجحاً في الحياة.

- a. You must learn how to arrange your time and manage your priorities in order to accomplish a lot of different tasks efficiently promptly. This definitely makes you a productive and successful person in life.
b. You must learn how to manage your time and arrange your priorities to accomplish a lot of different tasks sufficiently promptly. This definitely makes you a productive and successful person in career.
c. You must learn how to manage your time and arrange your priorities to accomplish a lot of different tasks efficiently in a timely manner. This definitely makes you a productive and successful person in life.
d. You must learn when to manage your time and arrange your priorities in order to refresh a lot of different tasks efficiently in a timely manner. This definitely makes you a consumer and successful person in life.

٤١ . للحفاظ على صحتك البدنية ووظيفتك، احرص دائماً على التحلي بالصبر والأمل، ولا تدع ضغوط الحياة تدفعك للاستسلام. وتذكر أن الاستراحة بين الحين والآخر ضرورية لتجديد طاقتك ومواصلة العطاء.

- a. To keep your physical healthy and keep your job, always strive to remain patient and hopeful, and never let life's pressures lead you to give up. Remember that taking occasion breaks is essential to recharge your energy and continue giving your best.
- b. To maintain your physical health and keep your job, always strive to remain patience and hopeful, and never let life's pressures leads you to give up. Remember that taking occasion breaks is important to charge your energy and continue giving your best.
- c. To maintain your physical health and keep your job, always strive to remain patient and hopeful, and never let life's pressures lead you to give up. Remember that taking occasional breaks is essential to recharge your energy and continue giving your best.
- d. To maintain your physical healthy and keep your job, always strive to remain patient and hopeful, and never let life's pressures lead you to give up. Remember that taking occasional breaks is important to charge your energy and continue giving your best.

• **Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :**

42. We visited a restaurant that all people in the city know. (well-known)

43. Yara wore a dress whose colour is sky blue. (sky-blue)

• **Answer the following questions:**

44. Why do you think sailors feared the Chateau ?

45. Why did the word "caption" sound like an insult to Edmond ?

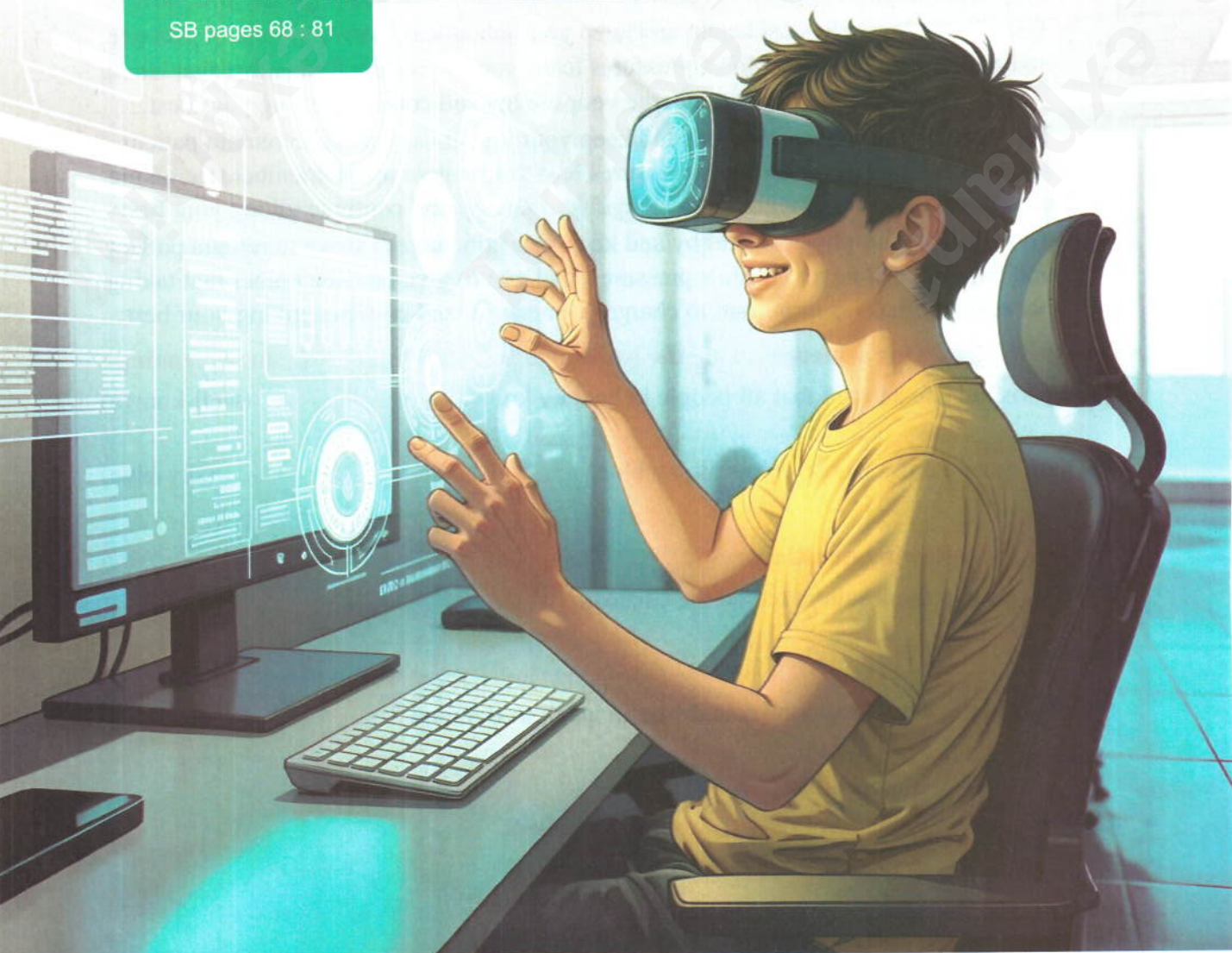
• **46. Write a six-line beginning to a short story called:**

"A day to remember"

UNIT 5

SB pages 68 : 81

From Muscles to Mindset



Learning Outcomes

• Reading

- Read articles and stories about the changing workplace, the impact of AI, and the importance of human skills
- Identify key details, define idioms, and answer comprehension questions

• Language

- Use causative verbs (have and get) in various tenses to talk about having someone else perform a task or having a task done by someone

• Listening

- Extract key information from an audio

text about the skills needed for the future workforce

• Writing

- Write a narrative story about a day in the future, using descriptive language and a clear plot structure

• Speaking

- Express personal opinions through debates and discussions about the pros and cons of AI in the workplace, and the importance of human connection and "soft skills"



SB pages 69 : 73

PART ONE

Lessons

1 & 2

► Discover Your Future!
► Skills for the Future

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

backgrounds (n)	خَلْفِيَّة	literacy (n)	مَهَارَةُ الْقِرَاءَةِ وَالْكِتَابَةِ
climb the career ladder	يَتَقَدَّمُ فِي السُّلَّمِ الْوُضُيْفِي	manufacturing (n)	تَصْنِيع
collaboration (n)	تَعَاوُن	mindset (n)	عَقْلِيَّة
data management (n)	إِدَارَةُ الْبَيِّنَاتِ	soft skills (n)	مَهَارَاتُ شَخْصِيَّة
flexibility (n)	مُرُونَة	spill the beans	يُخْبِفُ بِسْرًا
green energy (n)	الطَّاقَةُ النَّظِيفَة	stay ahead of the curve	يَتَقَدَّمُ عَلَى الْأَخْرَيْنِ
industry (n)	صِنَاعَة - نَشَاطٌ اِقْتِصَادِي	think outside the box	يَفْكُرُ بِإِنْدَاع
insight (n)	بَصِيرَة - الْاسْتِبْصَار	transformation (n)	تَحْوِيل - تَحْوِيل
judgement (n)	حُكْم - تَمْيِيز - بَصِيرَة	workforce (n)	الْقُوَّة الْعَامِلَة

2 Important Vocabulary

adaptable (adj)	قَابِلٌ لِلتَّخَيُّفِ	institution (n)	مَوْسَّسَة
causative (adj)	صِيغَة سَبَبِيَّة	ladder (n)	سُلَّم
common (adj)	شَائِع	learning (n)	تَعْلَم
communication (n)	تَوَاضُل	mental (adj)	ذِهْنِي
competitive (adj)	تَنَافُسِي	no longer (adv)	لَمْ يَعْذْ
construction (n)	بِنَاء / تَشْيِيد - تَرْكِيب	open(ed) (adj-v)	مُنْفَتِح - يَفْتَح - يَنْفَتَح
continuous (adj)	مُسْتَمِر	organization (n)	مُنْظَمَة - مَوْسَّسَة
copy(ied) (v)	يَنْسَخ - يُحَاكِي	participate(d) (v)	يُشَارِك
creativity (n)	إِنْدَاع	perform(ed) (v)	يُؤَدِّي
critical thinking (n)	التَّفْكِيرُ النَّقْدِي	persuade(d) (v)	يُفْنِع
curve (n)	مُنْحَنَى	physical (adj)	جَسَدِي - بَدَنِي
design(ed) (v)	يُصَمِّم	prepare(d) (v)	يُعِدّ
digital (adj)	رَقْمِي	problem-solving (n-adj)	حَلُّ الْمَشْكِلاتِ
emotional (adj)	عَاطِفِي	program (n)	بِرْنَامَج
employee (n)	مَوْظَّف	remote (adj)	بَعِيد / نَاءٍ
employer (n)	صَاحِبُ الْعَمَلِ	renew(ed) (v)	يُجَدِّد
farming (n)	زِرَاعَة	repetitive (adj)	مُتَكَرِّر
frequently (adv)	بِشْكَلٍ مُتَكَرِّر	reveal(ed) (v)	يُخْبِفُ بِسْرًا
government (n)	حُكُومَة	role (n)	دَوْر
growth (n)	نُمو	staff (n)	مَوْظَفُونَ
handle(d) (v)	يَتَغَاوَلُ مَعَ / يَتَنَاوَلُ (مَوْضُوع / مَشْكِلة)	strength (n)	الْقُوَّة
		training (n)	تَدْرِيب

healthcare (n)	الرَّعَايَةُ الصَّحِّيَّة	up-to-date (adj)	مُؤَاظِب لِلْخَاصِر
idiom (n)	تَغْيِيرِ إِصْطِلَاحِي	valuable (adj)	قِيم
including (prep)	يَمَّا فِيهِ	workplace (n)	مَكَانُ الْعَمَلِ
increasingly (adv)	بِشَكْلِ مُتَزَايِد	workshops (n)	وَرَشُ الْعَمَلِ
instance (n)	مِثَال		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Successful employers value because it helps workers adapt quickly to change.
a. industry b. construction c. frequency d. flexibility
- A good leader must have sound when making important decisions.
a. judgment b. instance c. oversight d. ladder
- Teaching children to read and write is part of improving
a. health care b. flexibility c. training d. literacy
- Solar panels and wind turbines are examples of
a. industry b. green energy c. digital d. growth
- The tourist employs thousands of workers in Luxor and Aswan.
a. organization b. institution c. program d. industry
- cars in factories is a big multinational business.
a. Organization b. Manufacturing c. Construction d. Farming
- In an international company, employees come from different social
a. backgrounds b. institutions c. industries d. organizations
- Good teamwork requires, which requires people to share ideas and work toward a common goal.
a. collaboration b. competition c. insight d. creativity
- Running files, organizing records, and protecting information are part of
a. creativity b. data management c. digital d. manufacturing
- Having a positive can help you stay motivated during challenges.
a. growth b. mental c. mindset d. literacy
- Communication, teamwork, and leadership are examples of
a. workshops b. soft skills c. programs d. industries
- All must adapt to change when new technology is introduced.
a. institution b. workforce c. organization d. background
- To compete in a fast-changing market, companies must
a. think inside the box b. stay ahead of the curve
c. climb the career ladder d. reveal the plan
- We need a new marketing strategy, so let's to attract more customers.
a. stay ahead of the curve b. climb the career ladder
c. think outside the box d. spill the beans

15. The shift from paper records to digital files is a major in offices.
 a. transformation b. training c. construction d. industry
16. Good managers have the to understand complex situations.
 a. ladder b. instance c. literacy d. insight
17. Don't about the surprise – it's supposed to be a secret!
 a. spill the beans b. think outside the box
 c. climb the career ladder d. reveal the plan
18. Omar hopes to by gaining promotions and taking on more responsibilities.
 a. spill the beans b. think outside the box
 c. climb the career ladder d. reveal the plan

2 Important Vocabulary

19. The of a new bridge will improve transport in the area.
 a. construction b. manufacturing c. programming d. industry
20. Students mustn't from each other during their exams.
 a. copy b. prepare c. design d. reveal
21. The manager must the difficult situation carefully.
 a. handle b. renew c. reveal d. design
22. She her friends to join the charity event.
 a. performed b. participated c. persuaded d. revealed
23. The fire alarm is tested to ensure safety.
 a. frequently b. increasingly c. lately d. competitively
24. The is planning new environmental regulations.
 a. industry b. mindset c. construction d. government
25. Doctors and nurses are essential in services.
 a. healthcare b. training c. workplace d. program
26. Being to new work conditions makes you employable.
 a. common b. adaptable c. competitive d. continuous
27. Jeans are a/an piece of clothing worn worldwide.
 a. continuous b. repetitive c. common d. adapted
28. Athletes from 10 countries in the championship.
 a. manufactured b. prepared c. persuaded d. participated
29. Many people prefer reading news on platforms instead of newspapers.
 a. digital b. mental c. remote d. physical
30. He wrote a very letter to express his feelings.
 a. competitive b. adaptable c. valuable d. emotional
31. The company hired new to manage customer accounts.
 a. participants b. employers c. employees d. stuff
32. The of the company decided to open a new branch.
 a. manager b. collaboration c. flexibility d. farming
33. is still the main source of income in rural areas.
 a. Manufacturing b. Farming c. Construction d. Training

34. Clear is essential for avoiding misunderstandings in a team.
 a. communication b. collaboration c. problem-solving d. creativity
35. In a/an market, companies must work hard to attract customers.
 a. adaptable b. competitive c. continuous d. valuable
36. New product ideas often come from people with high
 a. creativity b. flexibility c. literacy d. growth
37. Making decisions after carefully analyzing facts is part of
 a. collaboration b. critical thinking
 c. insight d. problem-making
38. The road makes a sharp near the river.
 a. ladder b. curve c. background d. role
39. The creative architect a new shopping mall with modern features.
 a. copied b. criticized c. designed d. relieved
40. The rapid of technology has changed how we work.
 a. growth b. insight c. mindset d. ladder
41. Mr Ashraf is a perfect of teamwork leading to success.
 a. organization b. insight c. program d. instance
42. A university is an educational that offers degrees.
 a. institution b. building c. industry d. workplace
43. The actor well in the play and received applause.
 a. prepared b. designed c. performed d. copied
44. Mustafa is an inspiring of courage and determination.
 a. instance b. insight c. mindset d. organization
45. Yoga can improve both physical and well-being.
 a. mental b. valuable c. dangerous d. competitive
46. She will eat junk food after learning about its effects.
 a. any longer b. no longer c. increasingly d. continuously
47. Mr Mohammed is to new ideas. He is flexible.
 a. open b. remote c. valuable d. adaptable
48. A hospital is a medical
 a. workplace b. prescription c. judgement d. industry
49. Nurses are part of the system that treats patients.
 a. healthcare b. institution c. program d. workplace
50. Several countries, Egypt, supported the trade agreement.
 a. no longer b. increasingly c. frequently d. including
51. Cities are becoming dependent on renewable energy.
 a. increasingly b. frequently c. recently d. competitively

3 A bit Tricky

هذا الجزء يعرض أفكار أسئلة التمييز الخاصة بالطلبة الفائقين في الامتحان

تنويه

52. Her decision to delay the launch was based on sound professional rather than personal feelings.
 a. management b. backgrounds c. judgment d. literacy

53. The company improved its profits through effective project and resource allocation.
 a. management b. background c. industry d. transmission
54. Engineers from different educational brought unique solutions to the design challenge.
 a. backgrounds b. industries c. mindsets d. literacy
55. The journalist's report gave the public a rare into the secretive world of high-level diplomacy.
 a. background b. insight c. literacy d. mindset
56. The nation's tourist is expected to bring billions of foreign currency next year.
 a. backgrounds b. insight c. industry d. transformation

II VOCABULARY STUDY

هذا الجزء هام جدًا سواء على مستوى تعلم اللغة والتميز في الامتحانات

تنويه

1 Definitions التعريفات

background (n)	خلفية	a person's education, experience, and personal history that influence their knowledge, skills, and perspective
climb the career ladder	يتقدّم في السلم الوظيفي	move up to higher positions in your job
collaboration (n)	تعاون	working together with other people to achieve a goal
construction (n)	بناء / تشييد	building or creating structures
data management (n)	إدارة البيانات	the practice of collecting, storing, organizing, and maintaining information efficiently and securely
emotional intelligence	الذكاء العاطفي	the ability to manage your own and others' feelings
flexibility (n)	مرونة	being able to change and adapt easily
green energy (n)	الطاقة النظيفة	power produced from natural sources that do not harm the environment, such as solar or wind energy
human insight	البصيرة الإنسانية	knowledge or understanding that comes from human experience
industry (n)	صناعة	the production of goods or related services within an economy
industry (n)	نشاط اقتصادي	a particular area of economic activity that involves the production of goods or the provision of services
insight (n)	بصيرة - الاستبصار	the ability to understand complex situations clearly and deeply
judgment (n)	حكم - تمييز - بصيرة	the ability to make sensible decisions after considering all relevant information
literacy (n)	معرفة القراءة والكتابة	the ability to read and write; also, the knowledge or competence in a specific subject area
digital literacy		- understanding and using digital tools - ability to understand and use digital tools and technology
	الثقافة الرقمية / الإلمام الرقمي	

manufacturing (n)	تَضْيِيع	the large-scale production of goods, often using machinery
mindset (n)	غَفْلِيَّة	way of thinking or attitude about something
soft skills (n)	مَهَارَات شخصية	personal qualities and abilities, such as communication and teamwork, that help people work well with others
spill the beans	يُكْشِف سِرًّا	to reveal secret information, often by accident
repetitive	متكرر	happening again and again in the same way
stay ahead of the curve	يَتَقَدَّم عَلَى الْآخَرِينَ	to be more advanced or better prepared than others
think outside the box	يُفَكِّر بِإِنْدَاع	to think in a creative and different way
transformation (n)	تَحْوِيل - تحوّل	a complete and significant change in form, appearance, or character
workforce (n)	القُوَّة العَامِلَة	all the people who are employed or available for work in a country, company, or industry

Mini Test 1 Definitions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Which term refers to all the people employed or available for work?
a. Backgrounds b. Collaboration c. Workforce d. Flexibility
- To advance to higher positions in a job is to
a. climb the career ladder b. spill the beans
c. stay ahead of the curve d. think outside the box
- is the process of working with others to reach a shared goal.
a. Workforce b. Backgrounds c. Collaboration d. Mindset
- is the practice of collecting, organizing, and maintaining information efficiently and securely.
a. Transformation b. Data management c. Literacy d. Manufacturing
- The ability to adjust quickly to changing conditions is called
a. flexibility b. mindset c. insight d. backgrounds
- is known as power generated from sources that do not harm the environment.
a. Workforce b. Green energy c. Industry d. Manufacturing
- A particular field of economic activity involving the production of goods or services is a/an
a. transformation b. industry c. flexibility d. backgrounds
- Which term means the ability to understand something clearly and deeply?
a. Insight b. Judgment c. Mindset d. Literacy
- The ability to make wise decisions after careful thought is called
a. data management b. backgrounds c. judgment d. transformation
- is the ability to read, write, or demonstrate competence in a specific field.
a. Industry b. Literacy c. Manufacturing d. Workforce

11. What is the term for large-scale production of goods using machinery?
a. Manufacturing **b.** Green energy **c.** Collaboration **d.** Transformation
12. refers to a person's way of thinking and set attitudes toward situations.
a. Insight **b.** Mindset **c.** Flexibility **d.** Collaboration
13. Personal qualities like communication and teamwork that help people work well together are called
a. backgrounds **b.** soft skills **c.** judgment **d.** mindset
14. To reveal a secret, often by accident, is to
a. transformation **b.** stay ahead of the curve
c. think outside the box **d.** spill the beans
15. To be more advanced or better prepared than others in a certain area is to
a. insight **b.** stay ahead of the curve
c. think outside the box **d.** climb the career ladder
16. Which term means to think in a creative and unconventional way?
a. Backgrounds **b.** Spill the beans
c. Stay ahead of the curve **d.** Think outside the box
17. is a complete and significant change in form, appearance, or character.
a. Backgrounds **b.** Transformation **c.** Mindset **d.** Transportation
18. The education, experience, and history that shape a person's skills and knowledge are their
a. backgrounds **b.** workforce **c.** insight **d.** industry

2 Derivatives المشتقات

background		
background (n)	خَلْفِيَّة	- Many students come from different backgrounds .
background (v)	يَضَعُ فِي الْخَلْفِيَّةِ	- The artist backgrounded the main figure with soft colors.
backgrounder (n)	مُقَدِّمَةٌ - مُلَخِّص	- The report began with a short backgrounder on the topic.
collaboration		
collaboration (n)	تَعَاوُن	- Good collaboration helps teams succeed.
collaborate (v)	يَتَعَاوَن	- Scientists collaborate to solve global problems.
collaborative (adj)	تَعَاوُنِيّ	- They worked according to collaborative strategy.
collaborator (n)	شَرِيكَ - مُتَعَاوِن	- Each collaborator brought unique skills to the team.
management		
management (n)	إِدَارَةٌ	- Good management keeps a business running well.
manage (v)	يُدِير	- She manages a team of 20 employees.
managerial (adj)	إِدَارِيّ	- He has strong managerial experience.
manager (n)	مُدِير	- The manager approved the new budget.

flexibility		
flexibility (n)	مَرُوْنَة	- Flexibility is important in the workplace.
flexible (adj)	مَرِن	- She has a flexible schedule.
flexibly (adv)	بِمَرُوْنَة	- He flexibly adapted to the changes.
inflexibility (n)	عَدَمُ المَرُوْنَة	- Inflexibility can slow down progress.
industry		
industry (n)	صِنَاعَة - نَشَاطٌ اِقْتِصَادِيّ	- Tourism is a major industry .
industrial (adj)	صِنَاعِيّ	- The city is known for its industrial zone.
industrialization (n)	تَصْنِيع	- Industrialization changed the economy.
insight		
insight (n)	بَصِيْرَة - الاسْتَبْصَار	- Her insight helped solve the problem.
insightful (adj)	نَافِذُ البَصِيْرَة	- That was an insightful comment.
insightfully (adv)	بِنبَصِيْرَة	- He insightfully explained the issue.
insights (n)	أَفْكَار - رُؤَى	- The report offered valuable insights .
judgment		
judgment (n)	حُكْم - تَمْيِيز - بَصِيْرَة	- Good judgment is essential for a leader.
judge (v)	يَحْكُم	- Don't judge a book by its cover.
judgmental (adj)	حُكْمِيّ - نَاقِد	- Try not to be too judgmental .
literacy		
literacy (n)	مَعْرِفَة القِرَاءَة وَالْكِتَابَة	- Literacy is vital for education.
literate (adj)	مُتَعَلِّم	- He is computer literate .
illiteracy (n)	الْأُمِّيَة	- The campaign aims to reduce illiteracy .
illiterate (adj)	أُمِّي	- Many people in rural areas are illiterate .
manufacturing		
manufacturing (n)	تَصْنِيع	- Manufacturing cars requires advanced machinery.
manufacture (v)	يُصْنَع	- The factory manufactures clothes.
manufacturer (n)	مُصْنَع	- This company is a major car manufacturer .
manufactured (adj)	مُصْنَع	- They sell manufactured goods.
mindset		
mindset (n)	عَقْلِيَّة	- A positive mindset helps in tough times.
mind (n)	عَقْل	- He has a brilliant mind .
mindful (adj)	مُتَنَبِّه - مُذْرِك	- Be mindful of your words.
mindfully (adv)	بِوَعْي	- She mindfully considered his advice.

transformation	
transformation (n) تَحْوِيل - تَحْوِيل	- The city has seen a huge transformation .
transform (v) يُحَوِّل	- Education can transform lives.
transformative (adj) تَحْوِيلِي - مُغَيِّر	- It was a transformative experience.
transformed (adj) مُتَحَوِّل - مُغَيِّر	- The garden looked transformed after the rain.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The noise in the made it hard to concentrate.
a. backgrounds b. background c. backgrounder d. backgrounded
- The report started with a short on the topic.
a. backgrounds b. background's c. backgrounder d. backgrounded
- Scientists often to solve environmental problems.
a. collaboration b. collaborate c. collaborative d. collaborator
- The two companies signed a agreement.
a. collaborate b. collaborations c. collaborative d. collaborator
- Each contributed special skills to the project.
a. collaborate b. collaboration c. collaborative d. collaborator
- Good time keeps a company running smoothly.
a. manage b. management c. managerial d. manager
- She was promoted to a position last year.
a. manage b. managements c. managerial d. managers
- The decided to expand the business.
a. manage b. managements c. managerial d. managers
- You have in this job and you can choose how to do things.
a. flexibly b. flexibility c. inflexibility d. flexible
- A person can adapt easily to change.
a. flexibly b. flexible c. inflexibility d. flexibility
- Zein's refusal to cooperate showed great
a. flexibility b. flexible c. inflexibility d. flexibly
- Tourism is a major in our country.
a. industrial b. industry c. industrialize d. industrialization
- The city is home to many zones.
a. industry b. industrial c. industrialize d. industrialized

2. "Solar panels are good examples of green energy." 'Green energy' is similar in meaning to
 a. sustainable energy b. nuclear power c. fossil fuels
 d. renewable energy e. industrial waste
3. The opposite of "insight" is ".....".
 a. ignorance b. confusion c. blindness
 d. assumption e. observation
4. "Her insight helped find a quick solution." 'Insight' means
 a. perception b. guess c. opinion
 d. understanding e. knowledge
5. The opposite of 'spill the beans' is
 a. climb the ladder b. keep quiet c. fall behind
 d. share secrets e. conceal
6. "His positive mindset helped face challenges." 'Mindset' means
 a. outlook b. intelligent c. attitude
 d. personality e. belief
7. The opposite of 'stay ahead of the curve' is
 a. follow trends b. avoid change c. fall behind
 d. lag slightly e. lag
8. The opposite of 'think outside the box' is
 a. stay traditional b. follow convention c. conform
 d. act normally e. avoid risks
9. "The law caused transformation in education." 'Transformation' means
 a. shift b. disruption c. change
 d. reform e. improvement
10. "The workforce is highly skilled." 'Workforce' means
 a. managers b. employees c. staff members
 d. personnel e. labor union

6 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

arrange for someone	يُرْتَبِّبُ لِشَخْصٍ أَنْ يَفْعَلَ شَيْئًا	mental flexibility	المُرُونَةُ الذَّهْنِيَّةُ
to do something		problem-solving workshops	وَرَشُ حَلِّ الْمَشْكَلَاتِ
climb the career ladder	يَتَقَدَّمُ فِي السُّلَمِ الْوُضَيْفِيِّ	soft skills	المَهَارَاتُ الشَّخْصِيَّةُ
continuous learning	التَّعْلُمُ الْمُسْتَمِرُّ	stay ahead of the curve	يَبْقَى مُتَقَدِّمًا عَلَى الْآخَرِينَ
digital transformation	التَّحَوُّلُ الرَّقْمِيُّ	think outside the box	يَفَكِّرُ خَارِجَ الْإِطَارِ التَّقْلِيدِيِّ
growth mindset	عَقْلِيَّةُ النُّمُو		

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

arrange for	يُرَتَّبُ لِـ	keep up with	يُؤَاجِبُ
deal with	يَتَغَاوَلُ مَعَ	participate in	يُشَارِكُ فِي
focus on	يُرَكِّزُ عَلَى	prepare for	يَسْتَعِدُّ لِـ
get along with	يَتَوَافَقُ مَعَ	stay ahead of	يَتَقَدَّمُ عَلَى
invest in	يَسْتَثْمِرُ فِي		

Mini Test 5 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Creative employees are encouraged to outside the box when finding solutions.
a. think b. move c. stay d. care
- To remain competitive in business, companies must ahead of the curve.
a. take b. climb c. stay d. go
- Ahmed worked hard to the career ladder in his company.
a. make b. climb c. take d. move
- A person with a mindset welcomes challenges and new learning opportunities.
a. fix b. background c. growth d. lock
- Teamwork, communication, and empathy are examples of skills.
a. strong b. hard c. soft d. fast
- The manager will for the technician to install the new software.
a. arrange b. create c. take d. fix
- Workers should focus improving their communication skills.
a. for b. on c. with d. in
- Students often participate school activities.
a. for b. on c. in d. with
- It's important to prepare your final exams well in advance.
a. for b. on c. in d. at
- Many companies invest renewable energy projects.
a. in b. of c. at d. on
- To stay informed, you must keep up the latest industry news.
a. in b. with c. at d. for
- The school will arrange a car to take us tomorrow.
a. with b. for c. in d. on
- Good managers know how to deal difficult situations calmly.
a. to b. at c. for d. with

construction - structure

عملية البناء

• **construction (n)**

- The process of building something, such as a house, bridge, or road.

عَمَلِيَّةُ إِنشَاءِ مَبْنًى أَوْ جَسَرٍ أَوْ طَرِيقٍ

- The **construction** of the new hospital will take two years.

• **structure (n)**

بناء = تركيب هيكل

- The arrangement, design, or framework of something built. التَّزْيِيبُ أَوْ التَّصْمِيمُ أَوْ الإِطَارُ لِشَيْءٍ مَبْنًى.
- The Eiffel Tower's **structure** is made of iron.

digital literacy - computer skills

الإلمام الرقمي

• **digital literacy (n)**

- The ability to find, evaluate, and use digital information safely and effectively, including understanding online safety and responsible use.

الْقُدْرَةُ عَلَى التَّخَبُّرِ وَتَقْيِيمِ وَاسْتِخْدَامِ الْمَعْلُومَاتِ الرُّقْمِيَّةِ بِأَمَانٍ وَفَعَالِيَّةٍ.

- **Digital literacy** includes knowing how to check if a website is trustworthy.

• **computer skills (n)**

مَهَارَاتُ الْخَاسُوبِ

- The ability to operate a computer and use basic software programs.

الْقُدْرَةُ عَلَى تَشْغِيلِ الْخَاسُوبِ وَاسْتِخْدَامِ الْبَرَامِجِ الْأَسَاسِيَّةِ.

- Typing quickly is part of basic **computer skills**.

innovation - invention

الابتكار

• **innovation (n)**

- A new idea, method, or improvement to an existing product or process.

فِكْرَةٌ أَوْ طَرِيقَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ أَوْ تَطْوِيرٌ لِمُتَلَجٍّ أَوْ عَمَلِيَّةٌ مُوجُودَةٌ

- The Monorail is an **innovation** in the field of transportation.

الإختراع

• **invention (n)**

- The creation of something entirely new that did not exist before.

صُنْعُ شَيْءٍ جَدِيدٍ لَمْ يَكُنْ مُوجُودًا مِنْ قَبْلُ.

- The first telephone was an **invention**.

institution - organization

مُؤَسَّسَةٌ

• **institution (n)**

- An established system or large public body, often related to education, government, or culture.

هَيْئَةٌ رَسْمِيَّةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ تَعْمَلُ فِي مَجَالِ التَّعْلِيمِ أَوْ الْحُكُومَةِ أَوْ الثَّقَافَةِ.

- The University of Oxford is a famous educational **institution**.

مُنَظَّمَةٌ

• **organization (n)**

- A group of people with a specific purpose, such as a company, club, or charity.

مَجْمُوعَةٌ أَشْخَاصٍ لَهُمْ هَدَفٌ مُعَيَّنٌ مِثْلُ شَرِكَةٍ أَوْ نَادٍ أَوْ جُمُوعِيَّةٍ خَيْرِيَّةٍ.

- Greenpeace is an environmental **organization**.

soft skills - hard skills

• soft skills (n)

المهارات الشخصية

- Personal qualities and interpersonal abilities that help in working and communicating effectively, such as teamwork, communication, and empathy.

الصفات الشخصية والمهارات الاجتماعية التي تساعد في العمل والتواصل بفعالية.

- Employers value **soft skills** like active listening.

• hard skills (n)

المهارات التقنية

- Specific, measurable abilities often learned through training, such as programming, operating machinery, or accounting.

القدرات المحددة والقابلة للقياس والتي تُكتسب عن طريق التدريب.

- **Hard skills** like coding are essential for software developers.

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Employers often look for candidates with strong skills like teamwork and empathy.
a. hard b. soft c. computer d. innovation
- Coding, speaking more than one language, and accounting are examples of skills.
a. soft b. structure c. growth d. hard
- Understanding online safety is part of literacy.
a. skills b. digital c. soft d. invention
- Typing quickly and using spreadsheets are basic skills.
a. innovation b. digital c. structure d. computer
- A small change that improves an existing product is called a/an
a. invention b. innovation c. construction d. institution
- Creating the first light bulb was a/an
a. invention b. innovation c. organization d. structure
- The of the bridge will take about three years to complete.
a. structure b. invention c. institution d. construction
- The steel of the skyscraper is extremely strong.
a. structure b. construction c. innovation d. organization
- Cairo University is a world-famous educational
a. organization b. institution c. invention d. structure
- The Red Crescent is an international humanitarian
a. computer b. institution c. innovation d. organization
- A school is an example of a/an that provides learning to the public.
a. invention b. institution c. structure d. digital
- Microsoft is a large software with offices around the world.
a. organization b. institution c. construction d. innovation

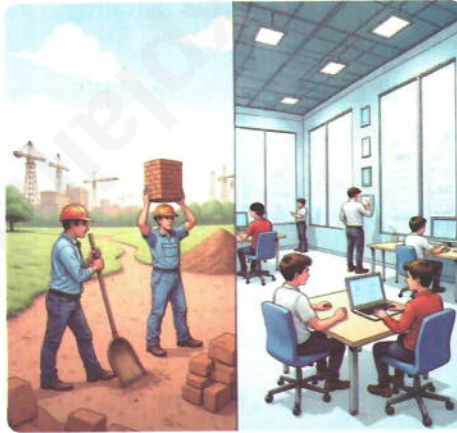
III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Text

- on Lesson 1 SB pages 69 & 70

In the past, many jobs depended on **physical**⁽¹⁾ **effort**⁽²⁾. Workers were expected to use their strength in industries like farming, **manufacturing**⁽³⁾, or construction. Today, however, workplaces increasingly have machines perform these tasks. Companies often get advanced systems to complete **repetitive**⁽⁴⁾ jobs, allowing human workers to focus on tasks that require creativity and **judgment**⁽⁵⁾.



As roles change, employers now have staff develop soft skills, including critical thinking, communication, and emotional intelligence. These abilities cannot be replaced by machines and are essential in modern work environments. For instance, many organizations get their teams to participate in **problem-solving**⁽⁶⁾ **workshops**⁽⁷⁾ or online training programs to improve **collaboration**⁽⁸⁾.

Digital **transformation**⁽⁹⁾ also means businesses **frequently**⁽¹⁰⁾ have **employees**⁽¹¹⁾ trained in **digital literacy**⁽¹²⁾, **data management**⁽¹³⁾, and remote work tools such as "Zoom" and "Google Meet". Workers who want to **stay ahead of the curve**⁽¹⁴⁾ must be **open**⁽¹⁵⁾ to continuous learning and ready to **think outside the box**⁽¹⁶⁾.

Governments and educational **institutions**⁽¹⁷⁾ also play a role. They get training programs designed to help students prepare for roles that technology can't fully **handle**⁽¹⁸⁾. The focus is no longer on physical strength, but on mental **flexibility**⁽¹⁹⁾ and human **insight**⁽²⁰⁾. Those who want to **climb the career ladder**⁽²¹⁾ must build a **mindset**⁽²²⁾ of growth and learning.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) جَسَدِيّ
- (2) جُهْد
- (3) تَصْنِيع
- (4) مَتَكَرِّر
- (5) حُكْم
- (6) حَلّ الْمَشْكَلَات
- (7) وَرَشُ الْعَقْلِ
- (8) تَعَاوُن
- (9) تَحْوِيل
- (10) بِشَكْلِ مُتَكَرِّر
- (11) مُوظَّفُون
- (12) الثَّقَافَةُ الرَّقْمِيَّة
- (13) إِدَارَةُ الْبَيِّنَات
- (14) يَتَقَدَّم عَلَى الْآخَرِينَ
- (15) مُنْفِج
- (16) يُفَكِّر بِإِنْدَاع
- (17) مُؤَسَّسَات
- (18) يَتَغَامَل
- (19) مَرُوْنَة
- (20) تَبْصِيرَة
- (21) يَرْتَقِي فِي السَّلَمِ الْوُضُفِي
- (22) غَفْلِيَّة

2 Listening Text

on Lesson 2 SB page 72

In the future, the **workforce**⁽¹⁾ will look very different. Technology and artificial intelligence (AI) will **take over**⁽²⁾ many **routine**⁽³⁾ tasks. As a result, workers will need to focus on skills that machines cannot easily **copy**⁽⁴⁾. These include creativity, problem-solving, communication, and emotional intelligence. People will also need to keep learning new things to stay **up to date**⁽⁵⁾.



(1) القوة العاملة

(2) يتولى مسؤولية

(3) روتيني

(4) ينسخ / يقلد

(5) مواكب للآخر

(6) الرعاية الصحية

(7) الطاقة النظيفة

(8) خلفيات

(9) شائع

(10) قابل للتكيف

Jobs in **health care**⁽⁶⁾, **green energy**⁽⁷⁾, and technology are expected to grow quickly. Teamwork and flexibility will be important as people work with others from different places and **backgrounds**⁽⁸⁾. Remote work and digital tools will become more **common**⁽⁹⁾, so digital literacy will be essential. In short, future workers must be **adaptable**⁽¹⁰⁾, ready to learn, and able to work with both people and technology.

أحرص على اقتناء

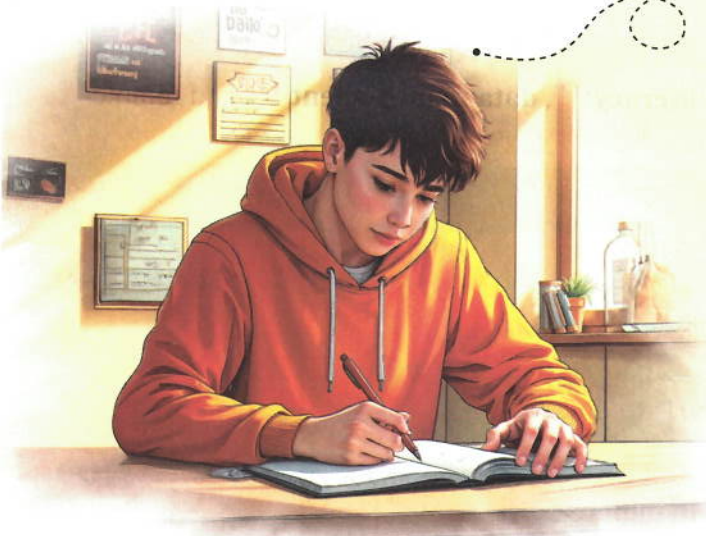
كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

لصف 3 الثانوي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

امنح نفسك لمن يستحق





SB pages 74 : 76

PART TWO

Lesson

3

The Rapid Change in Technology

I LISTENING

on Lesson 3 SB page 74

Technology is changing faster than ever before. Every year, new devices appear, and old ones quickly become **outdated**⁽¹⁾. Smartphones are now **pocket-sized**⁽²⁾ computers, and powerful apps connect people across the world in seconds. Teachers emphasize that today's students use technology for learning, while doctors have patients diagnosed more **accurately**⁽³⁾ by machine. Explain that machines help them diagnose patients more accurately.

At the same time, **workplaces**⁽⁴⁾ are also changing. Many companies now use advanced machines, robots, and artificial intelligence to have tasks finished faster. A **factory manager**⁽⁵⁾ said that robots could work all day without rest, and an engineer added that new machines were improving production every month. People everywhere notice that technology makes life easier but also **requires**⁽⁶⁾ **constant**⁽⁷⁾ learning.

However, **rapid change**⁽⁸⁾ brings challenges. Some jobs disappear, and workers must learn new skills. Scientists warn that people should use technology responsibly to avoid risks like pollution or **over-dependence**⁽⁹⁾ on machines. Still, many experts emphasize that if humans use technology wisely, it can **create opportunities**⁽¹⁰⁾, save time, and improve the quality of life. The future depends on how we **adapt to**⁽¹¹⁾ this **fast-moving world**⁽¹²⁾. All people will have different jobs done at homes and at work. Doctors, engineers and teachers will make robots help them at anytime.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) قديم/غير مواكب للعصر
- (2) صغير الحجم
- (3) بدقة
- (4) أماكن العمل
- (5) مدير مصنع
- (6) يتطلب
- (7) دائم
- (8) تغير سريع
- (9) الاعتماد الزائد
- (10) يخلق فرص عمل
- (11) يتكيف مع
- (12) عالم سريع الحركة

II LANGUAGE

Causative Verbs : (make - let / allow - stop)

1

make

يجعل / يجبر

١ يُستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى (يجعل/ يجبر) في المبني للمعلوم كما يلي:

- Subj. فاعل + make (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + inf. المصدر.
- Mr Mohammed **made** the students **work** hard. (NOT: to work)
 - Mum **makes** me **do** the shopping. (NOT: to do).

٢ وفي المبني للمجهول تكون الصيغة كما يلي:

- Obj. مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + made + to + inf. المصدر.
- The students **were made to work** hard (by Mr Mohammed).
 - I **am made to do** the shopping (by mum).

٢ الفعل (make) هو الذي يحدد زمن الجملة:

- Leen **makes** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (مضارع بسيط معلوم)
- Rokaya **is made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (مضارع بسيط مجهول)
- Leen **was making** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (ماضي مستمر معلوم)
- Rokaya **was being made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (ماضي مستمر مجهول)
- Leen **has made** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (مضارع تام معلوم)
- Rokaya **has been made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (مضارع تام مجهول)
- Leen **will make** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (مستقبل بسيط معلوم)
- Rokaya **will be made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (مستقبل بسيط مجهول)

٤ تتحول ضمائر المفعول إلى ضمائر فاعل عند استخدامها في بداية الجملة المبينة للمجهول والعكس بالنسبة لضمير الفاعل :

I	we	you	he	she	it	they
me	us	you	him	her	it	them

لاحظ ذلك في المثال التالي :

- **He** made **me** wait for an hour. (معلوم)
- **I** was made to wait for an hour (by **him**). (مجهول)

٥ لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبني للمعلوم:

- Subj. فاعل + make (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + inf. المصدر
- Subj. فاعل + force (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + to + inf. المصدر
- The manager **made** the employees **do** extra hours.
- The manager **forced** the employees **to do** extra hours.

٦ لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبني للمجهول:

- Obj. مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + made/ forced + to + inf. المصدر
- The employees **were made to do** extra hours.
- The employees **were forced to do** extra hours.

٧ لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

- Subj. فاعل + make (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + adj. صفة
- The good news **has made** us **happy**.

2

let – allow

يسمح / يدع

١ يُستخدم الفعلين (let/allow) بمعنى (يسمح/يدع) في الصيغة السببية في المبني للمعلوم كما يلي:

- Subj. فاعل + let (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + inf. المصدر
 → Subj. فاعل + allowed (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + to + inf. المصدر
- My father **let** me **go** out with my friends. (NOT: to go)
 - My father **allowed** me **to go** out with my friends. (NOT: go)
 - Omar **lets** the children **play** in the garden. (NOT: to play)
 - Omar **allows** the children **to play** in the garden. (NOT: play)

٢ في المبني للمجهول يُستخدم الفعل (allow) فقط وليس (let):

- Obj. مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + allowed + to + inf. المصدر
- I **was allowed to go** out with my friends (by my father). (NOT: was let)
 - The children **are allowed to play** in the garden (by Omar). (NOT: are let)

٣ لاحظ استخدام (let) مع الضمائر المنعكسة في الصيغة التالية:

- ... let + myself/himself/herself/itself/yourself/yourselves/ourselves/themselves + be + p.p. ...
- He **let himself be tricked** by a stranger. - Don't **let yourselves be laughed at**.
 - وفي حالة وجود فعل لازم (لا يأخذ مفعول) بعد الضمير المنعكس نستخدم (inf.) وليس (be + p.p.):
 - She let herself **fall** off her bike. (NOT: be fallen)

٤ في حالة وجود مفعول مباشرة بعد (allow) يأتي بعدهما (to + inf.):

- ... allow + obj. + to + inf.
- Mr Ayman doesn't **allow anyone to use** the office laptop.
 - وفي حالة عدم وجود مفعول مباشرة بعد (allow) يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) في المبني للمعلوم:
 - Mr Ayman doesn't **allow using** the office laptop.

٥ لاحظ الصيغ التالية:

- ... allow + obj. + noun - The law **allows citizens freedom**.
 → ... allow + noun - The law **allows freedom**.

3

stop ... from

يمنع ... من

١ يُستخدم الفعل (stop) بمعنى (يمنع/يوقف) في المبني للمعلوم كما يلي:

- Subj. فاعل + stop (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + from + (inf. + ing) ...
- Subj. فاعل + stop (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + (inf. + ing) ...
- Mr Ali **has stopped** us **from making** noise. - Mr Ali **has stopped** us **making** noise.

٢ يُستخدم الفعل (stop) بمعنى (يمنع/يوقف) في المبني للمجهول كما يلي:

- Obj. مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + stopped + from + (inf. + ing) ...
- We **have been stopped from making** noise (by Mr Ali).

General Exercise On Language

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The teacher made us the classroom.
a. to clean b. clean c. cleaning d. cleaned
2. My parents me finish my project before they let me watch a movie.
a. stop b. get c. tell d. make
3. My father always us to sleep early when we have exams. We have to obey his order!
a. lets b. persuades c. makes d. allows
4. Do your parents let you out later at holidays?
a. stay b. to stay c. to staying d. staying
5. Samy let his friends use his bicycle. This means that he them to use it.
a. made b. allowed c. forced d. suggested
6. Mr Ashraf made us the essay again.
a. write b. writing c. to write d. be written
7. We were made the essay again.
a. write b. writing c. to write d. be written
8. Can you tell me what has made get so nervous?
a. herself b. she c. hers d. her
9. I happy when I heard about your success.
a. made b. was made c. allowed d. was allowed
10. We are to follow the law.
a. made b. forced c. a & b d. let
11. The officer forced to put his gun down and raise his hands.
a. he b. him c. his d. himself
12. Never a little child to go out on their own.
a. let b. make c. allow d. a & b
13. Never a little child go out on their own.
a. let b. make c. allow d. a & b
14. I don't allow others my bike.
a. to ride b. ride c. riding d. to be ridden
15. I don't let others my bike.
a. to ride b. ride c. riding d. to be ridden
16. I don't allow my bike.
a. to ride b. ride c. riding d. to be ridden
17. You are the right to vote.
a. let b. made c. stopped d. allowed
18. They personal calls at work.
a. aren't allowed b. aren't let c. let d. are made

19. I stopped the children on the grass.
 a. from walking b. walking c. a & b d. to walk
20. I made her tell the truth. was made to tell the truth.
 a. She b. Her c. I d. Me
21. My parents never allow..... to the cinema during exams.
 a. go b. to go c. to going d. going

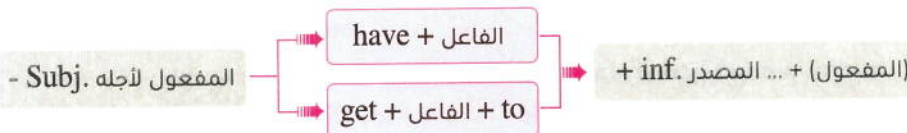
Feedback Exercise

22. Sorrowfully, no one does their task well, ?
 a. do they b. don't they c. does he d. doesn't he
23. She was tired, so she returned early.
 a. to home b. home c. the home d. a home
24. He silly mistakes, does he ?
 a. never made b. has c. never makes d. makes

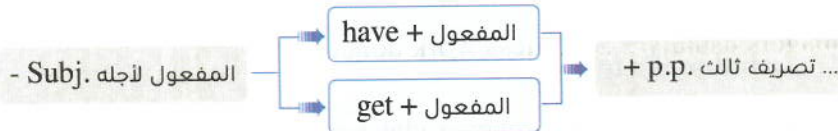
Causative form

صيغة المفعول لأجله (المُسبب)

- تُستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لتعني أن الفاعل أقنع أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل.
- نستخدم في هذه الصيغة الفعلين (have / get) حسب الزمن
- وتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمجهول كالتالي:



- I **had my sister water** the flowers. (جعلت أختي تروي الزهور لأجلي)
- I **got my sister to water** the flowers. (أقنعت أختي أن تروي الزهور لأجلي)
- وتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمجهول كالتالي :



- I **had / got the flowers watered** (by my sister). (لقد تم ريّ الزهور لي)

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- يمكن وضع الفاعل بعد (by) في الصيغة المبني للمجهول :
- Marwa **gets** the babies **looked after** by her mother.
- تستخدم ضمائر المفعول وليس ضمائر الفاعل بعد (have / get) في هذه الصيغة :
- Walid had me feed the birds. (NOT: had I ...)
- I'm worried about my eyes. I get them checked regularly. (NOT: get they ...)
- يتم النفي وتكوين السؤال حسب زمن (have / get):
- Mum doesn't have lunch prepared. (NOT: hasn't lunch ...)
- Did you have anyone help you? (NOT : Had you ...)

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

١ في المبني للمعلوم يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بدلاً من (inf. / to + inf.) في اللغة الدارجة كالتالي:

→ Subj. + (inf. + ing) + agent الفاعل + have (حسب الزمن) + agent + the agent للمفعول لأجله.

→ Subj. + (inf. + ing) + agent الفاعل + get (حسب الزمن) + agent + the agent للمفعول لأجله.

- Nada **had** her friends **helping** her during the party.

- Nada **got** her friends **helping** her during the party.

٢ يمكن استخدام الفعل (help) في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:

→ Subj. + help + agent الفاعل + inf.

- Amr **helped** us (to) **solve** our problems.

٣ يمكن استخدام الفعل (permit / require...) بمعنى (يسمح / يتطلب) كالتالي:

→ Subj. + permit / require ... + agent الفاعل + to + inf.

- Hussein **permits** his friends **to use** his calculator.

General Exercises On Language

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

- She hasn't had her knives yet.
a. sharpen b. to sharpen c. sharpened d. sharpening
- She got the curtains yesterday.
a. cleans b. cleaning c. cleaned d. to clean
- I'll have my bookcase next week.
a. delivered b. deliver c. will deliver d. to deliver
- We our washing machine installed last night, so now we can wash our clothes.
a. get b. got c. allow d. make
- Stupid managers usually less work done.
a. prevent b. allow c. get d. let
- I went to the oculist's to my eyes checked.
a. allow b. let c. prepare d. have
- The boss got the employees till late at night.
a. to work b. be working c. work d. worked
- I got my hair before the wedding.
a. cut b. cuts c. cutting d. to cut
- My mother has me the shopping every week.
a. do b. done c. to do d. had done
- Dina last week.
a. gets her house to decorate b. has her house decorated
c. got her house to decorate d. had her house decorated
- Ali got his credit card
a. change b. to change c. changing d. changed

12. Wait there and I'll someone to help you with those bags.
 a. have b. get c. let d. make
13. After I had seen Dr Amr, I
 a. didn't have my teeth check b. didn't have my teeth checking
 c. hadn't had my teeth checked d. didn't have my teeth checked

2 Special Cases

14. I had him change his mind. This means that I change his mind.
 a. forced to him b. let him
 c. persuaded him to d. hoped he would
15. Adel He made it himself.
 a. cooks his dinner b. cooked his dinner
 c. has his dinner cooked d. had his dinner cooked
16. Sometimes, my friend me borrow his car.
 a. lets b. allows c. gets d. permits
17. We need to our computer checked out for viruses.
 a. make b. have c. let d. allow
18. Zamzam her clothes washed. She washes them by herself.
 a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. hadn't d. had never
19. We were angry with Ali. He had laughed at by all our colleagues.
 a. ourselves b. we c. ours d. us
20. your meal prepared before you went home?
 a. Had you b. Have you had c. Had you had d. Do you have

3 Check your understanding

21. "I paid a carpenter to fix the door." This means
 a. I made a carpenter pay for fixing the door. b. I got a carpenter fixed the door.
 c. I had a carpenter fixed the door. d. I got a carpenter to fix the door.
22. "I had my lunch cooked." This means
 a. I cooked my lunch. b. someone cooked my lunch for me.
 c. I cooked my lunch for someone. d. I got my lunch cooking.
23. "I made my brother do the shopping" What does this mean?
 a. I got my brother to do the shopping. b. I got my brother to go shopping.
 c. I had the shopping done by my brother. d. a, b & c
24. "I usually do not have anyone clean my room." This means I usually
 a. have my room cleaned b. clean my room
 c. get my room cleaned d. get my room to clean
25. "Sama had someone water the flowers." What does this mean?
 a. Sama didn't water the flowers herself. b. Sama hadn't the flowers watered.
 c. Sama didn't get the flowers watered. d. Sama didn't get the flowers to water.
26. "I wrote the report for Omar after he had told me to." This means Omar write the report.
 a. made I b. had me c. got I d. b & c

27. "Did you ask anyone to help you?" I said, ".....".
 a. Did you make anyone to help you? b. Had you anyone helped you?
 c. Did you have anyone help you? d. a & b
28. "Mum got Leen to set the table for lunch." This means
 a. Mum got the table set for lunch by Leen.
 b. Mum had Leen to set the table for lunch.
 c. Mum had Leen setting the table for lunch.
 d. a & c

Stop Here !

تدريب تلقائي على القواعد اللغوية

• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. Guests do not have permission to enter this area. (permitted)
2. Hossam arranged for his car to be repaired. (got a mechanic)
3. I persuaded my brother to carry my bag. (got)
4. I was assisted to complete the task by Sama. (helped)
5. Malak had her friends help her with the project. (got)
6. Mr Ismail let the students use calculators. (allowed)
7. Mrs Nagah has compelled Zeinab to rewrite her essay. (has made)
8. My father allowed me to drive his car. (let)
9. Nour persuaded the technician to fix her laptop. (fixed)
10. Only trained staff can use this machine. (allowed)
11. Some workers were permitted to leave after six. (allowed)
12. The coach forced the players to run five laps. (made)
13. The manager has arranged for the new computers to be installed yesterday. (has had)
14. The school let us organize a charity event. (permitted)
15. The teacher got the students to submit their essays. (had)
16. The teacher permitted the students to leave early. (let)
17. This story causes children to laugh. (makes)
18. We had the documents signed by the director. (got)
19. We will ask the stairs to be cleaned by the workers. (will have)
20. Yasmeeen assisted me to finish the assignment. (helped)

A bit advanced

21. My mother allowed me to stay up late. (let)
22. My parents made me apologize (was made)
23. Smoking is banned inside the building. (let)
24. The children were permitted to enter the park. (let)
25. The film was so sad that it made everyone cry. (was made)
26. The strange noise makes us feel uneasy. (made)
27. Zeina arranged for a taxi to pick her up at 7. (picked)



SB pages 77 : 81

PART THREE

Lessons

4 & 5

► The Power of Human Connection
► Life in the Year 2050
My AI Assistant

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advance(d) (v-adj)	يَتَقَدَّم - مُتَقَدِّم	lonely (adj)	وَحِيد
capture (d) (v)	يَسْتَوْلِي - يَلْقُط صورة - يجسد	magic (n-adj)	سِحْر - سِحْرِي
creation (n)	إِبْدَاع	plot (n)	خَبْطَة القصة
curious (adj)	فُضُولِي	recreate(d) (v)	يُعِيدُ الإِبْدَاع - يُجَدِّد - يستجِم
diagnose(d) (v)	يُسَخِّص (مرض)	soul (n)	رُوح
emotion (n)	عَاطِفَة	warmth (n)	دِفء
imitate(d) (v)	يُقَلِّد	whisper(ed) (v-n)	يَهْمَس - همسة
leading (adj)	بَارِز		

2 Important Vocabulary

accuracy (n)	دِقَّة	instantly (adv)	عَلَى الْفُور
analyze(d) (v)	يُحَلِّل	introduce(d) (v)	يُقَدِّم - يَطْرَح
app (n)	تَطْبِيق	lost (adj)	ضَائِع
assistant (n)	مُسَاعِد	match(ed) (v)	يُضَاهِي
basic (adj)	أَسَاسِي	memorable (adj)	لَا يُنْسَى
brave (adj)	شَجَاع	metaphors (n)	إِسْتِغَارَة (بلاغة)
compose(d) (v)	يُؤَلِّف	miss(ed) (v)	يَفْتَقِد
conflict (n)	صِرَاع	missing (adj)	مَفْقُود
connection	تَرَابُط - تَوَاضُل	mistake (n)	خَطَا
contract (n)	عَقْد	narrative (adj-n)	تَسْرِيدي - عمل سردي
controlled (adj)	مُسَيَّطَر عَلَيْهِ	own (adj)	خَاص
description (n)	وُصْف	powerful (adj)	قَوِي
dialog (n)	جَوَار	quiet (adj)	هَادِئ
elderly (adj)	مُسِيَّن	rainy (adj)	مَطِير
expression (n)	تَغْيِير	react(ed) (v)	يَسْتَجِيب
fields (n)	مَجَالَات	reflection (n)	تَفَكُّر/تَذَبُّر - انعكاس
firefly (n)	خَشِرَة مُضِيئَة	remind (ed) (v)	يُذَكِّر
flawless (adj)	خَالٍ مِنَ الْعُيُوب	response (n)	رَد
forget - forgot - forgotten (v)	يُنْسَى	sequence (n)	تَسْلُسُل
future-proof (adj)	مَضْمُونُ الْمُسْتَقْبَل	smart (adj)	ذَكِي
gasp(ed) (n-v)	اِنْبَهَار - يَنْبَهَر	smile(d) (n-v)	اِبْتِسَامَة - يَتَسَم
guide(d) (v-n)	يُوجِّه/يُزَيِّد - مُرَبِّد	soft (adj)	نَاعِم
humanity (n)	إِنْسَانِيَّة	softly (adv)	بَلُطَف
imagine(d) (v)	يَتَخِيل	spark (n)	شَرَارَة
income (n)	دَخْل	storytelling (n)	تَسْرِد القِصص
		tears (n)	دُمُوع

tell stories (n)
theme (n)
wonder(ed) (v)

سرد القصص
موضوع أسابي
يتساءل

wake up - woke - woken (v)
yet (adv)

يستيقظ
ومع ذلك

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Key vocabulary

- Adam tried to his teacher's handwriting for fun.
a. advance b. introduce c. imitate d. forget
- Aya tried to the old photo using a computer.
a. capture b. match c. compose d. recreate
- Dr Abdullah will the patient before starting treatment.
a. diagnose b. compose c. match d. react
- Leen speaks with deep when talking about her family.
a. magic b. emotion c. warning d. humanity
- Many believe kindness is the true of a person.
a. accuracy b. soul c. spark d. magic
- Mohammed managed to to a higher position after years of hard work.
a. advance b. capture c. compose d. introduce
- Omar is the candidate for the student council president.
a. brave b. leading c. lonely d. basic
- Rodayna was so about the new phone that she asked many questions.
a. powerful b. lonely c. brave d. curious
- The electric heater in the room gave us a feeling of
a. warmth b. emotion c. connection d. theme
- The novel's was full of unexpected twists.
a. narrator b. sequence c. plot d. dialog
- The performer amazed the children with his tricks.
a. magic b. spark c. warmth d. theme
- The photographer tried to the beauty of the sunset.
a. advance b. capture c. compose d. react
- This painting is the most impressive by this young artist.
a. accuracy b. plot c. creation d. income
- Zein felt in the new city without friends.
a. smart b. basic c. lonely d. soft
- Zeinab could noticed Malak a secret to her sister Hala.
a. remind b. smile c. whisper d. guide

2 Important Vocabulary

16. A single of hope lit up her eyes.
a. warmth b. theme c. spark d. plot
17. Ahmed quickly to the sudden noise.
a. whispered b. guided c. matched d. reacted
18. Malak is always to learn new things.
a. smart b. curious c. basic d. soft
19. Basic grammar is the foundation for language learning.
a. quiet b. smart c. brave d. basic
20. Fatma felt when her friends forgot to invite her.
a. quiet b. smart c. lonely d. brave
21. He spoke to calm the frightened child.
a. instantly b. bravely c. softly d. powerfully
22. Her dress looked absolutely without a single tear.
a. basic b. curious c. flawless d. quiet
23. Her hands were and gentle.
a. soft b. quiet c. basic d. powerful
24. Her speech was so that everyone clapped.
a. memorable b. future-proof c. powerful d. soft
25. Hossam began to about the meaning of life.
a. whisper b. wonder c. compose d. react
26. Ayman felt a deep with his old friends.
a. connection b. warmth c. reaction d. plot
27. Hussein's report showed great in every detail.
a. sequence b. accuracy c. reflection d. expression
28. I really my friends when they travel abroad.
a. miss b. react c. capture d. compose
29. I usually at 6 a.m. on weekdays.
a. wake up b. forget c. miss d. react
30. I will you to bring your homework tomorrow.
a. remind b. whisper c. compose d. react
31. Imagine a world with no pollution and energy.
a. basic b. quiet c. lonely d. clean
32. Karim the data before presenting it to the team.
a. analyzed b. match c. composed d. reacted
33. Youssef looked after walking in the wrong street for hours.
a. powerful b. quiet c. soft d. lost
34. Many were affected by the new farming policy.
a. fields b. tears c. themes d. sparks

35. Mekka downloaded a new for learning languages.
 a. contract b. app c. guide d. spark
36. My new watch is very and is connected to my phone.
 a. quiet b. future-proof c. smart d. basic
37. Omar replied to the email without delay.
 a. softly b. instantly c. bravely d. quietly
38. Omar signed a with the publishing company.
 a. app b. contract c. guide d. plot
39. A child was reported after the storm.
 a. lonely b. smart c. quiet d. missing
40. Poets often use to make their writing more vivid.
 a. conflicts b. sparks c. metaphors d. apps
41. Radwan's face showed no at all.
 a. warmth b. spark c. emotion d. gasp
42. Reem's helped her finish the project on time.
 a. plot b. sequence c. assistant d. app
43. The man walked slowly down the street.
 a. powerful b. smart c. elderly d. basic
44. The art of is important for preserving culture.
 a. remind b. sequence c. storytelling d. reaction
45. The company's monthly increased after launching the new product.
 a. income b. accuracy c. reflection d. spark
46. The main of the story is "friendship."
 a. plot b. spark c. theme d. warmth
47. The principal will the new teacher to the staff.
 a. match b. compose c. introduce d. guide
48. The school trip was so that students kept talking about it.
 a. future-proof b. memorable c. basic d. soft
49. The shocking news made Areej loudly.
 a. whisper b. guide c. gasp d. react
50. The story followed a clear of events.
 a. reflection b. plot c. sequence d. description
51. The teacher assigned a essay for homework.
 a. narrative b. quiet c. soft d. future-proof
52. The teacher gave a clear of the new topic.
 a. sequence b. app c. description d. accuracy
53. The teacher stopped the game when a started among students.
 a. mistake b. theme c. conflict d. plot

54. The teacher's to the question was detailed.
 a. mistake b. spark c. response d. theme
55. The writer's on life was inspiring.
 a. plot b. sequence c. reflection d. spark
56. This key will not with the old lock.
 a. match b. capture c. recreate d. react
57. This software is and will still be useful in the future.
 a. leading b. future-proof c. powerful d. soft
58. True means showing kindness and helping others.
 a. humanity b. warmth c. connection d. spark
59. Walid loves to whenever there's a group of children.
 a. guide b. compose c. tell stories d. react
60. Youssef will a song for the school's anniversary.
 a. capture b. compose c. recreate d. react

3 A bit Tricky

هذا الجزء يعرض أفكار أسئلة التمييز الخاصة بالطلبة الفائقين في الامتحان

تنويه

61. Amira grew increasingly about the old locked room in her grandmother's house.
 a. lonely b. curious c. leading d. magic
62. Some believe music has the power to touch the human
 a. soul b. warmth c. creation d. magic
63. Rokaya leaned close to a secret to her best friend.
 a. recreate b. diagnose c. plot d. whisper
64. Khalid tried to his teacher's accent perfectly.
 a. plot b. diagnose c. imitate d. advance

II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Definitions تعريفات

advance(d) (v)	يَتَقَدَّم	to move forward or to develop or improve
capture (d) (v)	يَسْتَوْلِي - يَأْسِر - يَلْتَقِطُ صَوْرَةً	- to take someone as a prisoner or to take something by force or trap - to succeed in representing or recording something accurately using words, a picture, or film
creation (n)	إِبْدَاع	the act of making something that did not exist before; something that has been made
curious (adj)	فُضُولِي	having a strong desire to know or learn something
diagnose(d) (v)	يُشَخِّص	to identify the cause of an illness by examination of symptoms
emotion (n)	غَاظِفَةٌ	a strong feeling such as love, fear, or anger

imitate(d) (v)	يُقلِّد	to copy someone's behavior, speech, or actions
leading (adj)	بأول	most important or most successful; having a position at the front
lonely (adj)	وَحِيد	sad because you have no friends or people near you; unhappy because alone
magic (n)	سِحْر - سِحْرِي	the use of special powers to make things happen which seem impossible; a mysterious quality that makes something beautiful or interesting
plot (n)	خَبْكَ القصة	the sequence of events that form the story in a novel, film, etc.
recreate(d) (v)	يُعيدُ الإبداع - يُجدِّد - يستجم	- to make something exist or happen again, especially in order to refresh yourself - to give yourself enjoyment or relaxation; to refresh your mind or body
soul (n)	نُوح	the spiritual part of a person believed to give life to the body; the emotional nature of a human
warmth (n)	دِفء	the quality of being warm in temperature or showing affection and kindness
whisper(ed) (v)	يهمس - همسة	to speak very softly using your breath rather than your throat, especially for the sake of privacy

Mini Test 1 Definitions

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- A person or thing that is most important or successful is described as
a. magic b. whisper c. lonely d. leading
- If you have a strong desire to know or learn something, you are
a. leading b. lonely c. curious d. soft
- The sequence of events that form the story in a novel or film is called the
a. warmth b. whisper c. plot d. creation
- The word for "copying someone's behavior, speech, or actions" is
a. curious b. capture c. imitate d. leading
- The word for "speaking very softly using your breath rather than your throat" is
a. soul b. warmth c. leading d. whisper
- The word that means to move forward or make progress is
a. advance b. capture c. imitate d. diagnose
- means "a strong feeling such as love, fear, or anger".
a. Emotion b. Warmth c. Plot d. Creation
- This word means "the spiritual part of a person or their emotional nature".
a. Warmth b. Whisper c. Plot d. Soul
- means "using special powers to make impossible things happen, or a mysterious quality."
a. Magic b. Warmth c. Plot d. Soul

10. Which word refers to “the act of making something that did not exist before”?
 a. Warmth b. Whisper c. Magic d. Creation
11. To represent or record something accurately, often with words or pictures, is to
 a. advance b. recreate c. capture d. plot
12. When you feel sad because you have no friends or people around, you feel
 a. warmth b. lonely c. advance d. plot
13. Which word is used when a doctor identifies the cause of an illness by looking at symptoms?
 a. Whisper b. Soul c. Diagnose d. Magic
14. Which word means “to make something happen again, produce a new version, or refresh yourself”?
 a. Magic b. Plot c. Recreate d. Whisper
15. Which word means “to take someone prisoner or trap something”?
 a. Advance b. Capture c. Plot d. Soul
16. Which word refers to “the quality of being warm in temperature, or showing affection”?
 a. Warmth b. Magic c. Plot d. Recreate

2 Derivatives المشتقات

Advance		
advance (v)	يَتَقَدَّم	- Scientists advance knowledge through research.
advancement (n)	تَقَدُّم	- His advancement in the company was well-deserved.
advanced (adj)	مُتَقَدِّم	- They use advanced technology in their projects.
capture		
capture (v)	يَأْتِسِر / يُفْسِك	- The police captured the thief quickly.
captured (adj)	مَأْسُور / مَقْبُوض عَلَيْهِ	- The captured animal was released into the wild.
capturing (n)	أَسْر / إِمْسَاك	- Capturing the moment in a photo is an art.
creation		
creation (n)	إِبْدَاع / خَلْق	- The artist's latest creation amazed everyone.
create (v)	يَخْلُق / يَبْدِع	- Engineers create new designs all the time.
creative (adj)	إِبْدَاعِي	- She has a creative approach to problem-solving.
curious		
curious (adj)	فُضُولِي	- Children are often curious about the world.
curiosity (n)	فُضُول	- His curiosity led him to discover new ideas.
curiously (adv)	بِفُضُول	- She curiously examined the old book.

diagnose		
diagnose (v)	يُشخّص	- Doctors diagnose illnesses using tests.
diagnosed (adj)	مُشخّص / تم تشخيصه	- The patient was diagnosed with flu.
diagnosis (n)	تشخيص	- The diagnosis was confirmed by a specialist.
emotion		
emotion (n)	عاطفة	- Music can express deep emotion .
emotional (adj)	عاطفي	- It was an emotional moment for the family.
emotionally (adv)	عاطفيًا	- He was emotionally attached to his hometown.
imitate		
imitate (v)	يقلّد	- Students sometimes imitate their teachers.
imitation (n)	تقليد	- This necklace is an imitation of gold.
imitative (adj)	مقلّد	- His work is too imitative and lacks creativity.
leading		
leading (adj)	رائد / رئيسي	- She is a leading scientist in her field.
lead (v)	يَقُود	- Good teachers lead by example.
leader (n)	قائد	- The leader gave an inspiring speech.
lonely		
lonely (adj)	وَحِيد	- He felt lonely after moving to a new city.
loneliness (n)	وَحْدَة	- Loneliness can affect a person's health.
alone (adj)	وَحِيد	- She prefers to work alone .
magic		
magic (n)	سِخْر	- The magician amazed us with his magic .
magical (adj)	ساحر / سحري	- The sunset is a magical sight.
magically (adv)	بسِخْر	- The problem seemed to solve itself magically .
plot		
plot (n)	أحداث القِصة	- The movie's plot was exciting.
plot (v)	يَتَأَمَّر / يَرَسِّم (خُطّة)	- They plot to surprise their mother.
plotting (n)	تَذْيِير / تَخْطِيط	- Plotting a good story takes time.
recreate		
recreate (v)	يُعِيد الخَلْق / يُجَدِّد	- The team are recreating the ancient design.
recreation (n)	تَرْفيه / تَسْلِيَة	- Sports are a form of recreation .
recreational (adj)	تَرْفِيهي	- The park has many recreational areas.

soul		
soul (n)	رُوح	- Music touches the soul .
soulful (adj)	مُغَبِّر عاطفياً	- She sang a soulful song.
soulless (adj)	بلا رُوح	- The building felt cold and soulless .
warmth		
warmth (n)	دِفء	- The blanket gave me warmth .
warm (adj)	دافئ	- We sat by the warm fire.
warmly (adv)	بِدِفء	- She welcomed us warmly .
whisper		
whisper (v)	يَهْمِس	- He whispered the secret in my ear.
whisper (n)	هَمْس	- I heard a whisper in the dark.
whispered (adj)	مَهْمُوس	- His whispered words were hard to hear.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- During the conference, Mr Ayman managed to the discussion by introducing new research findings.
a. advance b. advanced c. advancement d. advancing
- Arwa's rapid in the company surprised everyone, as she became a manager in just two years.
a. advance b. advancing c. advancement d. advanced
- The new hospital wing is equipped with the most medical equipment in the region.
a. advance b. advancement c. advanced d. advancing
- The photographer was able to the perfect moment when the eagle took flight.
a. capture b. captured c. captures d. capturing
- After weeks of searching, the police finally the suspect in a small apartment.
a. captures b. capturing c. captured d. capture
- The wildlife documentary focuses on the of rare animal behaviors.
a. capturer b. captures c. captured d. capturing
- The new art installation is a remarkable that blends technology and tradition.
a. creating b. creation c. created d. creates
- As a talented sculptor, Yara is known as the of many famous statues in the city.
a. creator b. creation c. create d. creating
- In the competition, Omar plans to a model of a sustainable smart home.
a. creator b. create c. creation d. creating
- Karim has always been about different cultures, which is why he travels often.
a. curiosities b. curious c. curiosity d. curiously

11. Her endless about marine life inspired her to become a biologist.
a. curious b. curiously c. curiosity d. curiosities
12. The journalist listened to the witness before asking her next question.
a. curiosity b. curiosities c. curious d. curiously
13. The specialist was called in to the cause of the sudden engine failure.
a. diagnose b. diagnosis c. diagnosing d. diagnosed
14. After a careful examination, the doctor made a quick and accurate
a. diagnosing b. diagnose c. diagnosis d. diagnosed
15. The team of engineers is currently the software problem reported by users.
a. diagnosed b. diagnosis c. diagnose d. diagnosing
16. Leen could not hide her when she saw her brother return from abroad after years.
a. emotions b. emotional c. emotionally d. emotionise
17. The movie's ending was so that many people in the audience started crying.
a. emotions b. emotional c. emotionally d. emotion
18. The blogger shared his story to connect with the audience on a deeper level.
a. emotion b. emotions c. emotional d. emotionally
19. Sama tends to the habits she observes in her parents.
a. imitates b. imitate c. imitated d. imitating
20. The comedian's perfect of the actor made the audience burst into laughter.
a. imitation b. imitate c. imitator d. imitated

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

capture	expressions	يَلْتَقِطُ التَّعَابِيرَ	imitate	a person	يُقَلِّدُ شَخْصًا
compose	music	يُؤَلِّفُ مُوسِيقَى	introduce	income	يَجْلِبُ دَخْلًا
correct	mistakes	يُصَحِّحُ الْأَخْطَاءَ	plan	my day	أَخْطُطُ يَوْمِي
diagnose	illness/disease	يَشْخِصُ مَرَضَ	take	vitamins	يَتَنَاوَلُ الْفَيْتَامِينَاتِ
do	homework	يُؤَدِّي وَاجِبِي الْمَنْزِلِي	tell	stories	يَسْرُدُ قِصَصًا

Mini Test 3 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Every evening, Salma helps me my homework.
a. do b. cook c. sing d. build
2. The teacher asked me to my mistakes before submitting the work.
a. run b. correct c. shout d. dance
3. The new app can your daily schedule in seconds.
a. plan b. paint c. break d. drive
4. The storyteller could the expressions on the children's faces.
a. push b. capture c. dig d. drop

5. The government decided to basic income to support citizens.

- a. travel b. sing c. introduce d. sweep

6. The system can illnesses with great accuracy.

- a. cook b. jump c. drive d. diagnose

4 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
advance(d) (v)	يَتَقَدَّم	progress, proceed, promote, improve
capture (v)	يَسْتَوْلِي - يَأْسِر	seize, catch, grab, apprehend
creation (n)	إِبْدَاع	invention, production, design
curious (adj)	فُضُولِي	inquisitive, interested, eager, nosy
diagnose(d) (v)	يُسَخِّص	identify, detect, determine, recognize
emotion (n)	عَاطِفَة	feeling, sentiment, passion, affection
imitate(d) (v)	يَقْلِد	copy, mimic, emulate, replicate
leading (adj)	بَازِل	chief, main, top, principal
lonely (adj)	وَحِيد	isolated, alone, solitary, lonesome
magic (adj)	سِخْرِي	supernatural, mystical, magical
recreate(d) (v)	يُعِيدُ الْإِبْدَاع - يُجَدِّد	remake, rebuild, reconstruct, restore
soul (n)	رُوح	spirit, essence, heart, inner self
warmth (n)	دِفْء	heat, affection, kindness
whisper(ed) (v)	يَهْمَس - هَمْسَة	murmur, mutter, breathe, hiss

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
advance(d) (v)	يَتَقَدَّم	retreat, regress, withdraw, decline	يَتَرَاوَج - يَنْخَبِر - يَنْدَهْوَر
capture (v)	يَسْتَوْلِي - يَأْسِر	release, free, liberate, surrender	يُطْلِق سِرَاح - يُخَرِّر - يَسْتَسْلِم
creation (n)	إِبْدَاع	destruction, ruin, elimination	تَدْمِير - خَرَاب - إِزَالَة
curious (adj)	فُضُولِي	indifferent, uninterested, apathetic, unconcerned	غَيْر مُهْتَمٍّ - لَامْتِبَالٍ
emotion (n)	عَاطِفَة	indifference, detachment	لَا مُبَالَاة - فُتُور
imitate(d) (v)	يَقْلِد	innovate, originate, differ, create	يَبْتَدِع - يَبْدَع
leading (adj)	بَازِل	minor, secondary, insignificant, unimportant	ثَانَوِيٍّ - قَرِيعِي
lonely (adj)	وَحِيد	accompanied, sociable, connected	اجْتِمَاعِي - متواصل
magic (adj)	سِخْرِي	ordinary, natural, real	عَادِيٍّ - طَبِيعِي
recreate(d) (v)	يُعِيدُ الْإِبْدَاع	destroy, ruin, demolish	يُذَمِّر - يُخَرِّب
soul (n)	رُوح	body, matter	جَسَد - مَادَة
warmth (n)	دِفْء	coldness, frigidity, aloofness	بُرُود - جَفَاء - فُتُور
whisper(ed) (v)	يَهْمَس - هَمْسَة	shout, yell, scream, proclaim	يَصْرُخ - يَصيح

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

• Choose the TWO correct answer out of the FIVE options given :

1. "Advance" is antonymous with '.....'.
a. retreat b. create c. capture
d. plot e. decline
2. "After moving away from family, Amira often felt lonely in the big city." The word 'lonely' here can be replaced by
a. solitary b. warmth c. isolated
d. plot e. magic
3. "Baleigh Hamdy's music touched the soul of everyone in the audience." The word 'soul' here is a synonym of
a. magic b. spirit c. warmth
d. heart e. whisper
4. "Creation" is antonymous with '.....'.
a. destruction b. warmth c. magic
d. elimination e. loneliness
5. "Destroy" is antonymous with '.....'.
a. reconstruct b. whisper c. recreate
d. advance e. diagnose
6. "Diagnose" is synonymous with '.....'.
a. recreate b. identify c. whisper
d. plot e. determine
7. "Hadeer's latest sculpture is a remarkable creation admired by critics." The word 'creation' here can be replaced by
a. production b. invention c. plot
d. whisper e. warmth
8. "He leaned closer to whisper a secret into her ear." The word 'whisper' here is a synonym of
a. murmur b. diagnose c. breathe
d. plot e. capture
9. "Her investigative questions showed she was truly curious about the case." The word 'curious' here is a synonym of
a. lonely b. inquisitive c. nosy
d. recreate e. magic
10. "Indifferent" is to 'curious' as 'retreat' is to '.....'.
a. progress b. advance c. whisper
d. warmth e. capture
11. "Minor" is to 'leading' as 'ordinary' is to '.....'.
a. lonely b. magic c. supernatural
d. recreated e. curious

on my own - of my own

•on my own (phrase)

- without help from anyone else.
- I fixed the computer on my own.

بمفردي/ بمجهودي: القيام بشيء بدون مساعدة احد.

•of my own (phrase)

- belonging to me.
- I have a room of my own.

خاص بي: شيء ملكي أو يخصني شخصياً.

lose - miss - mess

•lose (v)

- to stop having something; to not win.
- Hussein might **lose** his keys again.

يفقد/ خسر: فقدان شيء أو خسارة مباراة.

•miss (v)

- to fail to catch, meet, or notice; to feel sad about the absence of someone.

يفوت/ يشتاق: عدم إدراك أو فقدان فرصة أو الحين لشخص.

- I **miss** my family when I travel.

•mess (n)

- a situation that is dirty, untidy, or full of problems.

مؤوضى/ مازق: حالة غير منظمة أو ملينة بالمشاكل.

- Your desk is a **mess**, Omnia.

quite - quiet

•quite (adv)

- completely or to a large degree.
- This task is **quite** easy.

تماماً/ إلى حد كبير: بدرجة كبيرة أو كلياً.

•quiet (adj)

- making very little noise.
- Please keep **quiet** in the library.

هادئ: قليل الضوضاء أو بلا ضجيج.

remind - remember

•remind (v)

- to make someone think of something they have forgotten.

يُذكّر: لفت انتباه شخص لشيء ربما نسيه.

- Could you **remind** me to call my mother at five?

•remember (v)

- to bring a fact or event back into your mind.
- I **remember** my first day at school.

يَتَذَكّر: استرجاع معلومة أو حدث في الذاكرة.

storyteller - narrator - novelist - playwright

• **storyteller (n)**

- a person who tells stories, often in an entertaining way.

سارد قصص / قصاص: شخص يحكي القصص بأسلوب مشوق.

- Zamzam is a great **storyteller**.

• **narrator (n)**

- a person who tells the story in a book, play, or film.

راو للحكايات: الشخص الذي يروي الأحداث في نص أو فيلم.

- The **narrator** described the village beautifully.

• **novelist (n)**

- a writer of novels.

روائي - كاتب يؤلف الروايات.

- Naguib Mahfouz was a famous **novelist**.

• **playwright (n)**

- A person who writes plays for the theatre.

كاتب مسرحي: الشخص الذي يكتب نصوص المسرحيات.

- William Shakespeare is one of the greatest **playwrights** in history.

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- During the art class, Amira used clay to a model of a famous landmark.
a. create b. recreate c. miss d. lose
- After the flood had damaged the museum, the town decided to it exactly as it was before.
a. lose b. miss c. recreate d. create
- Karim travelled to Luxor because no one else could take the trip with him.
a. lonely b. alone c. quiet d. quite
- Ever since her sister died, Yara has been feeling terribly
a. alone b. lonely c. quiet d. recreate
- I bought this apartment with my own money, so it's a flat
a. on my own b. lose c. of my own d. remember
- Omar managed to finish the task entirely without asking for help.
a. on his own b. of his own c. lonely d. quite
- Nasser can't find his phone anywhere; he seems to have it on the bus.
a. messed b. missed c. lost d. remembered
- Malak the bus, so she had to take a taxi.
a. lost b. missed c. recreated d. plotted
- Everyone stopped talking when the director entered, and the room became completely
a. quite b. recreated c. quiet d. lonely
- The scenery in the mountains was breathtaking.
a. quiet b. quite c. lonely d. of my own

11. Shakespeare was not only a poet but also a famous whose plays are still performed today.
 a. storyteller b. playwright c. narrator d. novelist
12. Dickens is remembered as a great who created memorable characters like Oliver Twist.
 a. novelist b. narrator c. playwright d. storyteller

III READING

Reading Texts

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

on Lesson 4 SB pages 77 & 78

We are now in the year 2045, the world had changed in ways no one expected. Technology had **advanced**⁽¹⁾ so far that it could do almost everything people once did. Digital systems **diagnosed**⁽²⁾ illnesses with perfect **accuracy**⁽³⁾, automated **assistants**⁽⁴⁾ wrote **flawless**⁽⁵⁾ **contracts**⁽⁶⁾, and machines **composed**⁽⁷⁾ music that moved people to **tears**⁽⁸⁾. As a result, many jobs in factories, offices, and even creative **fields**⁽⁹⁾ disappeared. In **response**⁽¹⁰⁾, governments **introduced**⁽¹¹⁾ **basic**⁽¹²⁾ **income**⁽¹³⁾, and schools began teaching "**future-proof**⁽¹⁴⁾" skills.



Yet⁽¹⁵⁾ in a quiet corner of Cairo, a small café remained a place of **warmth**⁽¹⁶⁾ and **humanity**⁽¹⁷⁾. Every Friday afternoon, children gathered around an **elderly**⁽¹⁸⁾ woman named Amina, who told stories in a way no machine could **match**⁽¹⁹⁾. Parents often said her stories had something special—a deep **emotion**⁽²⁰⁾, a human **spark**⁽²¹⁾, and a **magic**⁽²²⁾ no program could **imitate**⁽²³⁾.

One **rainy**⁽²⁴⁾ afternoon, Dr. Sami, a **leading**⁽²⁵⁾ engineer, visited the café. His newest **creation**⁽²⁶⁾ had just won a prize for **storytelling**⁽²⁷⁾, but many readers still said something was missing. **Curious**⁽²⁸⁾, he asked Amina, "Let my system **analyze**⁽²⁹⁾ your storytelling. I want to understand what makes yours so special."

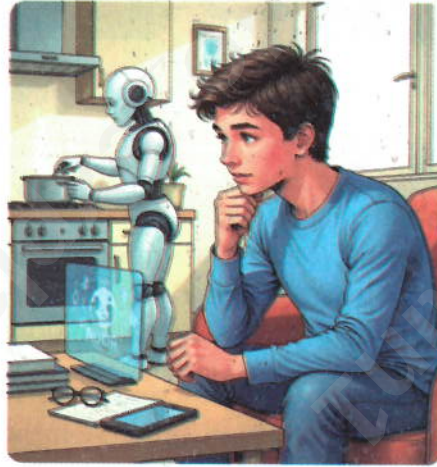
Amina agreed. She told a story about a lonely moon and a brave **firefly**⁽³⁰⁾. The system collected everything—**metaphors**⁽³¹⁾, **plot twists**⁽³²⁾, emotions—but it couldn't **capture**⁽³³⁾ the **gasps**⁽³⁴⁾, smiles, and wide eyes of the children.

When she finished, Dr. Sami stared at his results. "We can copy the words," he said softly, "but we can't restore the passion."

(6) غُفُود	(5) خَالَ مِنْ الْغُيُوبِ	(4) مُسَاعِدُونَ	(3) دَقَّة	(2) يُشَخِّصُ (مرض)	(1) يَتَقَدَّم
(12) أَسَابِيحِي	(11) يُقَدِّمُ	(10) زَدَ	(9) مَجَالَات	(8) دَفُوع	(7) يُؤَلِّفُ
(18) مُبِينٌ	(17) إِنْسَائِيَّةٌ	(16) دَفْعٌ	(15) وَمَقْعٌ ذَلِكَ	(14) مُضْضَوْنُ الْمُسْتَقْبَلِ	(13) دَخَلَ
(24) مُجْطِرٌ	(23) يُقَلِّدُ	(22) بِيخِرُ	(21) شَرَاذِعَ	(20) غَاطِطَةٌ	(19) يُضَاهِي
(30) خَشْرَةٌ مُضِيئَةٌ	(29) يُخَلِّلُ	(28) مُضْضُولِي	(27) سَرْدُ الْقِيَصِصِ	(26) إِنْدَاعٌ	(25) بَايِلٌ
		(34) انبهار	(33) يَأْسِرُ	(32) تَحَوَّلَاتُ الْحِكْمَةِ الدَّرَامِيَّةِ	(31) إِسْبِغَازَات

• on Lesson 5 SB page 80

It's the year 2050, and my life is completely different from today. I **wake up**⁽¹⁾, not to an alarm clock, but to a **soft**⁽²⁾ voice from my AI assistant, Noor, who tells me the weather and plans my day. She prepares my breakfast using a **smart**⁽³⁾ kitchen robot and **reminds**⁽⁴⁾ me to take my vitamins. At school, I don't use books anymore. We wear smart glasses that show us lessons in 3D. AI teachers help us study and correct our **mistakes**⁽⁵⁾ **instantly**⁽⁶⁾. After class, Noor helps me do my homework, but she doesn't give me the answers—she asks questions to **guide**⁽⁷⁾ me. Sometimes I **wonder**⁽⁸⁾ if I'm thinking less **on my own**⁽⁹⁾. Everything is easier, but also more **controlled**⁽¹⁰⁾. Even my free time is planned by an **app**⁽¹¹⁾. I **miss**⁽¹²⁾ the feeling of doing things for myself, like cooking or **getting lost**⁽¹³⁾ in a real book. Technology helps me a lot, but I hope I don't **forget**⁽¹⁴⁾ how to be human.



- (1) يَسْتَيْقِظُ
- (2) نَاعِمٌ
- (3) ذَكِيٌّ
- (4) يَذْكُرُ
- (5) أَفْضَاءُ
- (6) غَلَى الْقَوْرَ
- (7) يُؤَجِّهَ
- (8) يَتَسَاءَلُ
- (9) بِنَفْسِي
- (10) مُسَيَّطَرٌ عَلَيْهِ
- (11) تَطْبِيقٌ
- (12) يَفْتَقِدُ
- (13) بِنَعْمَسٍ فِي
- (14) يَنْسَى

احرص على اقتناء

كتاب EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للفصل الثالث الثانوي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني





SKILLS

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية في الملحق

تنويه

WRITING SKILL: NARRATIVE WRITING

• What is narrative writing?

ما هي الكتابة السردية؟

- Narrative writing is a type of writing that tells a story. It can be real (personal experience) or imagined (fiction), and it usually follows a clear sequence of events.

- الكتابة السردية هي نوع من الكتابة يروي قصة أو يسرد أحداثاً، سواء كانت حقيقية أو متخيلة، باستخدام تسلسل منظم يجذب القارئ.

• What is the purpose and function of narrative writing?

ما غرض ووظيفة الكتابة السردية؟

- It aims to entertain, inform, preserve memories, teach moral lessons, or persuade through storytelling.

- تهدف إلى الترفيه، أو الإخبار، أو حفظ الذكريات، أو تعليم القيم الأخلاقية، أو الإقناع من خلال السرد القصصي.

Main elements of narrative writing العناصر الرئيسية للكتابة السردية

- 1 **Characters** (the people or beings in the story). الشخصيات (الأشخاص أو الكائنات في القصة).
- 2 **Setting** (time and place). الزمان والمكان.
- 3 **Plot** (events in order). الحبكة (تسلسل الأحداث).
- 4 **Point of View** (first or third person). وجهة النظر (بضمير المتكلم أو الغائب).
- 5 **Dialog and Description**. الحوار والوصف.
- 6 **Theme or Message** (central idea or message). الفكرة المحورية (الفكرة أو الرسالة الرئيسية).
- 7 **Emotion and Voice**. المشاعر والتعبير عن الرأي.

Structure of narrative writing بناء الكتابة السردية

- 1 **Exposition** (introduction). تعريف بالشخصيات والمكان والزمان.
- 2 **Rising Action** (events building tension). تصاعد الأحداث (بناء التوتر والتشويق).
- 3 **Climax** (turning point). الذروة (نقطة التحول).
- 4 **Falling Action** (events after the climax). انحدار الأحداث (ما بعد الذروة).
- 5 **Resolution** (conclusion). الحل (الخاتمة).

Techniques of narrative writing فنيات الكتابة السردية

Writers use imagery, dialogue, pacing, foreshadowing, symbolism, and figurative language to enhance narratives.

يستخدم الكتاب التصوير، والحوار، والتحكم في وتيرة الأحداث، والتلميح المسبق، والرمزية، واللغة المجازية لتعزيز السرد.

Common errors الأخطاء الشائعة

Over-description, flat characters, weak endings, and unfocused plots can weaken the narrative.

قد يضعف السرد بسبب الإطالة المفرطة في الوصف، الشخصيات السطحية، النهايات الضعيفة، والحبكات غير المركزة.

Narrative writing terminology مصطلحات الكتابة السردية

Term		Definition
character	شخصية	a person, animal, or figure in a story
climax	الذروة	the most exciting or important moment
conflict	الصراع	a struggle between opposing forces
dialogue	الحوار	spoken conversation between characters
exposition	التمهيد	the introduction of background information
falling action	انحدار الأحداث	events after the climax leading to resolution
figurative language	اللغة المجازية	words with meanings beyond the literal
flashback	استرجاع زمني	a scene set in an earlier time
foreshadowing	التلميح للمستقبل	hints about what will happen later
imagery	التصوير	descriptive language that appeals to the senses
non-linear narrative	السرد غير الخطي	a story told out of chronological order
pacing	وتيرة السرد	the speed at which the story unfolds
plot	الحبكة	the sequence of events in a story
point of view	وجهة النظر	the perspective from which the story is told
resolution	الحل / الخاتمة	the end of the story where conflicts are solved
rising action	تصاعد الأحداث	events leading up to the climax
symbolism	الرمزية	using symbols to represent ideas
theme	الفكرة الرئيسية	the central idea or message

Model Narrative

- Write a narrative of 200 words about a situation in which you were taught a lesson:

Never ignore a fellow in need

It was a sunny afternoon when I was driving alone on the highway to Aswan. The road stretched endlessly ahead, and the warm wind rushed through the open window. As I passed a bend, I noticed a man standing beside his car on the side of the road. He was holding an empty bottle in his hand and waved to me, clearly asking for help. I guessed he had run out of fuel.

But I was in a hurry, eager to reach my destination on time, so I looked away and continued driving. Half an hour later, fate decided to teach me a lesson. My car suddenly broke down, leaving me stranded in the middle of nowhere. I stepped out and started waving desperately at passing cars, but no one stopped.

Then, to my surprise, I saw a familiar face. It was the same man I had refused to help earlier. Without hesitation, he pulled over, walked towards me, and asked what had happened. His kindness shamed me. He helped fix my car and even offered me some water.

That day, I learned an unforgettable lesson: never ignore someone in need, because one day, you might be the one who needs help.

General Exercises

I WRITING SKILL

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A dove representing peace in a story is an example of
a. Symbolism b. Climax c. Theme d. Flashback
2. A hint of something that will happen later in the story is called
a. Imagery b. Symbolism c. Foreshadowing d. Resolution
3. A narrator whose credibility is questionable is called
a. Reliable Narrator b. Point of View c. Unreliable Narrator d. Theme
4. A scene set in a time earlier than the main story is a
a. Non-linear Narrative b. Flashback c. Resolution d. Pacing
5. A scene that takes the reader back to an earlier time is called a
a. Symbolism b. Climax c. Flashback d. Theme
6. A story told out of chronological order is a
a. Climax b. Imagery c. Non-linear Narrative d. Setting
7. A struggle between a hero and a natural disaster is an example of
a. Imagery b. Climax c. Conflict d. Exposition
8. A struggle between characters or forces in a story is the
a. Theme b. Climax c. Conflict d. Foreshadowing
9. Descriptive language that appeals to the senses is called
a. Dialogue b. Imagery c. Symbolism d. Rising Action
10. Events that happen after the climax leading to the resolution form the
a. Falling Action b. Plot c. Imagery d. Dialogue
11. If a story jumps back to an earlier time to give background, this is called a
a. Flashback b. Rising Action c. Exposition d. Climax
12. Non-literal language that creates imagery is called
a. Theme b. Resolution
c. Figurative Language d. Conflict
13. The angle from which a story is told is the
a. Conflict b. Point of View c. Imagery d. Dialogue
14. The background information that sets up the story is called the
a. Climax b. Exposition c. Resolution d. Flashback
15. The final outcome or solution in a story is called the
a. Theme b. Resolution c. Climax d. Point of View
16. The location and time in which a story takes place is referred to as the
a. Theme b. Setting c. Climax d. Imagery
17. The main idea or message behind a story is the
a. Theme b. Plot c. Climax d. Foreshadowing
18. The main idea or underlying message of a story is the
a. Setting b. Plot c. Theme d. Exposition

19. The moment of highest suspense or emotional intensity is called the
 a. Climax b. Resolution c. Dialogue d. Conflict
20. The part of a story that wraps up loose ends is the
 a. Climax b. Resolution c. Symbolism d. Point of View
21. The part where events start building toward the climax is known as the
 a. Falling Action b. Conflict c. Rising Action d. Theme
22. The person, animal, or figure in a story is called
 a. Setting b. Plot c. Character d. Dialogue
23. The sequence of events in a narrative is known as the
 a. Plot b. Theme c. Pacing d. Conflict
24. The sequence of main events in a story is called
 a. Climax b. Plot c. Theme d. Dialogue
25. The speed at which a story progresses is known as its
 a. Pacing b. Climax c. Setting d. Foreshadowing
26. The spoken exchanges between characters are called
 a. Exposition b. Imagery c. Dialogue d. Plot
27. The turning point or moment of greatest tension is the
 a. Resolution b. Foreshadowing c. Climax d. Symbolism
28. The use of an object to represent an idea is known as
 a. Symbolism b. Imagery c. Dialogue d. Climax
29. The use of hints about what will happen later is known as
 a. Plot b. Theme c. Foreshadowing d. Dialogue
30. The way an author hints at future events is called
 a. Imagery b. Foreshadowing c. Dialogue d. Theme
31. The words spoken by characters are called
 a. Imagery b. Dialogue c. Figurative Language d. Theme
32. What is the term for language that uses figures of speech for effect? -
 a. Imagery b. Theme c. Figurative Language d. Pacing
33. What is the term for the perspective of the narrator in the story? -
 a. Conflict b. Theme c. Point of View d. Setting
34. When an object in a story represents an idea, it is called
 a. Climax b. Conflict c. Symbolism d. Plot
35. When two characters speak to each other in a story, the writer is using
 a. Flashback b. Plot c. Theme d. Dialogue
36. Which element indicates how fast or slow the events unfold? -
 a. Pacing b. Setting c. Plot d. Climax
37. Which element of narrative shows a writer's style and emotional tone? -
 a. Point of View b. Emotion and Voice c. Theme d. Resolution
38. Which element often contains a problem that must be solved in a story? -
 a. Theme b. Setting c. Plot d. Imagery
39. Which part of a narrative introduces the main characters and setting? -
 a. Climax b. Rising Action c. Exposition d. Falling Action

40. Which part of a story provides sensory details to create mental images? -
 a. Dialogue b. Theme c. Imagery d. Resolution
41. Which term refers to the order of events in a narrative? -
 a. Sequence b. Imagery c. Climax d. Rising Action

II READING SKILL

- Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Is it advisable that we work all the time without having rest or entertainment? The answer is that we can never go on working. From time to time, we should stop to have some rest and some **recreation** to have fun. Shouldn't we ? If we don't, we could make mistakes and our work might get worse.

An **overworked** person may end up losing their ability to think clearly and having no energy to carry on working. Sleep is one way in which we can renew our energy. Sports and games are also important for brainworkers, who stay in closed offices and don't have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Swimming, walking and other outdoor activities are excellent and they seem very good for all people, so we shouldn't waste our weekends. People make full use of them by being in the open spaces. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed.

Change has a magic effect on man's health and his work. Only clever people are those who can make a balance between their work and their personal lives. They are hardworking when they do their jobs and they live the happiest moments when they aren't working.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Choose the best title for the passage:
 a. Merry Moments b. Magical Energy
 c. The Importance of Rest and recreation d. The Importance of Sports
- We can avoid making mistakes if we
 a. go on hard work b. do our jobs lazily
 c. relax d. don't relax
- The adjective "overworked" has a meaning.
 a. positive b. negative c. good d. comforting
- The underlined word "**recreation**" in the first paragraph means
 a. innovation b. sleep c. stress d. entertainment
- The writer's purpose in the last paragraph is to
 a. suggest doing our jobs all the time b. warn us against living without work
 c. tell us the story of work-free people d. advise us to make a life-work balance
- From the second paragraph, we understand that man's health improves by
 a. changing sleeping habits b. having a break every now and then
 c. thinking of the worries of life d. working all the time without rest
- All the following are examples of brainworkers except
 a. porters b. engineers c. mathematicians d. surgeons
- According to the writer, change has
 a. extremely little effect on health or work b. a major effect on health and work
 c. an essential effect on health only d. a vital effect on work only

III TRANSLATION

• **1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

1. Young people must be armed with science and technology to achieve their ambitions.

- a. يجب أن يتسلح الشباب بالعلم والتكنولوجيا ليحققوا طموحاتهم.
- b. يجب أن يقتدي الشباب بالعلم والتكنولوجيا ليحققوا آمالهم.
- c. ينبغي أن يتسلح الشباب بالعلوم والتكنولوجيا ليحققوا أحلامهم.
- d. يجب أن يقتدي الشباب بالعلم والتكنولوجيا ليلحقوا هدفهم.

2. Whoever just stands on the beach will never learn to swim. Studies show that a person should experience situations to learn from them.

- a. من يقتفي بالوقوف على الشاطئ لن يتعلم السباحة أبداً. تشير الدراسات إلى أن الإنسان يجب أن يمر بمواقف ليتعلم منها.
- b. من يقف على الشاطئ لن يتعلم السباحة أبداً. تشير الدراسات إلى أن الإنسان يجب أن يمر بمواقف ليتعلم منها.
- c. من يقتفي بالوقوف على الشاطئ لن يتعلم السباحة أبداً. تشير الدراسات إلى أن الإنسان يجب أن يكتسب الخبرة ليتعلم منها.
- d. من يقف على الشاطئ لن يتعلم السباحة أبداً. تشير الدراسات إلى أن الإنسان يجب أن يكتسب الخبرة ليتعلم منها.

• **2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

ا. لا تتوقع نجاحاً دون صعوبات، أو سعادة دون ألم، أو مكسباً بدون خسارة، إنها الحياة أقيها أو أرفضها، لكن لنعيشها يجب أن تفهمها.

- a. Don't expect success without hardships, happiness with pain or Winning Without loss: it was life, take it or leave it, but to live, you should understand it.
- b. Don't expect success without hardships, happiness without pain or winning without loss; it's life. Take it or leave it, but to live it, you should understand it.
- c. Don't expect success without hardships or happiness with pain or winning without lose, it's life. Take it or live it, but to live it, you should have understood it.
- d. Don't expect success without hardships or happiness without pain and winning without loss! It's life, take it or leave it. But, to live it, you should understood it.

ز. كان يحلم دائماً أن ينهي دراسته الجامعية ليجد وظيفة يعتمد عليها بعد التخرج، ولكن حبه للبحث العلمي ساعده كثيراً في الحصول على الدكتوراه والعمل في الجامعة.

- a. He always dreamed of completing his university degree to find an unreliable job after graduation. But his love for science search helped him a lot to get a doctorate and work at the university.
- b. He always dreams of completing his faculty studies to find a reliable work after graduation. But his love for science research helped him a lot to get a doctorate and work at the university.
- c. He always dreams of completing his university studies to find a reliable job after graduation. But his love for scientific search helped him a lot to get a degree and work at the university.
- d. He always dreamed of completing his university studies to find a reliable job after graduation. But his love for scientific research helped him a lot to get a doctorate and work at the university



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB pages 69 & 70

The Changing Nature of Work

1. The text contrasts past jobs, which depended on physical effort, with today's work environment.
2. Modern workplaces increasingly use machines for repetitive tasks in industries like farming and manufacturing.
3. As a result, employers now seek soft skills like critical thinking, creativity, and emotional intelligence, which cannot be replaced by machines.
4. Organizations often hold workshops to improve collaboration and problem-solving skills among employees.
5. To stay ahead, workers must be open to continuous learning and develop skills in digital literacy and data management, shifting focus from physical strength to mental flexibility.

on Lesson 2 SB page 72

The Future of the Workforce

1. The text predicts that technology and artificial intelligence (AI) will take over many routine tasks in the future.
2. This will require workers to focus on skills that machines cannot easily replicate, such as creativity, problem-solving, and emotional intelligence.
3. To stay competitive, people will need to continuously learn new things and stay up-to-date.
4. Teamwork and flexibility will be crucial, as people from different backgrounds and places will work together.
5. Digital literacy will be an essential skill for everyone to work with both people and technology.

on Lesson 3 SB page 74

The Rapid Change in Technology

1. Technology is changing faster than ever, with new devices constantly appearing and old ones becoming outdated.

* The requirements of new jobs nowadays

* AI and its effect on the future of the workforce.

2. This change affects workplaces, as companies now use advanced machines, robots, and AI.

3. While new technology can improve production and diagnose patients more accurately, it also causes some jobs to disappear.

4. The text emphasizes that people must adapt by constantly learning new skills to manage risks like over-dependence and take advantage of new opportunities.

on Lesson 4 SB pages 77 & 78

A Story of the Future

1. Set in 2045, the story explores a world where technology has advanced significantly, but the human need for connection and storytelling remains.
2. A café serves as a place of warmth and humanity, where an elderly woman named Amina tells stories that have a "deep emotion" AI cannot replicate.
3. A young engineer, Dr. Sami, is impressed and realizes that while his creations can copy the words and plot of a story, they cannot capture its "human spark" and "passion."
4. The story concludes that technology can analyze data and create content, but it cannot replace the genuine emotion and creativity of a human storyteller.

on Lesson 5 SB page 80

Life with an AI Assistant

1. The narrator describes life in the year 2050, which feels completely different from today.
2. His life is managed by an AI assistant named Noor, who wakes him up, prepares his breakfast, helps with homework, and reminds him to take vitamins.
3. While everything is easier and more efficient, it is also more controlled.
4. The narrator misses the feeling of doing things for himself, like cooking or getting lost in a real book, and worries that he might forget "how to be human."

تنبؤ : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى :

* Life with an AI assistant

General Exercises | on Unit 5

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The host greeted the guests with genuine and kindness.
a. soul b. magic c. warmth d. curious
2. The speech stirred deep in everyone present.
a. magic b. emotion c. soul d. warmth
3. This sculpture is the most admired in the city's art museum.
a. warmth b. soul c. magic d. creation
4. The shift from traditional classrooms to online learning marked a major educational
a. insight b. transformation c. industry d. background
5. In today's digital world, computer is as important as reading and writing skills.
a. backgrounds b. literacy c. mindset d. judgment
6. A positive can help employees view setbacks as opportunities for growth.
a. background b. illiteracy c. literacy d. mindset
7. Leaders must have good to make the right decisions.
a. judge b. judgment c. judgmental d. judiciary
8. The opposite of 'collaboration' is
a. isolation b. agreement c. teamwork d. competition
9. I'm trying to my printer repaired before the weekend.
a. let b. make c. permit d. get
10. The teacher will the students to finish the project on their own.
a. allow b. have c. make d. let
11. We couldn't the plumber come any earlier than Monday.
a. had b. allow c. permit d. make
12. Which of the following has a phrasal verb?
a. Look at me, Omar.
b. I haven't gone out lately.
c. The lorry broke down midways.
d. Sama arrived at the bus stop at nine.
13. Which is the correct causative transformation of "The mechanic repaired my bike"?
a. I had my bike repaired by the mechanic.
b. I had the mechanic repaired my bike.
c. I had the mechanic to repair my bike.
d. I have my bike repair by the mechanic.
14. "She let her son stay up late" means she him to stay up late.
a. refused b. allowed c. forced d. ignored

21. According to the passage, AI
 a. doesn't occur naturally and is created by human beings
 b. occurs naturally due to modern technology
 c. is separated from the use of computers
 d. is of less importance nowadays than before
22. The writer believes that people's lives will be by artificial intelligence.
 a. worsened b. destroyed c. hardened d. improved
23. At the age of artificial intelligence, jobs for humans will
 a. rise b. increase c. decrease d. multiply
24. Some people have fears of artificial intelligence due to its
 a. legal uses b. illegal uses
 c. rapid progress d. ability to make our lives good
25. Developing is the main key to have rapid artificial intelligence.
 a. healthcare b. smart mobile phones
 c. operating on patients d. computers
26. Human beings have a/an role with the artificial intelligence.
 a. minor b. secondary c. major d. unimportant
27. The underlined word "sorting out" gives a similar meaning to
 a. understanding b. misunderstanding c. having d. neglecting

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Throughout human history, many ancient civilizations have come and gone, obtaining and leaving behind valuable knowledge. In the modern days, much research and information in the medical field came from the people of ancient Egypt. Although they lived during the early years of human existence, they have acquired exceptional data. Ancient Egypt has been a major contributor to modern day medicine, for they have given knowledge of hygiene, surgery and the uses of herbs.

The Egyptians' need to be clean and hygienic has greatly influenced many people in this time and age, preventing what could cause medical damage. In the modern-day world, there are still some remedies and treatments practiced that was discovered by the Egyptians. Some herbal and natural remedies used in modern day time include mint, garlic and Aloe Vera, while their other herbal medicines provided a base for our everyday medicines, such as antibiotics and pain killers. When it came to pain killers, it is recorded that the ancient Egyptians had an understanding and used natural remedies to control pain long before Europeans figured out the natural powers of such herbs. They understood and used herbs and natural elements to protect themselves from disease and parasites.

In Egypt, they treated worms with pomegranates and garlic, later proven by modern medical studies that the ancient Egyptians were absolutely right to treat worms with them. This is because; modern scientists confirmed that the contents in pomegranate and garlic can actually kill worms. As for everyday remedies, the Egyptians also used the powers of the Aloe Vera plant to calm burning skin and mint to relieve severe pain. The ancient Egyptians relied greatly on their natural resources and provided a stepping stone for the medicine in today's world, although we would never know about their discoveries if it hadn't been for the way they kept a written record of them on walls of temples and pieces of papyri.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

28. We knew that the ancient Egyptians had much interest about natural remedies through
 a. the wide spread of diseases nowadays b. effective chemical remedies
 c. the drawings on walls of temples d. their use of the chemicals
29. What is common between garlic and pomegranates? They
 a. fight worms inside the body. b. are chemical treatments.
 c. take care of skin. d. weren't used to fight diseases.
30. The world natural remedies nowadays.
 a. neglects b. has no interest in
 c. doesn't care about d. is interested in
31. The word, in the passage, which is similar in meaning to profitable, is
 a. severe b. clean c. natural d. valuable
32. Natural remedies are attracting attention because they
 a. have no side effects b. are used by Europeans only
 c. can treat few diseases d. are used in Egypt
33. Aloe Vera is an example of
 a. natural remedies b. artificial herbs
 c. chemical medicines d. modern drugs
34. The writer wants us to know that
 a. natural remedies in ancient Egypt were useless
 b. the ancient Egyptian left nothing about treating sick people
 c. the Europeans were first to figure out the natural powers of herbs
 d. the ancient Egyptian civilization is still pioneering the medical field
35. After reading this article, we should
 a. plant only garlic and pomegranates b. be proud of the Egyptian civilization
 c. have fear of using natural remedies d. reject taking herbs as remedies

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

36. Our success was the result of strong collaboration between teams." 'Collaboration' means
 a. leadership b. teamwork c. competition
 d. cooperation e. negotiation
37. "The police decided to release the suspect after proving his innocence." The word 'release' here is an antonym of
 a. catch b. capture c. create
 d. advance e. liberate

• Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

38. Education is one of the most important forms of investment which makes the Ministry of Education help graduate productive and creative citizens.
 a. يُعْتَبَرُ التعليم أحد أهم أشكال الاستثمار الذي يجعل من خريجي وزارة التربية والتعليم مواطنين منتجين ومبدعين.
 b. يعد التعليم أحد أهم أشكال الاستثمار مما يجعل وزارة التعليم تساعد في تخريج مواطنين منتجين ومبدعين.
 c. يعد التعليم أحد أهم أشكال الاستثمار مما يساعد وزارة التعليم في تخريج مواطنين منتجين ومبدعين.
 d. يُعْتَبَرُ التعليم أحد أهم أشكال الاستثمار مما يجعل وزارة التعليم تساعد في تخريج مواطنين منتجين ومبدعين.

39. One has to develop their skills to be able to get a suitable well-paid job. You also need to enjoy your job in order to do it well.

- a. يتعين على المرء تطوير مهاراته حتى يتمكن من الحصول على وظيفة مناسبة بأجر جيد. تحتاج أيضًا إلى الاستمتاع بعملك حتى تتمكن من القيام به بشكل جيد.
- b. يتعين على المرء تطوير مهاراته حتى يتمكن من الحصول على وظيفة مناسبة مدفوعة الأجر. تحتاج أيضًا إلى الاستمتاع بعملك حتى تتمكن من القيام به بشكل جيد.
- c. يتعين على المرء تطوير مهاراته حتى يتمكن من الحصول على وظيفة مناسبة بأجر جيد. تحتاج أيضًا إلى الاستمتاع بعملك حتى تتمكن من القيام به بشكل جيد.
- d. يتعين على المرأة تطوير مهاراتها حتى تتمكن من الحصول على وظيفة مناسبة بأجر جيد. تحتاج أيضًا إلى الاستمتاع بعملك حتى تتمكن من القيام به بشكل جيد.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

ع. إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية وخاصة اللغة الإنجليزية يساعدنا على فهم الاتجاهات العلمية والثقافية الحديثة ومواكبة التقدم التكنولوجي.

- a. Learning foreign languages, special English, helps us understand modern scientific, culture trends and keep pace with the development of technology.
- b. Learning foreign languages, especially English, helps us understand modern scientific, culture directions and stay with the development of technology.
- c. Studying foreign languages, especially English, helps us understand modern science, culture trends and keep pace with the development of technology.
- d. Learning foreign languages, especially English, helps us understand modern trends of science and culture and keep pace with the development of technology.

ع. يجب أن تعلم الأجيال الجديدة قيمة العمل والتفكير الإبداعي من جهة، والانتماء والولاء من جهة أخرى، وذلك لكي يكونوا قادرين على بناء بلدهم.

- a. New generations must teach the value of work and creative thinking on the one hand, and belonging and loyalty on the other hand, in order to be able to build their country.
- b. New generations must learn the value of work and creative thinking on the one hand, and belonging and loyalty on the other hand, in order to be able to build their country.
- c. New generations must learn the value of work and creative thinking on the one hand, and belonging and loyalty on the other hand in order to be unable to build their country.
- d. New generations must learn the value of work and creative thanks on the one hand, and belonging and loyalty on the other hand, in order to be able to build their country.

• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

42. Ahmed can ask his assistant to print the documents. (can have)

43. Aya arranges for the invitations to be sent out. (has)

• Answer the following questions :

44. What three qualities did Edmond find in Faria besides knowledge?

45. Why did Edmond consider Faria his true mentor?

46. Write a six-line beginning to a narrative called :

"The effect of AI technology on jobs and work"

UNIT 6

SB pages 82 : 95

Let's Hang Out!



Learning Outcomes

• Reading

- Read a story about a social misfortune, extracting key details, and identifying synonyms, antonyms, and idioms
- Read and understand a passage about the health benefits of socializing

• Language

- Convert direct speech questions into reported speech, correctly applying tense changes

• Listening

- Listen to an audio text about benefits of socializing and answer questions
- Identify key information

• Writing

- Write a short online review, following the structure and purpose of a review

• Speaking

- Practice making and responding to invitations
- Discuss and debate the importance of socializing



SB pages 83 : 87

PART ONE

Lessons

1 & 2

► An Embarrassing Moment
► The Power of Socializing

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

affection (n)	مَوَدَّة / عاطفة	keep my hands to myself	لا أأدخل فيما لا يعني
anxiety (n)	قلق	maintain(ed) (v)	يُحافظ - يقوم بصيانة
clumsiness (n)	التصرف بغباء أو بدون مهارة	mortify(ied) (v)	يُخجل - يحرج
clumsy (adj)	أخرق - غير ماهر	mortifying (adj)	مُخجل
cruelty (n)	قسوة	reassure(d) (v)	يُطمئن
depression (n)	إحئاب	socialize(d) (v)	يندمج اجتماعيًا
disaster (n)	كارثة	strengthen(ed) (v)	يُقوي
glamorous (adj)	فاتن - ساحر	superficially (adv)	بشغل سطحي
hang out	يُنزّه - يسترخي مع الأصدقاء	weeknight (n)	ليلة أسبوعية
hit the town	يُخرج للأنزه (في المدينة)	well-being (n)	رفاهية - سعادة
hormone (n)	هرمون		

2 Important Vocabulary

accept(ed) (v)	يُقبل	immune (adj)	مُناعي - لديه مناعة
admit(ted) (v)	يُعترف	incredibly (adv)	بشغل لا يُصدق
apologize(d) (v)	يُعتذر	insist(ed) (v)	يُصر
ashamed (adj)	خجلان	interaction (n)	تفاعل
atmosphere (n)	الجو	invest(ed) (v)	يُستثمر
awkward (adj)	مُربك	jokingly (adv)	مازحًا
beneficial (adj)	مفيد	kindness (n)	لطف
benefit(ed) (n-v)	فائدة - يستفيد	lasting (adj)	دائم
bite-bit-bitten (v)	يعض	lively (adj)	نشط
boost(ed) (v)	يُعزّز	mood (n)	الحالة المزاجية
bowling (n)	لعبة البولينج	particularly (adv)	خصوصًا
brand-new (adj)	جديد كليًا	promotion (n)	ترقية
cancel(ed) (v)	يلغي	quality (n)	جودة - بسمه
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل	quantity (n)	كمية
cheerful (adj)	مُبتهج	rate (n)	نسبة
close (adj)	مُقرّب	release(d) (v)	يُطلق
convince(d) (v)	يُقنع	research (n)	بحث

count(ed) (v)	يَعْتَمِدُ	salt shaker (n)	ملّاحة / وعاء الملح
decline(d) (v)	يَرْفُضُ	silence (n)	صمت
deny(ied) (v)	يُنْكِرُ	sociable (adj)	اجتماعي
downtown (n)	وَسْطُ الْقَدِيئَةِ	splash(ed) (v)	يَرشُ
dull (adj)	مُملّ	sprinkle(d) (v - n)	يُرشُ
embarrass(ed) (v)	يُحْزِنُ	support(ed) (v - n)	دَعْم - يدعم
experience(d) (v-n)	يَجْرُبُ / يعايش - تجربة	supportive (adj)	داعم
fancy(ied) (adj-v)	فاخر / يتخيل	tend(ed) (v)	يَمِيلُ
forgiveness (n)	غُفْران / تسامح	unaware (adj)	غير مُدْرِك
gathering (n)	تَجْمُع	unbearable (adj)	غير مُحْتَمَل
grab(bed) (v)	يُفْسِكُ	warn(ed) (v)	يُحذِرُ
helpless (adj)	غاير	whenever (adv)	كُلّما
hiking (n)	التنزه سيراً		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- After the wedding, they decided to and celebrate downtown.
a. boost b. hit the town c. decline d. warn
- Before the exam, he felt a deep sense of that made it hard to focus.
a. affection b. gathering c. kindness d. anxiety
- Eating more vegetables will your immune system.
a. reassure b. insist c. strengthen d. tend
- Exercise is important for your mental health and overall
a. well-being b. kindness c. depression d. gathering
- Falling in front of the whole class was the most experience for him.
a. mortifying b. cheerful c. lively d. unaware
- He spoke about his knowledge of the topic without understanding it well.
a. incredibly b. superficially c. particularly d. professionally
- It's important to your friendships by staying in touch.
a. apologize b. cancel c. deny d. maintain
- Omar was so that he dropped two plates in a row.
a. beneficial b. dull c. clumsy d. cheerful
- Losing his job was a real for the family.
a. kindness b. disaster c. benefit d. mood
- My grandmother always shows great towards her grandchildren.
a. cruelty b. disaster c. affection d. anxiety
- On weekends, I like to with my best friends at the park.
a. strengthen b. insist c. hang out d. tend

12. People often at community events to meet new friends.
a. strengthen b. socialize c. count d. tend
13. Please the offer. It is a bargain.
a. admire b. apologize c. insist d. accept
14. Please until the teacher finishes speaking.
a. fuel up b. hang out c. hit the town d. keep your hands to yourself
15. Taha's caused him to spill the tea on the table.
a. clumsiness b. kindness c. promotion d. quality
16. The actress wore a dress that sparkled under the lights.
a. glamorous b. dull c. unbearable d. liveless
17. The bad review would only the chef if he read it.
a. reassure b. socialize c. mortify d. accept
18. The coach tried to the players before the big match.
a. insist b. reassure c. apologize d. bite
19. Treating animals badly is an act of pure
a. kindness b. benefit c. affection d. cruelty
20. We usually meet for dinner on a when restaurants are less busy.
a. weeknight b. promotion c. hormone d. mood
21. When you exercise, your body releases a that makes you feel happy.
a. mood b. hormone c. kindness d. rate

2 Important vocabulary

22. is an important value in any relationship.
a. Forgiveness b. Disaster c. Rate d. Quantity
23. A healthy diet can improve your system.
a. hormone b. immune c. mood d. kindness
24. A short walk every day can your mood.
a. boost b. bite c. tend d. warn
25. A small act of can make someone's day better.
a. kindness b. quantity c. cruelty d. kindness
26. Abdu had to breaking the vase after his mother found the pieces.
a. accept b. admit c. deny d. warn
27. After the storm, the child was left in the dark.
a. aware b. dull c. cheerful d. helpless
28. Be careful not to water on your clothes.
a. splash b. insist c. deny d. apologize
29. Be careful! That dog might if it feels scared.
a. bite b. tend c. boost d. insist
30. Cats to sleep during the day.
a. insist b. tend c. deny d. apologize

31. Don't try to the truth if you made a mistake.
a. accept b. apologize c. insist d. deny
32. Drinking water every day is for your health.
a. lively b. beneficial c. awkward d. glamorous
33. Good helps people understand each other.
a. kindness b. depression c. interaction d. hormone
34. He felt after receiving the kind letter.
a. reassured b. cheerful c. lively d. glamorous
35. He felt deeply after lying to his best friend.
a. proud b. beneficial c. lively d. ashamed
36. He seemed completely of the danger around him.
a. cheerful b. lively c. unaware d. glamorous
37. He spoke about her cooking skills to make her laugh.
a. particularly b. jokingly c. awkwardly d. incredibly
38. He was in a bad after hearing the bad news.
a. mood b. benefit c. promotion d. kindness
39. I that we should start the meeting now.
a. warn b. deny c. admit d. insist
40. I had to politely his offer to join the club.
a. decline b. count c. insist d. admit
41. I must for arriving late to the meeting.
a. admit b. accept c. apologize d. insist
42. Let's your success with a dinner out.
a. deny b. celebrate c. warn d. boost
43. Malak wore a dress to Mariam's wedding.
a. brand-new b. cheerful c. lively d. dull
44. Many people in real estate to grow their money.
a. insist b. count c. decline d. invest
45. Our family will have a big this Friday.
a. kindness b. depression c. gathering d. hormone
46. Please some sugar over the cake.
a. insist b. sprinkle c. deny d. apologize
47. Please the rope tightly so you don't fall.
a. deny b. decline c. grab d. apologize
48. Please pass me the so I can add salt to my food.
a. salt shaker b. hormone c. kindness d. depression
49. Reading has many for the mind and imagination.
a. rates b. disasters c. depressions d. benefits
50. Rokaya is my friend from childhood.
a. close b. glamorous c. lively d. dull

51. Sama always has a smile that makes others happy.
a. aware b. dull c. cheerful d. helpless
52. She got a big at work and is now a manager.
a. benefit b. promotion c. depression d. kindness
53. She is always very to her friends in times of need.
a. cruel b. awkward c. dull d. supportive
54. She is very and makes friends easily.
a. cruel b. glamorous c. dull d. sociable
55. She likes to wear dresses to special occasions.
a. dull b. awkward c. fancy d. cheerful
56. The in the café was relaxed and peaceful.
a. atmosphere b. quality c. benefit d. promotion
57. The of the food here is always excellent.
a. kindness b. disaster c. quality d. depression
58. The charity will food and blankets to the homeless.
a. insist b. support c. deny d. apologize
59. The concert will be held in this weekend.
a. downtown b. weeknight c. close d. disaster
60. The heat was so that everyone stayed indoors.
a. cheerful b. glamorous c. lively d. unbearable
61. The lawyer tried to the jury to believe his client.
a. count b. apologize c. insist d. convince
62. The lecture was so that half the students fell asleep.
a. dull b. cheerful c. glamorous d. lively
63. The party was full of music and dancing.
a. dull b. awkward c. lively d. unaware
64. The room fell into complete when the power went out.
a. kindness b. silence c. depression d. benefit
65. The school had to the sports day due to rain.
a. cancel b. deny c. insist d. admit
66. The school has a high of success in exams.
a. kindness b. rate c. depression d. benefit
67. The scientist spent years doing medical
a. kindness b. gathering
c. depression d. research
68. The sign will drivers about falling rocks.
a. warn b. insist c. deny d. apologize
69. The teacher didn't mean to the student in front of the class.
a. embarrass b. admit c. warm d. accept

70. The view from the mountain was beautiful.
 a. close b. beneficial c. incredibly d. awkward
71. There was a/an silence when no one knew what to say.
 a. lively b. unaware c. dull d. awkward
72. They decided to their friendship by meeting more often.
 a. strengthen b. apologize c. deny d. insist
73. This medicine has a effect and lasts all day.
 a. dull b. cheerful c. lasting d. helpless
74. This problem is difficult to solve.
 a. quickly b. particularly c. jokingly d. superficially

3 A bit Tricky

هذا الجزء يعرض أفكار أسئلة التميز الخاصة بالطلبة الفائقين في الامتحان

تنويه

75. "The puppy showed great affection towards its owner." The word 'affection' is closest in meaning to
 a. clumsiness b. love c. depression d. well-being
76. The sudden in his movements caused him to drop the glass.
 a. clumsiness b. affection c. depression d. well-being
77. "After losing his job, he struggled with deep depression." Here, 'depression' means
 a. clumsiness b. well-being c. sadness d. affection
78. Let's at the park after school.
 a. recreate b. maintain c. hang out d. socialize
79. The group decided to to celebrate the end of exams.
 a. hit the town b. mortify c. reassure d. maintain
80. It's important to good health through balanced eating.
 a. mortify b. reassure c. hang out d. maintain

II VOCABULARY STUDY

هذا الجزء هام جداً سواء على مستوى تعلّم اللغة أو التميز في الامتحانات

تنويه

1 Definitions التعريفات

affection(n)	مُؤَدَّة	feeling of liking or caring for someone
anxiety(n)	قَلَق	a feeling of worry, or unease about something with an uncertain outcome
clumsiness(n) التصرف بغباء أو بدون مهارة		being awkward or careless with movements, often dropping or bumping into things
cruelty(n)	قَسْوَة	behavior that causes pain or suffering to others
depression(n)	إِحْتِنَاب	a mood disorder characterized by persistent sadness and loss of interest

disaster(n)	كَارِثَةٌ	a terrible event or complete failure
glamorous(adj)	فَاتِنٌ	attractive, stylish, and exciting in a fancy way
hit the town(v)	يَخْرُجُ لِلتَّنَزُّهِ	to go out to enjoy entertainment, such as eating at restaurants, going to parties, or visiting places in the city
hormones(n)	هُرْمُونٌ	chemical messengers that regulate various bodily functions
keep my hands to myself	أَتَجَنَّبُ لِمَسِّ الْآخَرِينَ	to avoid touching people or things, especially when it is not appropriate or without permission
maintain(v)	يَقُومُ بِصِيَانَةٍ	to keep something in good condition
mortifying(adj)	مُخْجِلٌ	extremely embarrassing
reassure(v)	يُطْفِئُ	made to feel less worried or more confident
socialize(v)	يَتِمِجُ اجْتِمَاعِيًّا	the action or practice of participating in social activities or mixing socially with others
strengthen(v)	يُقَوِّي	to make something stronger
superficially	بِشَكْلِ سَطْحِيٍّ	the outward appearance only
weeknight(n)	لَيْلَةُ أُسْبُوعِيَّةٍ	any night of the week except Friday or Saturday
well-being(n)	رَفَاهِيَّةٌ	the state of being comfortable, healthy, or happy

Mini Test 1 Definitions

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A behavior that causes pain or suffering to people or animals is called
a. anxiety b. cruelty c. affection d. glamor
- Which expression means “to go out for fun in the city at night”?
a. Well-being b. Hit the town c. Hang out d. Take over
- This word describes “awkward movements showing lack of skill or control”
a. Cruelty b. Disaster c. Clumsiness d. Affection
- Which verb means “to make something stronger or more powerful”?
a. Affect b. Destroy c. Mortify d. Strengthen
- A natural chemical in the body that controls certain activities is called a
a. disaster b. affection c. hormone d. clumsiness
- Which word refers to “a medical condition of extreme sadness and loss of interest”?
a. Disaster b. Affection c. Glamor d. Depression
- An adjective for something that “causes extreme embarrassment” is
a. mortify b. mortifying c. glamorous d. affectionate
- Which word means “to make someone feel less worried”?
a. Glamor b. Reassure c. Maintain d. Distress
- If something is “full of charm, beauty, and style”, we say it is
a. hit the town b. well-being c. glamorous d. affection

10. Which word means “a strong feeling of worry or nervousness”?
 a. Mortification b. Anxiety c. Disaster d. Glamorous
11. If something is done “only on the surface, without depth,” it is done
 a. superficially b. well-being c. glamorous d. affection
12. Which verb means “to take care of something so it stays” in good condition?
 a. Mortify b. Maintain c. Strengthen d. Reassure
13. The correct term for “a sudden, bad event causing serious harm or loss” is
 a. disaster b. clumsiness c. hormone d. cruelty
14. To mix with people socially and enjoy their company is to
 a. reassure b. affection c. socialize d. strengthen
15. The state of “being healthy, comfortable, and happy” is called
 a. affection b. weeknight c. disaster d. well-being
16. This word means “any night throughout the week except for weekends”
 a. affection b. anxiety c. weeknight d. cruelty
17. The term for “a warm feeling of liking and caring for someone” is
 a. affection b. anxiety c. cruelty d. depression
18. This verb means “to make someone feel deeply embarrassed”
 a. strengthen b. reassure c. mortify d. socialize

2 Derivatives المشتقات

affection		
affection (n)	مَوَدَّة	- Noha's affection for cats was clear.
affectionate (adj)	مُحِبٌّ	- Noha is very affectionate towards cats.
affectionately (adv)	بِمَحَبَّة	- Noha behaves affectionately towards cats.
anxious		
anxiety (n)	قَلَق	- Ayman's anxiety kept him awake all night.
anxious (adj)	قَلِيق	- Being anxious , Ayman kept awake all night.
anxiously (adv)	بِقَلَق	- Ayman waited anxiously for the test.
clumsy		
clumsiness (n)	التصرف بغباء - بدون مهارة	- His clumsiness made everyone laugh.
clumsy (adj)	أخرق - غير ماهر	- His clumsy hands dropped the vase.
clumsily (adv)	بغشيم / بعدم مهارة	- She walked clumsily on the ice.
cruelty		
cruelty (n)	قَسْوَة	- Cruelty destroys trust and love among people.
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	- It was cruel to leave the dog outside in the cold.
cruelly (adv)	بِقَسْوَة	- The dog was treated cruelly by the boy.

depression		
depression (n)	إِحْتِنَاب	- He suffered from depression for months.
depressed (adj)	مُكْتَبِب	- He was depressed for months.
depressing (adj)	مُخْبِط	- The news was too depressing to hear.
disaster		
disaster (n)	كَارِثَة	- The flood caused a huge disaster in the city.
disastrous (adj)	كَارِثِي	- The flood had disastrous effects on the city.
glamorous		
glamorous (adj)	بَاهِر - خَلَاب - سَاحِر	- Little Joury wore a glamorous dress to the party.
glamour (n)	فِئْتَة - رَوْنَق - زَهْوَة	- The city is full of glamour at night.
glamorously (adv)	بِشْكَل فَاتِن	- Joury dressed glamorously for the event.
hang out		
hang out (v)	يَتَنَزَّه	- We often hang out at the mall.
hanging out (n)	تَنَزُّه	- Hanging out with friends is fun.
hormone		
hormone (n)	هَرْمُون	- The doctor tested my hormone levels.
hormonal (adj)	هَرْمُونِي	- Teenagers go through many hormonal changes.
maintain		
maintain (v)	يُحَافِظُ	- You should maintain a healthy diet.
maintenance (n)	صِيَانَة	- The building needs regular maintenance .
maintained (adj)	مُحَافِظ عَلَيْهِ	- The garden is well- maintained .
mortify		
mortify (v)	يُخْجِلُ	- Don't mortify him in public.
mortified (adj)	مُخْجِل	- She was mortified by her mistake.
mortifying (adj)	مُخْجِل	- It was a mortifying situation.
reassure		
reassure (v)	يُظْفِقِنُ	- Please, reassure the parents.
reassurance (n)	ظَفَاقَة	- She gave me reassurance before the test.
reassured (adj)	مُظْفِقِن	- He felt reassured after talking to her.
socialize		
socialize (v)	يَنْدَمِج إجْتِمَاعِيَا	- It's good to socialize at events.
socialization (n)	تَنْسِئَة إجْتِمَاعِيَة	- School is a place for learning socialization .
socialized (adj)	مَنْدَمِج إجْتِمَاعِيَا	- Well- socialized children adapt easily.

strengthen		
strengthen (v)	يُقَوِّي	- Exercise helps strengthen the muscles.
strength (n)	قُوَّة	- Regular training builds strength .
strengthened (adj)	مُقَوَّى	- The bridge was strengthened with steel.
superficially		
superficially (adv)	بشكّل سطحيّ	- Ahmed read the report superficially .
superficial (adj)	سطحيّ	- Ahmed read the report in a superficial way.

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mrs Salma is very towards her students.
a. affectionately b. affectionate c. affection d. affectional
- Fady smiled as he handed her the flowers.
a. affectionate b. affectionately c. affectional d. affectioning
- We all feel before the final exams.
a. anxiously b. anxious c. anxiety d. anxiousness
- We are all before the final exams.
a. anxious b. anxiously c. anxiousness d. anxietly
- His caused him to break the vase.
a. clumsiness b. clumsy c. clumsily d. clumsied
- She walked in the narrow hallway.
a. clumsiness b. clumsy c. clumsily d. clumsied
- It was to take the kittens away from their mother.
a. cruel b. cruelty c. cruelly d. cruelness
- He spoke to the frightened child.
a. cruelty b. cruelly c. cruelness d. cruelful
- The old lady felt after hearing the bad news.
a. depress b. depressing c. depressed d. depressful
- This film was too to watch.
a. depression b. depressed c. depressing d. depressful
- The flood had a effect on the village.
a. disastrous b. disaster c. disasterring d. disastrously
- A football star's life is full of
a. glamorous b. glamour c. glamorously d. glamorful
- Zeina dressed for the party.
a. glamour b. glamorously c. glamorous d. glamouring
- We enjoy in the park at the weekend.
a. hanging out b. hang out c. hangouting d. hang outed
- The old car needs regular
a. maintenance b. maintained c. maintain d. maintainer

16. The garden is well-..... all year round.
a. maintain b. maintenance c. maintained d. maintaining
17. Rodayna was by the embarrassing question.
a. mortified b. mortify c. mortifying d. mortifies
18. It was a moment when the phone rang loudly during the lecture.
a. mortify b. mortified c. mortifying d. mortifies
19. Mom gave me great before my final exam.
a. reassure b. reassured c. reassurance d. reassurative

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

boost	mood	يُحَسِّن الحالة المزاجية	invest	in well-being	يَسْتَثْمِر في الرَّفَاهِيَّة
catch up	on old times	يَسْتَرْجِع الذِّكْرِيَّات القديمة	keep	my hands to myself	أَتَجَنَّب لِمَس الْآخَرِينَ
create	memories	يَصْنَع ذِكْرِيَّات	maintain	friendships	يُحَافِظُ عَلَى الصَّدَاقَات
develop	skills	يَطْوِّر مَهَارَات	make	plans	يَضَع خُطَطًا
do	revision	يُرَاجِع الدُّرُوس	share	experiences	يُشَارِك التَّجَارِب
hit	the town	يَخْرُجُ لِلتَّنَزُّه	strengthen	friendships	يَقْوِي الصَّدَاقَات

Mini Test 3 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A walk in the park can mood after a long day.
a. boost b. break c. swim d. lock
- He plans to start his own business.
a. made b. did c. painted d. carried
- Before the exam, a student should revision to prepare well.
a. sing b. jump c. do d. walk
- In the museum, I was told to my hands to myself.
a. dance b. run c. keep d. dig
- It's important to friendships so they last for years.
a. jump b. maintain c. dig d. spill
- Let's the town this Friday to celebrate your birthday.
a. hit b. swim c. read d. sleep
- This course will help you skills for your future career.
a. shout b. develop c. hit d. pull
- Traveling with others is a great chance to experiences.
a. draw b. share c. throw d. lift
- Vacations are perfect to memories with family.
a. create b. sweep c. spin d. fall
- We met after ten years to up on old times.
a. catch b. paint c. shout d. drive

4

Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
affection (n)	مَوَدَّة	love, fondness, attachment, warmth
anxiety (n)	قَلَق	worry, concern, unease
clumsy (adj)	ثَقِيلُ الْحَرَكَةِ - أَحْرَق	awkward, ungraceful, heavy-handed
cruelty (n)	قَسْوَةٌ	brutality, harshness, savagery, ruthlessness
depression (n)	اِحْتِنَاب	sadness, gloom, despair, misery
disaster (n)	كَارِثَةٌ	catastrophe, calamity, tragedy, misfortune
glamorous (adj)	فَائِن	charming, stylish, elegant, attractive
hang out (v)	يَتَنَزَّه	spend time, relax, gather
maintain(ed) (v)	يُحَافِظُ - يَقُومُ بِصِيَانَةٍ	preserve, sustain, continue, uphold
mortify(ied) (v)	يُخْجِلُ	humiliate, embarrass, shame, degrade
reassure(d) (v)	يُطْمَئِنِّ	comfort, encourage, soothe, support
socialize(d) (v)	يَنْدَمِجُ اجْتِمَاعِيًّا	mingle, interact, communicate, mix
strengthen(ed) (v)	يُقَوِّي	fortify, reinforce, build up, boost
superficially (adv)	بِشَكْلِ سَطْحِيّ	shallowly, lightly, externally, outwardly
well-being (n)	رَمَاهِيَّة	welfare, health, happiness, comfort

5

Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (=Opposite)
affection (n)	مَوَدَّة	hatred, dislike, animosity كَرَاهِيَّةٌ، تُفُور، غَدَاء
anxiety (n)	قَلَق	calmness, ease, relaxation هُدُوء، رَاحَةٌ، اسْتِزْخَاء
clumsiness (n)	التصرف بغياء أو بغير مهارة	grace, skill, elegance رَشَاقَةٌ، مَهَارَةٌ، أُنَاقَةٌ
clumsy (adj)	ثَقِيلُ الْحَرَكَةِ - أَحْرَق	graceful, skillful, nimble رَشِيقٌ، مَاهِرٌ، خَفِيفُ الْحَرَكَةِ
cruelty (n)	قَسْوَةٌ	kindness, compassion, mercy لُطْفٌ، رُحْمَةٌ، عَطْفٌ
depression (n)	اِحْتِنَاب	happiness, joy, cheerfulness سَعَادَةٌ، فَرَجٌ، بُهْجَةٌ
disaster (n)	كَارِثَةٌ	success, blessing, triumph نَجَاحٌ، بَرَكَةٌ، نَصْرٌ
glamorous (adj)	فَائِن	plain, dull, unattractive عَادِيٌّ، بَاهِتٌ، غَيْرُ جَذَابٍ
hang out (v)	يَتَنَزَّه	work, study, be busy يَغْمَلُ، يَذْرُسُ، يَنْشِغِلُ
hit the town (v)	يَخْرُجُ لِلتَّنَزُّهِ	stay in, rest, stay home يَبْقَى فِي الْبَيْتِ، يَسْتَرِيحُ
maintain(ed) (v)	يُحَافِظُ - يَقُومُ بِصِيَانَةٍ	neglect, abandon, ignore يُهْمِلُ، يَتْرُكُ، يَتَجَاهَلُ
mortify(ied) (v)	يُخْجِلُ	praise, honor, flatter يُمْدَحُ، يُكْرَمُ، يُطْرِي
mortifying (adj)	مُخْجِلٌ	delightful, pleasant, pleasing مُسْعِدٌ، سَازٌ، مُرْضٍ
reassure(d) (v)	يُطْمَئِنِّ	alarm, worry, unsettle يُخْيفُ، يُقْلِقُ، يُزْجِعُ
socialize(d) (v)	يُخَالِطُ	isolate, avoid, desert يَغْزِلُ، يَتَجَنَّبُ، يَهْجُرُ
strengthen(ed) (v)	يُقَوِّي	weaken, reduce, damage يُضْعِفُ، يُقَلِّلُ، يُؤْذِي
superficially (adv)	بِشَكْلِ سَطْحِيّ	deeply, thoroughly, profoundly بَعْمَقٌ، بِشَكْلِ شَاہِلٍ، بَعْمَقٌ
well-being (n)	رَمَاهِيَّة	suffering, misery, hardship مُعَانَاةٌ، بُؤْسٌ، مُشَقَّةٌ

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

• Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "After months of depression, the old woman finally started to smile again." The word 'depression' here is antonymous with
a. cheerfulness b. misery c. happiness
d. gloom e. sadness
2. "After work, Mr Walid likes to hang out at the café and chat." The phrase 'hang out' here means
a. work b. relax c. study
d. attend e. gather
3. "At the meeting, guests had the chance to socialize with old fellows." The word 'socialize' here is a synonym of
a. avoid b. mingle c. isolate
d. mix e. shun
4. "Before exams, Mohammed's anxiety keeps him nervous." The word 'anxiety' here can be replaced by
a. worry b. joy c. success
d. health e. unease
5. "Farmers must maintain soil to grow good crops." The word 'maintain' here is a synonym of
a. abandon b. preserve c. ignore
d. sustain e. neglect
6. "For Rokaya, speaking in front of hundreds of people was a mortifying experience." The word 'mortifying' here is a synonym of
a. delightful b. pleasant c. embarrassing
d. pleasing e. degrading
7. "Grace" is to 'clumsiness' as 'kindness' is to
a. generosity b. cruelty c. affection
d. savagery e. mortified
8. "He is so clumsy that he often bumps into people in the street." The word 'clumsy' is synonymous with
a. graceful b. awkward c. glamorous
d. plain e. ungraceful
9. "He read the report superficially, so he missed important details." The word 'superficially' here is a synonym of
a. externally b. thoroughly c. shallowly
d. profoundly e. deeply
10. "Mr Shaker tried not to mortify the student by correcting him gently." The word 'mortify' here is an antonym of
a. praise b. humiliate c. honor
d. shame e. embarrass

Mini Test

5

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- [illegible]

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

clumsiness – laziness

- **clumsiness (n)** التعامل بغباء - بدون مهارة
- Khalid's **clumsiness** caused him to drop the glass.
- **laziness(n):** كسل
- Tasneem's **laziness** kept her from finishing the project.

disaster – accident

- **disaster(n):** كارثة
- The earthquake was a natural **disaster**.
- **accident(n):** حادث
- He broke his arm in a car **accident**.

hang out – hang up

- **hang out(v):** يتنزه أو يقضي الوقت
- We **hang out** at the park every weekend.
- **hang up(v):** يخليق / ينهي المكالمة
- Rody **hung up** the phone after saying goodbye.

mortify – modify

- **mortify (v)** يُخجل
- The mistake in his speech **mortified** him.
- **modify(v):** يُغذّل
- They **modified** the design to make it safer.

reassure – ensure

- **reassure (v)** يُطمئن
- Mrs Safaa **reassured** me that everything was fine.
- **ensure(v):** يتأكد
- Please **ensure** all windows are locked.

sociable – social

- **sociable(adj):** إجتماعي (وُود)
- Noha is a **sociable** person who loves parties.
- **social(adj):** إجتماعي (مُتعلّق بالمُجتمع)
- **Social** issues affect the whole community.

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Before leaving, please the doors are locked.

a. mortify

b. ensure

c. hang up

d. reassure

2. He didn't finish the project because of

a. clumsiness

b. accident

c. laziness

d. mortifying

3. Her caused her to spill her coffee during the meeting.
a. laziness b. clumsiness c. social d. disaster
4. **SB** Let's at the new mall shop after class.
a. hang up b. hang out c. ensure d. happen
5. She decided to the phone before he could finish speaking.
a. hang up b. hang out c. mortify d. reassure
6. The broken vase was just a small household
a. disaster b. accident c. weekend d. mortification
7. The designer had to the plan to meet safety regulations.
a. reassure b. modify c. hang out d. mortify
8. The earthquake was the worst the country had faced in years.
a. accident b. disaster c. weeknight d. social
9. The teacher's public comment was meant to correct, not to the student.
a. mortify b. modify c. ensure d. reassure

III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Text

• on Lesson 1 SB page 83

Last Saturday, I **experienced**⁽¹⁾ the most **mortifying**⁽²⁾ situation of my life while **hanging out**⁽³⁾ with my friends. We had decided to **hit the town**⁽⁴⁾ and **celebrate**⁽⁵⁾ Rawan's **promotion**⁽⁶⁾ at a **cool**⁽⁷⁾ **downtown**⁽⁸⁾ restaurant.

Everything started perfectly. We were having a wonderful time, laughing and **catching up on**⁽⁹⁾ old times. The **atmosphere**⁽¹⁰⁾ was **lively**⁽¹¹⁾, and everyone seemed **cheerful**⁽¹²⁾ - quite the opposite of our usual **dull**⁽¹³⁾ **weeknight**⁽¹⁴⁾ **gatherings**⁽¹⁵⁾. I was feeling **confident**⁽¹⁶⁾ and **sociable**⁽¹⁷⁾, completely **unaware**⁽¹⁸⁾ of the **disaster**⁽¹⁹⁾ that was about to **happen**⁽²⁰⁾.

When the waiter brought our food, I reached for the salt shaker. Owing to my clumsiness, I knocked over not just my drink, but also Sarah's juice, which splashed all over her brand-new white dress. The silence that followed was unbearable. Sarah looked annoyed, and I felt absolutely helpless.

Sarah was upset, and she went to clean her dress. When she came back, she found me pale as a ghost. Sarah felt how embarrassed I was, and told me that such incidents happen all the time. At this time, I realized how important it is to have true friends who stand by your side in thin and thick. I also learned to be more careful.



أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

- (1) يُجَرَّبُ
- (2) مُخْجَلٌ
- (3) يَتَلَقَّ
- (4) يَخْرُجُ لِلتَّنَزُّهِ
- (5) يَخْتَفِلُ
- (6) تَرْقِيَّةٌ
- (7) رَائِعٌ
- (8) وَسْطُ الْقَدِيئَةِ
- (9) يَتَابَعُ
- (10) الْجَوُّ
- (11) نَشِيطٌ
- (12) مُتَبَهِّجٌ
- (13) فَمِيلٌ
- (14) نَيْلَةٌ أَسْبُوعِيَّةٌ
- (15) تَجَمُّعٌ
- (16) وَالِقٌ
- (17) إِجْتِمَاعِيٌّ
- (18) غَيْرُ مُذْرِكٍ
- (19) كَارِثَةٌ
- (20) يَحْدُثُ

2 Listening Text

• on Lesson 2 SB page 86

Have you ever wondered why hanging out with friends makes you feel so good? Research shows that **socializing**⁽¹⁾ has incredible benefits for both our physical and mental health.

When we spend time with others, our bodies **release**⁽²⁾ **hormones**⁽³⁾ that reduce stress and **boost**⁽⁴⁾ our mood. Regular social **interaction**⁽⁵⁾ can actually strengthen our **immune system**⁽⁶⁾ and help us live longer lives.

People who **maintain**⁽⁷⁾ strong friendships **tend to**⁽⁸⁾ have lower rates of **depression**⁽⁹⁾ and **anxiety**⁽¹⁰⁾.

But the benefits go beyond health. Socializing helps us develop better communication skills and increases our confidence in social situations. When we share experiences with friends, we create lasting memories and feel more connected to our community.

However, quality **matters**⁽¹¹⁾ more than quantity. Having a few close friends is more **beneficial**⁽¹²⁾ than knowing many people **superficially**⁽¹³⁾. Face-to-face interaction is particularly powerful, though online connections can also provide support.

So next time someone invites you to hang out, remember – you're not just having fun, you're investing in your well-being.



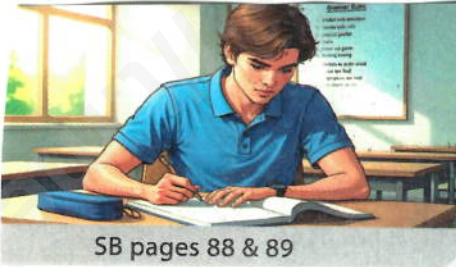
- (1) الاندماج في المجتمع
- (2) يُطْلَق
- (3) هُزْمُونَات
- (4) يَرْفَعُ / يعزز
- (5) تفاعل
- (6) الجهاز المناعي
- (7) يُحافظُ
- (8) يميل إلى
- (9) اكتئاب
- (10) قلق
- (11) يهتم
- (12) مفيد
- (13) بشكل سطحي

احرص على اقتناء

EL-MOASSER كتب

في
اللغة
الإنجليزية
3
الصفحة
الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني





SB pages 88 & 89

PART TWO

Lesson

3

A Beautiful Day with Friends

I LISTENING

• on Lesson 3 SB page 88

A Beautiful Day with Friends

Last Saturday, HEND spent a wonderful day with her friends. The weather was sunny, and the sky looked a clear blue. In the morning, she met her friends at the park. They had brought sandwiches, fruit, and juice to share. Everyone laughed as they sat under a large tree, talking about their week. One of her friends asked HEND if she had finished her school project, and she replied that she had already completed it.

After lunch, the group decided to play games. They ran races, played football, and took funny photos together. HEND mentioned that the park was the perfect place to relax, and her friends agreed with her. Another friend wondered whether they could come back the next weekend, and HEND said that she would love to. Later, they walked by the lake, watching the ducks swim peacefully. The gentle breeze made the afternoon even more enjoyable.

In the evening, HEND and her friends went to a small café near the park. They ordered ice cream and shared stories about school and family. HEND said it was the happiest day she had had in a long time. She felt grateful for her caring friends and promised she would spend more time with them. It truly was a beautiful and unforgettable day.

أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

II LANGUAGE

Reported Questions الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر

١ يبدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام في الكلام المباشر بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية يليها الفعل المساعد :

→ What – When – Where – Why – Who – Whose – Which – How ...

- “Where have you spent the weekend?” asked Omar.

(مباشر)

= Omar asked, “Where have you spent the weekend?”

(مباشر)

٢ تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام في الكلام غير المباشر من :



لاحظ : نص الكلام غير المباشر يكون على شكل جملة خبرية (فاعل + فعل ...)

٣ يبدأ سؤال (No / Yes) بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة مثل :

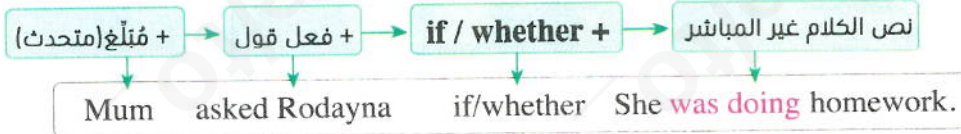
→ am – is – are – was – were – have – has – had – do – does – did

→ can – could – will – would – may – might – shall – should – must ...

- “Are you doing your homework, Rodayna?” asked mum. (مباشر)

= Mom asked, “Are you doing your homework, Rodayna?” (مباشر)

٤ تتكون جملة سؤال (No / Yes) فى الكلام غير المباشر من :



لاحظ : نص الكلام غير المباشر يكون على شكل جملة خبرية (فاعل + فعل ...)

٥ يستخدم فعل إبلاغ بعد المُبَلِّغ (المتحدث)، وهناك نوعان من أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالأسئلة :

(١) يمكن استخدام أو عدم استخدام المخاطب بعد الفعل (asked) والمُخاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول :

(me – him – her – it – you – us – them)

- Nada asked Ahmed when he was leaving home. (السؤال كان موجهاً لأحمد)

- Nada asked when Ahmed was leaving home. (السؤال كان موجهاً لأحمد أو غيره)

(ب) لا يمكن أن يأتي المُخاطَب بعد أفعال الإبلاغ التالية :

→ wondered - استفسر - inquired - أراد أن يعرف - wanted to know - تساءل

- Nada wondered when Ahmed was leaving home. (Not : wondered Ahmed)

٦ لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص (".....") أو علامة الاستفهام فى الكلام غير المباشر :

- "Why are you angry, father?" said Abdu. (مباشر)

- Abdu asked father why he was angry. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 1

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mohammed me if I enjoyed my mid-year holiday.
a. told b. asked c. inquired d. a & b
- Mohammed if I enjoyed my mid-year holiday.
a. told b. asked c. inquired d. b & c
- She wanted to know I was doing.
a. if b. whether c. a & b d. what
- She wanted to know I was doing anything.
a. if b. whether c. a & b d. what
- My father asked I had been.
a. where b. who c. if d. when
- My father asked I had been busy or not.
a. where b. who c. if d. which
- My father asked I had been visiting.
a. where b. who c. if d. when

٧ تذكر أن: بعد كل من (if - whether) وأدوات الاستفهام يأتي الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد فى الكلام غير المباشر:

- Mom asked if had I done the shopping. ❌

- Mom asked if I had done the shopping. ✅

- Hasnaa wanted to know why was I late for school. ❌

- Hasnaa wanted to know why I was late for school. ✅

٨ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطَب مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع جدول تحويل الضمائر بهذه الوحدة) :

- Yara asked, "When are **you** repairing **my** tablet for **me**, Ahmed?" (مباشر)
- Yara asked Ahmed when **he** was repairing **her** tablet for **her**. (غير مباشر)

٩ تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع جدول تحويل الظروف بالوحدة) :

- "Did you visit **this** place **last year**?", said Khalid. (مباشر)
- Khalid asked me if I had visited **that** place **the previous year**. (غير مباشر)

١٠ تتحول الأزمنة مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع جدول تحويل الأزمنة بهذه الوحدة) :

- "Are **you** having dinner outdoors tomorrow?" Mariam said to Karim. (مباشر)
- Mariam asked Karim **if he was having** dinner outdoors the next day. (غير مباشر)
- "Where **have you found** your lost keys, Amr?" asked Nancy. (مباشر)
- Nancy asked Amr where **he had found** his lost keys. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 2

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The reporter asked if the firefighters were saving the child
a. tonight b. now c. today d. then
- The reporter asked if the firefighters had saved the child
a. then b. the following day c. the day before d. a & b
- Menna asked Bassant how travel to Cairo.
a. will she b. she will c. would she d. she would
- Menna asks Bassant how travel to Cairo.
a. will she b. she will c. would she d. she would
- I asked Mai what doing.
a. she was b. was she c. could she be d. is she
- Ahmed asked me when I had gone to bed
a. tonight b. that night c. now d. yet

١١ لا تُستخدم (do – does) كأفعال مساعدة في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي

البسيط (التصريف الثاني) :

- "What time **do you have** your break?" asked Eman. (مباشر)
- Eman asked me what time **I had** my break. (غير مباشر)
- "Does your mother **help** you, Rokaya?" asked Leen. (مباشر)
- Leen asked Rokaya if **her mother helped** her. (غير مباشر)

١٢ لا تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي التام أو يبقَى

ماضيًا بسيطًا كما هو :

- "What **did you prepare** for lunch, mum?" asked Walid. (مباشر)
- Walid asked mum what **she (had) prepared** for lunch. (غير مباشر)
- "Did you **use** my tablet, Zamzam?" asked Rodayna. (مباشر)
- Rodayna asked Zamzam if **she (had) used** her tablet. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 3

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I wondered when up every morning.
a. does he get b. he gets c. did he get d. he got
- I wonder when up every morning.
a. does he get b. he gets c. did he get d. was he getting
- I asked, "When up every morning?"
a. does he get b. he gets c. did he get d. a & c
- Rodayna wants to know whether her a present.
a. mum has bought b. has mum bought c. did mum buy d. mum had bought
- Rodayna wanted to know whether her a present.
a. mum has bought b. has mum bought c. did mum buy d. mum had bought

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ تتحول (shall) في حالة الاقتراح إلى (should) :

- " Shall we speak English?" said Ahmed. (مباشر)
- Ahmed wondered if / whether we should speak English. (غير مباشر)

٢ الصيغة التالية ليست كلام غير مباشر، لكن يأتي الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (if / whether) أو أداة الاستفهام :

- Can / Could ... + you / he / ... + أدوات استفهام + subj. فاعل ... ؟
- Can you tell me how I can answer this question? (NOT : how can I)
 - Do you know if Mai will be late ? (NOT : if will Mai)

٣ يمكن استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالجملة الخبرية قبل (whether / if) أو أداة الاستفهام عند الرد على سؤال وليس في الكلام غير المباشر :

- I have told you why I was late for school.
- Malak didn't say whether her father would attend the party or not.

٤ عند تحويل السؤال المذيل إلى غير المباشر يتم تحويل الجملة الخبرية مثل الجملة الاستفهامية ويفضل استخدام فعل القول (want(ed) to make sure).

- John said, "You'll buy a car, won't you ?"
- John wanted to make sure if I would buy a car.

General Exercises On Language

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting Started

- She if I knew Ahmed.
a. said b. told c. suggested d. asked
- She wondered
a. how did they leave b. how they did leave c. how they left d. how they will leave

3. Samir asked Salwa why angry.
a. is she b. was she c. she is d. she was
4. The operator asked if I the reply to my problem the week before.
a. had received b. have received c. was receiving d. would receive
5. Hany me why I had chosen that jeans.
a. said b. inquired c. ordered d. asked
6. Toka wanted to know I was ready for the trip or not.
a. whether b. why c. that d. when
7. The manager asked why I to change that suit.
a. want b. was wanted c. wanted d. have wanted
8. My father asked why that reviews.
a. I was making b. was I making c. I will make d. had I made
9. My friend wanted to know how long sleeping in bed.
a. am I b. I am c. had I been d. I had been
10. My neighbors wanted to know I had lived in my flat.
a. who b. what c. how long d. that
11. Mona asked the technician..... he had fixed her mobile.
a. why b. if c. that d. weather
12. She wanted to know if to go to university the following year.
a. was I planning b. I plan c. I was planning d. I will plan
13. He wanted to know swimming and had a good time.
a. whether I enjoying b. if did I enjoy c. whether I enjoy d. if I enjoyed
14. She asked me for my holiday the previous summer.
a. where I have gone b. I had gone c. where I had gone d. where had I been
15. Mum wanted to know whether I anything wrong that made my aunt leave so angrily.
a. had said b. was said c. will say d. was saying
16. Emma said, "Can we use your camera?" - Emma asked me if could use my camera.
a. I b. he c. we d. they
17. He asked me whether I had finished reading the book lent me the week before.
a. he was b. was he c. he had d. had he
18. "How much money do you need?" he asked. - "Twenty pounds," I
a. replied b. told c. wanted d. asked

2 Special Cases

19. Mazen wonders when I home because he wants me to help him.
a. had returned b. going to return c. would return d. will return
20. I asked my friend if food served in the restaurant.
a. has b. had c. had been d. has been
21. Please, tell me where meet next week.
a. we were going to b. we are going to c. will we d. are we going to
22. Could you tell me why to Paris last October?
a. did you travel b. had you travelled c. you travelled d. you had travelled

23. Leen wanted to know or not I would accept that invitation.
 a. if b. whether c. that d. which
24. The policeman asked the reporter about when he was jogging.
 a. what did he lose b. what had he lost c. what he lost d. what he was losing
25. She asked me whether there before.
 a. I had been b. I went c. I had had d. had I been
26. Omar wondered where the charger
 a. puts b. is putting c. was put d. is put
27. He wondered if iron a metal.
 a. had been b. were c. is d. has been
28. He wanted to know whether anyone the book he was reading.
 a. had seen b. has seen c. sees d. was seeing
29. "Where been?" he asked me.
 a. have you b. you have c. had you d. you had
30. Nadia wants to know if I anything interesting next weekend.
 a. am going to do b. have done c. am doing d. a & c
31. He asked me whether I I would enjoy working there.
 a. thinking b. has thought c. was thinking d. thought
32. I wonder why at me like that. Stop it, please.
 a. you will shout b. did you shout c. you shout d. do you shout
33. Can you tell me how to the train station, please?
 a. I got b. I can get c. can I get d. do I get

3 Check your understanding

34. Which sentence must be ended with a full stop (.)?
 a. Why did you come late yesterday
 b. She wondered why I had hidden the documents
 c. What a fashionable dress
 d. How great
35. Mustafa wonders if I have enough money on me. What is Mustafa's question?
 a. Have you had enough money on you? b. Have you got enough money on you?
 c. Do you have enough money on you? d. b & c
36. "Would you mind lending me some money?" I asked Omar
 a. if he mind lending me some money.
 b. whether he would mind lending me some money.
 c. if I minded lending him some money.
 d. whether I would mind lending him some money.
37. "Could you show me?"
 a. how I can answer this question b. how can I answer this question
 c. how I had answered this question d. how had I answered this question

38. **Sama:** "Where are my glasses, mum?" **Mum:** On your desk!
 a. Sama asked mum where her glasses were b. I have told you where they are, Sama
 c. I told Sama where they were d. a & b
39. **Ali:** "You are OK, aren't you?" **Ziad:** What does Ali say? - **Amir :**
 a. Ali told you whether he was OK. b. Ali tells you whether he is OK.
 c. Ali wanted to make sure if you had been OK. d. Ali wants to make sure if you are OK.
40. "I asked if Ahmed was at home." Who is the possible addressee?
 a. Ahmed. b. Someone else. c. a & b d. Me.
41. "Why are you late?" Mrs Eman me why I was late.
 a. asked b. said c. wondered d. answered
42. "Where did you park your car?" she inquired. She where I had parked my car.
 a. asked b. said c. told d. spoke
43. "Have you finished the report?" Mr Abdulrahman if Yara had finished the report.
 a. answered b. asked c. replied d. spoke
44. "What time will you arrive?" Hossam me what time I would arrive.
 a. wondered b. asked c. requested d. replied
45. "I will see you here tomorrow," Mai told me yesterday. Mai told me she would see me the next day.
 a. there b. here c. then d. yesterday
46. "I met him yesterday," Nagwa said last Monday. Nagwa said she had met him
 a. yesterday b. that day c. the day before d. next day
47. "We will start the project next week," they announced. They announced they would start the project
 a. the following week b. last week c. yesterday d. that week
48. "I'm going to Edfu today," said Ahmed. Ahmed said he was going to Edfu
 a. today b. tomorrow c. that day d. next day
49. "We met at this mall," Amir recalled. Amir recalled that they had met at
 a. this mall b. here mall c. that mall d. there mall
50. "I saw him here," Hala said. Hala said she had seen him
 a. here b. their c. there d. this
51. "Do you like coffee?" Sama asked. Sama asked me I liked coffee.
 a. what b. who c. if d. how
52. "Will you attend the meeting?" Radwan wanted to know. Radwan wanted to know I would attend the meeting.
 a. whether b. what c. when d. why
53. "What are you doing now?" he asked. He asked me I was doing then.
 a. if b. what c. whether d. when
54. "Do you prefer tea or coffee?" Laila asked. Laila asked me I preferred tea or coffee.
 a. do b. whether c. what d. why

55. "Did she call you?" Yasmeen inquired. Yasmeen wanted to know she had called me.
 a. if b. what c. when d. how
56. "Where are you going?" Lujain asked me where was going.
 a. I b. you c. he d. we
57. "Can I borrow your book?" Ali wondered if could borrow my book.
 a. you b. he c. I d. they
58. "Will we have a test tomorrow?" The students wanted to know if would have a test the next day.
 a. she b. they c. her d. we
59. "Do you like Italian food?" Youssef inquired whether liked Italian food.
 a. I b. he c. you d. they
60. "Can you help me with my homework?" Sami wanted to know if I could help with his homework.
 a. her b. he c. him d. me
61. "I am studying English," Malak said. Malak said she English.
 a. studies b. was studying c. is studying d. studied
62. "We saw him last night," they said. They said they him the night before.
 a. see b. had seen c. saw d. have seen
63. "I will help you," Hussein promised. Hussein promised he help me.
 a. would b. will c. shall d. can
64. "I have finished my homework," Taha said. Taha told me he his homework.
 a. finished b. had finished c. has finished d. finishes
65. "I can swim fast," Omar said. Omar said he swim fast.
 a. can b. could c. may d. would
66. "I may visit Paris," Salma said. Salma said she visit Paris.
 a. can b. might c. must d. will
67. "I must leave now," Nasser told me. Nasser told me he leave then.
 a. should b. had to c. must d. could
68. They said they them the following week.
 a. meet b. are meeting c. were meeting d. met
69. "I didn't see him," she said. She said she him.
 a. wasn't seeing b. doesn't see c. hadn't seen d. hasn't seen
70. "We saw them in the park." They said had seen in the park.
 a. they / them b. they / us c. we / them d. they / they
71. "You can call me later." He said I could call later.
 a. me b. him c. her d. us
72. "She will invite us to her wedding." They said she would invite to her wedding.
 a. us b. our c. we d. ours
73. "I will show you my house." He said he would show his house.
 a. me b. him c. her d. them

74. "Where are they going?" He asked they were going.
 a. if b. where c. whether d. that
75. "Will you attend the meeting?" She asked me I would attend the meeting.
 a. if b. whether c. where d. a & b

Stop Here !

تدريب تلقائي على القواعد اللغوية

• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. "Where did you leave your bag?" asked the guard. (The guard inquired ...)
2. My mother wanted to know why I had come home late the day before. ("Why...")
3. "What are you reading now?" asked Samia. (wanted to know what)
4. He asked when the bus would arrive. ("When ...?")
5. "Who wrote this story?" the teacher questioned. (questioned who)
6. Sara asked how I had solved the problem. ("How ...?")
7. "Which project did your team finish last month?" asked Karim. (asked which)
8. The coach wondered how many goals the team had missed in the match. ("How ...?")
9. "How much money have you saved this year?" Leila inquired. (inquired how)
10. The policeman wanted to know whose car was parked outside. ("... car is ...?")
11. "Whom did you invite to your birthday party?" asked Aya. (whom I)
12. Adam asked what kind of music Joury liked. ("What ..., Joury?")
13. The manager asked how long we would stay in Cairo. ("... will ...?")
14. "When are you planning to travel to Luxor?" his uncle wondered. (wondered when)
15. My father asked if I had finished my homework. ("Have ...?")
16. "Do you know the answer?" the teacher inquired. (if)
17. Omar wondered if Rania would call him later. ("Will ..., Rania?")
18. "Did you watch the movie last night?" Ahmed questioned. (if)
19. My sister wanted to know if I was hungry. ("Are ...?")
20. "Can you help me with this box?" Hossam asked. (if)
21. The manager asked if I could attend the meeting. ("Can ...?")
22. "Will you travel next summer?" the doctor inquired. (whether)
23. The teacher wondered if Arwa had arrived by then. ("Has ...?")
24. "Should I send the email now?" Eman asked. (if)
25. My friend questioned if I might join him for lunch. ("Might ...?")
26. "Would you like some coffee?" the waiter asked. (whether)
27. I wanted to know if the students must finish the test in one hour. ("Must ...?")
28. "Could you show me your ticket, please?" the officer inquired. (if)

A bit advanced

29. "What a great choice!" I exclaimed. (Reported speech)
30. "Sama, do work hard to achieve success," I said. (Reported speech)
31. "I asked that Roaa should send all the invitations that day" said the manager. (Direct speech)



SB pages 90 : 95

PART THREE

Lessons

4 & 5

► Why Hanging Out Matters
► Tell the World What You Saw!

I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary

compromise(d) (v)	يَتَفَاوَضُ	interaction (n)	تَفَاعُل
destructive (adj)	مُذْمَر	overwhelming (adj)	مُزْهِق / غامر
disappointing (adj)	مُخَيِّب - مُجِيب	packed (adj)	مُفْتَلٍ - مُعَبَأ
entertainment (n)	تَرْفِيه - تَسْلِيَة	recommend(ed) (v)	يُوصِي بِ / يُرَكِّي

2 Important Vocabulary

bench (n)	مِقْعَد	occasion (n)	مُنَاسَبَة
chat(ted) (v)	يَتَخَاوَر	option (n)	خِيَار
chemicals (n)	مَوَاد كِيمِيَاءِيَّة	order (ed) (v)	يَطْلُب
depth (n)	عُمُق	overall (adv)	عُمُومًا
despite (prep)	عَلَى الرَّغْمِ مِنْ	performance (n)	أَدَاء
effort (n)	جُهْد	persuade(d) (v)	يُقْنِع
empathy (n)	تَعَاظِف	practice(d) (v)	يُمَارِس
feature (n)	مِيزَة	relationship (n)	عِلَاقَة
forgive (v)	يَسَامَح	relaxed (adj)	مُسْتَرَخ
form(ed) (v) (n)	يَشْكُل - شَكْل - صِيغَة	schedule (n)	جَدْوَل
greet(ed) (v)	يُخَيِّ	stay in touch (v)	يَبْقَى عَلَى تَوَاصُل
hurry (n)	عَجَلَة	stress (n)	تَوَثُر
immune (adj)	مُنَاعِي	struggle(d) (v)	يُغَاقِب / يَكَاغِح
impression (n)	إِنطِبَاع	terrific (adj)	زَائِع
interest (n)	إِهْتِمَام	texting (n)	إِرْسَال رِسَال نَصِيَّة
invest(ed) (v)	يَسْتُثْمِر	thriller (n)	فِيلْم إِثَارَة
meaningful (adj)	ذُو مَعْنَى	throughout (prep)	طَوَالَ

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 Key vocabulary

- Good between Reem and her teachers helps learning.
a. interaction b. silence c. ignoring d. separation
- Mohammed and Ali decided to settle the argument and finally
a. fought b. argued c. compromised d. shouted

3. Mr Mustafa always this book to students who love history.
a. recommended b. ignored c. avoided d. refused
4. Music, movies, and sports are forms of
a. education b. entertainment c. work d. chores
5. The amount of homework this week is for Hossam. He is in a mess.
a. easy b. light c. overwhelming d. simple
6. The film looked exciting, but it was actually
a. wonderful b. amazing c. terrific d. disappointing
7. The hurricane caused damage to the small village.
a. peaceful b. safe c. helpful d. destructive
8. The train was so that passengers couldn't move.
a. packed b. empty c. spacious d. wide

2 Important vocabulary

9. "The movie was a full of suspense," said Ayman.
a. comedy b. thriller c. romance d. cartoon
10., the trip was a great success for Areej.
a. Slowly b. Finally c. Sadly d. Overall
11. the rain, the football match continued.
a. Because b. Since c. Despite d. Until
12. After dinner, Karim and Lujain for hours about school days.
a. shouted b. chatted c. ignored d. agreed
13. After the massage, Ali felt very He came first.
a. relaxed b. stressed c. tense d. worried
14. Amal and Noha sat on a park under a tree to watch the sunset.
a. chair b. sofa c. bench d. stool
15. Exercise helps Ahmed reduce
a. stress b. fun c. joy d. laughter
16. Factories use dangerous liquid that must be stored safely.
a. tools b. chemicals c. chairs d. bottles
17. Fatma is in a because the train leaves in five minutes.
a. hurry b. rest c. delay d. holiday
18. Helping the poor is a act for Hussein.
a. selfish b. rude c. cruel d. meaningful
19. Ibrahim pizza and drinks for the party.
a. cooked b. invested c. ignored d. ordered
20. It's important to people who hurt you. We all make mistakes.
a. blame b. forgive c. punish d. insult
21. Joury and Adam a plan to spend the weekend.
a. formed b. broke c. destroyed d. ruined
22. Many teens spend hours their friends, said Mekka.
a. ignoring b. texting c. avoiding d. shouting

23. Mohammed and Esraa speaking English every day.
 a. avoid b. refuse c. practice d. stop
24. Nada to pay her bills last month.
 a. succeeded b. struggled c. damaged d. solved
25. Nadeen has a lot of time in learning English.
 a. wasted b. ignored c. lost d. invested
26. Omar says his phone's best is its long battery life.
 a. feature b. weakness c. problem d. mistake
27. Passing the exam required a lot of hard from Rodayna.
 a. sleep b. effort c. laziness d. rest
28. Reading is one of Khalid's main outside of school.
 a. interests b. occurrence c. hates d. mistakes
29. Safwa showed by understanding her friend's sadness.
 a. anger b. pride c. rudeness d. empathy
30. The library is open the year, said Safwa.
 a. throughout b. after c. before d. under
31. The meeting is on Youssef's work for next week.
 a. break b. holiday c. schedule d. rest
32. The teacher Walid welcomingly at the door.
 a. refused b. ignored c. avoided d. greeted
33. The team's was praised by all fans.
 a. performance b. failure c. mistake d. error
34. The view from the mountain was
 a. ugly b. terrific c. plain d. boring
35. The writer's words had great and emotion.
 a. depth b. height c. width d. length
36. They decorated the hall for a special
 a. mistake b. accident c. occasion d. problem
37. Trust is important in any
 a. trick b. lie c. fight d. relationship
38. Vaccines help our bodies build a better system.
 a. sick b. weak c. immune d. tired
39. We use social media to with old friends, said Zeinab.
 a. avoid b. stay in touch c. fight d. separate
40. Yara's smile leaves a positive on everyone she met.
 a. anger b. doubt c. fear d. impression
41. You have only one – take it or leave it.
 a. option b. duty c. command d. order
42. Zeinab's teacher tried to Rodayna to join the club.
 a. force b. persuade c. ignore d. avoid

43. During the tense negotiations, both companies agreed to slightly adjust their demands and on the final terms.
a. oppose b. compromise c. dominate d. withdraw
44. Rapid urban expansion without proper planning can have effects on the environment.
a. destructive b. temporary c. negligible d. harmless
45. After months of promotion, the long-awaited product launch proved, leaving customers frustrated.
a. disappointing b. inspiring c. thrilling d. groundbreaking
46. Many governments invest in public parks, cinemas, and theatres to provide citizens with quality
a. entertainment b. employment c. transportation d. housing
47. Successful diplomacy often relies on respectful between leaders of opposing nations.
a. conflict b. isolation c. interaction d. rejection

II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Definitions التعريفات

compromise(d) (v) يتفاوض	to reach an agreement in which each side gives up part of what they want
destructive(adj) مُدمّر	causing great and irreparable harm or damage
disappointing(adj) مُخيّب - مُحبط	not as good as you had hoped or expected
entertainment(n) ترفيه - تسلية	activities, performances, or events designed to amuse or interest people
interaction(n) تفاعل	the act of communicating or working together
overwhelming(adj) مُرهق / غامر	very great or intense; difficult to deal with
packed(adj) مُمتلئ - مُغبّأ	completely full of people or things
recommend(ed) (v) يوصي بـ / يُرشد	to suggest that someone should do or try something

Mini Test 1 Definitions

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. is the act of people talking, working, or being involved with each other.
a. recommend b. packed c. interaction d. destructive

2. means so full that it can't hold more.
 a. Interacted b. Packed c. Destructive d. Recommend
3. A situation that is is so great or intense that it is hard to deal with.
 a. overwhelming b. compromise c. disappointing d. entertainment
4. Games, films, and concerts are examples of people enjoy in their free time.
 a. overwhelming b. interaction c. destruction d. entertainment
5. This word means "less good than you hoped or expected".
 a. packed b. entertained c. disappointing d. recommend
6. To is to reach an agreement in which each side gives up part of what they want.
 a. compromise b. destructive c. disappointing d. entertainment
7. To tell someone that they should do, try, or use something is to
 a. disappoint b. destruct c. interact d. recommend
8. Which word describes something that causes serious and often permanent damage?
 a. Destroyed b. Destructive
 c. Packed d. Overwhelming

2 Derivatives المشتقات

compromise		
compromise (v)	يَتَفَاوَضُ	- They compromised to end the war.
compromise (n)	تَسَاوُومٌ - تَسْوِيَةٌ	- The two sides reached a compromise .
compromising (adj)	مُتَسَاوِمٌ	- They took a compromising position to end the war.
destructive		
destructive (adj)	مُدْمِرٌ	- The storm was destructive .
destruction (n)	دَمَارٌ	- The storm caused destruction .
destroy (v)	يُدْمِرُ	- The storm destroyed the village.
disappointing		
disappointing (adj)	مُخْذِبٌ	- The results were disappointing .
disappointment (n)	خِيبَةٌ أَمَلٌ	- The results were a big disappointment .
disappoint (v)	يُخْذِبُ	- The results disappointed my teacher.
entertainment		
entertainment (n)	تَرْفِيهِ	- Watching the clown is a form of entertainment .
entertain (v)	يُسَلِّي	- The clown entertained the children.
entertaining (adj)	مُسَلِّ	- The clown was very entertaining .
interaction		
interaction (n)	تَفَاعُلٌ	- Teacher-student interaction is important.
interact (v)	يَتَفَاعَلُ	- Students interact with each other in class.
interactive (adj)	تَفَاعُلِيّ	- The website has interactive lessons.

overwhelming		
overwhelming (adj)	مُزْهِقٌ / غامر	- The workload is overwhelming .
overwhelm (v)	يُزْهِقُ / يغمر	- The strong wind overwhelmed the small boat.
overwhelmed (adj)	مُزْهِقٌ	- He felt overwhelmed by the stress.
packed		
packed (adj)	معبأ	- Everything is packed in boxes.
packed (adj)	مُمتلئ	- The stadium was packed with fans.
pack (v)	يُخْزِمُ	- I packed my clothes for the trip.
packing (n)	تَغْلِيفٌ	- The packing of goods took hours.
recommend		
recommend (v)	يُوصِي	- He recommends this hotel.
recommendation (n)	تَوْصِيَةٌ	- He gave a recommendation for this hotel.
recommended (adj)	مَوْصًى بِهِ	- This hotel is recommended .

Mini Test 2 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- To reach an agreement where each side gives up something is to
a. compromised b. compromising c. compromise d. compromise
- The two leaders reached a after long talks.
a. compromise b. compromises c. compromising d. compromised
- He took a attitude to avoid conflict.
a. compromised b. compromise c. compromising d. compromises
- Which word means "causing serious and permanent harm"?
a. Destroy b. Destructive c. Destruction d. Destroys
- The high flood caused great in the area.
a. destruction b. destructive c. destroy d. destroys
- The fighters will the tunnel to stop the enemy.
a. destroyed b. destruction c. destructive d. destroy
- The poor result was very for the team.
a. disappointment b. disappoint c. disappointing d. disappointed
- Failing the exam was a huge for Saja.
a. disappointment b. disappointing c. disappointed d. disappoint
- Ali doesn't want to his parents by failing.
a. disappointment b. disappointing c. disappointed d. disappoint
- Movies, plays, matches and concerts are forms of
a. entertainment b. entertaining c. entertain d. entertained
- The magician will the audience with tricks.
a. entertained b. entertainment c. entertain d. entertaining

12. The show was very and fun to watch.
a. entertainment b. entertain c. entertained d. entertaining
13. Teacher-student helps the learning process.
a. interacting b. interaction c. interactive d. interact
14. Students professionally during last group projects.
a. interacted b. interact c. interactive d. interaction
15. The app has features to make learning fun.
a. interacts b. interact c. interacted d. interactive
16. The task was too for one person to handle.
a. overwhelming b. overwhelmed c. overwhelm d. overwhelms
17. The horror films will the children with fear.
a. overwhelm b. overwhelming c. overwheeler d. overwhelmed
18. Ayman felt completely by the pressure.
a. overwhelm b. overwhelming c. overwhelmed d. overwhelms
19. The stadium was with cheering fans.
a. packing b. packed c. pack d. packs
20. Please your suitcase before the trip.
a. packing b. packs c. packed d. pack

3 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

develop	empathy	يَطْوِرُ التَّعَاظُفَ	maintain	friendships	يُحَافِظُ عَلَى الصَّدَاقَاتِ
do	revision	يَقُومُ بِالْمَرَاجَعَةِ	make	an effort	يَبْذُلُ جُهْدًا
form	new friendships	يُكُونُ صَدَاقَاتٍ جَدِيدَةً	make	plans	يَضَعُ خُطَطًا
give	reasons	يُقَدِّمُ أَسْبَابًا	practice	communication	يَتَوَاصَلُ
go	to a movie	يَذْهَبُ لِمَشَاهِدَةِ فِيلْمٍ	provide	examples	يَقْدِّمُ أُمُيْلَةً
grab	coffee	يَتَنَاوَلُ الْقَهْوَةَ	restate	your opinion	تُوكِّدُ زَايَاكَ
highlight	a positive point	يُبْرِزُ نُقْطَةً إِيْجَابِيَّةً	stay	in touch	يَبْقَى عَلَى اتِّصَالٍ
introduce	the film	يَقْدِّمُ الْفِيلْمَ			

Mini Test 3 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Before the exam, Yara planned to revision every evening.
a. do b. make c. grab d. give
- Walid failed to a clear reason for his absence.
a. make b. give c. stay d. invest
- After moving to Cairo, Leen wanted to new friendships at university.
a. stay b. go c. form d. introduce
- Every Friday, Amir and his friends like to to a movie.
a. make b. give c. form d. go

5. On her way to work, Noura decided to coffee from the café.
a. grab b. make c. provide d. invest
6. The teacher asked Omar to the film before it started.
a. grab b. introduce c. form d. go
7. Even with a busy life, Hossam tries to in touch with his school friends.
a. go b. make c. give d. stay
8. To pass the interview, Salah had to an effort to improve his English.
a. grab b. dive c. make d. form
9. For her presentation, Rodayna needed to examples to explain her point.
a. stay b. grip c. reduce d. provide

4 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
compromise(d) (v)	يَتَفَاوَضُ	settle, agree, negotiate
destructive (adj)	مُذْمَر	harmful, damaging, ruinous
disappointing (adj)	مُخَيِّب - مُجِيب	unsatisfying, discouraging, frustrating
entertainment (n)	تَرْفِيه - تسلية	amusement, recreation, fun
interaction (n)	تَفَاعُل	communication, contact, exchange
overwhelming (adj)	مُزْهِق	overpowering, intense, unbearable
packed (adj)	مُفْتَلٍ - مَعْبَأ	crowded, jammed, full
recommend(ed) (v)	يُوصِي بـ / يُرَكِّي	suggest, advise, endorse

5 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (=Opposite)	
compromise(d) (v)	يَتَفَاوَضُ	disagree, dispute, oppose	يُخْتَلِفُ - يَجَادِلُ - يُعَارِضُ
destructive (adj)	مُذْمَر	constructive, helpful, beneficial	بَنَاء - مُسَاعِد - مُفِيد
disappointing (adj)	مُخَيِّب - مُجِيب	satisfying, pleasing, encouraging	مُرْضٍ - مُرِج - مُشْجَع
entertainment (n)	تَرْفِيه - تسلية	boredom	مَلَل
interaction (n)	تَفَاعُل	isolation, separation, withdrawal	عَزَلَة - إِنْفِصَال - إِنْسِخَاب
overwhelming (adj)	مُزْهِق	manageable, light, mild	مُفَكِّن السَّيْطَرَة عَلَيْهِ - خَفِيف - طَفِيف
packed (adj)	مُفْتَلٍ - مَعْبَأ	empty, spacious, bare	فَارِغ - فَسِيح - خَالٍ
recommend(ed) (v)	يُوصِي بـ / يُرَكِّي	discourage, disapprove, reject	يُثْبِتِي غَن - يَزْفُض - يُعَارِضُ

Mini Test 4 Synonyms & Antonyms

- Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. The breeze was gentle, not "overwhelming." The word "overwhelming" here is antonymous with
a. overpowering b. mild c. intense
d. manageable e. unbearable

Mini Test 5 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Even though the hike was tiring, the beautiful view at the top made it be
a. negative opinion b. packed schedule c. quick dinner d. worth it
2. Going for a walk daily can give you several like improved mood and energy.
a. quick dinner b. health benefits
c. being open to d. meaningful moments
3. Good leaders listen to new suggestions and are always fresh ideas.
a. balanced opinion b. quick dinner
c. open to d. negative opinion
4. In his article, Ahmed compared city life and country life to show
a. special occasion b. balanced opinion c. contrasting ideas d. quick dinner
5. Mariam couldn't join us for lunch because she was her final project.
a. balanced opinion b. busy with
c. open to d. packed schedule
6. Sitting on the beach with friends at sunset was one of those we never forget.
a. health benefits b. negative opinions
c. artificial occasions d. meaningful moments
7. The husband and wife booked a table at the expensive restaurant for their anniversary, a truly
a. special occasion b. quick dinner
c. packed schedule d. negative opinion
8. The debate team presented both sides before giving a final view, showing a
a. balanced opinion b. negative opinion
c. positive opinion d. contrasting ideas
9. Hossam went to the hospital to his uncle after the surgery.
a. check on b. invest in c. wait in d. look up
10. Teachers should students their small mistakes to build trust.
a. wait / for b. forgive / for
c. check / on d. stay in touch / with
11. Rodayna decided to a local business to support her community.
a. check on b. wait for c. invest in d. struggle to
12. Ahmed promised to his old school friends even after moving abroad.
a. look for b. wait for
c. struggle to d. stay in touch with
13. After losing her keys, Yara had to them everywhere in the house.
a. stay in touch with b. invest in c. look for d. forgive ... for

packed – wrapped

- **packed (adj)** مُمْتَلِن (بشيء)
 - The stadium was **packed** with fans.
- **wrapped (adj)** مَغْلُوف - ملفوف
 - The gift was **wrapped** in red paper.

recommend – suggest

- **recommend (v)** يُوصِي بـ / يُزَكِّي
 - I **recommend** this restaurant for its fresh seafood.
- **suggest (v)** يُقترح
 - She **suggested** going for a walk.

destructive – instructive

- **destructive (adj)** مُدْمِر
 - The storm was very **destructive**.
- **instructive (adj)** تَعْلِيمِي - مُفِيد لِلتَعْلَم
 - The lecture was very **instructive**.

(-ing) adjectives – (-ed) adjectives

- **(-ing) adjectives** يَصِفُ الشَّيْءَ الْمُسَبِّبَ لِلشُّغُور
 - The movie was **interesting**. (= The movie causes interest).
- **(-ed) adjectives** يَصِفُ الشَّخْصَ أَوْ الشَّيْءَ الَّذِي يَشْغُرُ بِهِ
 - I was **interested** in the movie. (= I felt interest).

interaction – reaction

- **interaction (n)** تَفَاعُل
 - Classroom **interaction** is important for learning.
- **reaction (n)** رَدُّ فِعْلٍ
 - His **reaction** to the news was surprising.

overwhelming – amazing

- **overwhelming (adj)** مُزْهِق - غَامِر
 - The amount of work was **overwhelming**.
- **amazing (adj)** مُذهِّش
 - The view from the mountain was **amazing**.

Mini Test 6 Clear the confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The gift was beautifully in gold paper.
a. packed b. wrapped c. recommend d. suggest
- The hall was completely with guests.
a. packed b. wrapped c. destructive d. instructive
- I strongly trying the seafood pasta.
a. suggest b. wrapped c. recommend d. packed
- The earthquake was extremely to the city.
a. instructive b. amazing c. destructive d. packed
- The training session was very for beginners.
a. destructive b. packed c. wrapped d. instructive
- The movie was so that I couldn't stop watching.
a. packed b. wrapped c. interesting d. interested
- He felt after reading the touching letter.
a. overwhelmed b. interesting c. packed d. wrapped
- Good classroom improves student learning.
a. reaction b. packed c. wrapped d. interaction
- His to the bad news was anger.
a. interaction b. pack c. reaction d. wrap
- The workload this week has been for everyone. We were exhausted.
a. amazing b. overwhelming c. packed d. wrapped

III READING

Reading Texts

• on Lesson 4 SB pages 90 & 91

Have you ever wondered why spending time with friends feels so good? Scientists have discovered that socializing isn't just fun – it's actually essential for our mental and physical well-being.

When we hang out with friends, our brains release chemicals that make us feel happy and relaxed. Regular social interaction helps reduce stress, boost our immune system, and even helps us live longer. People who maintain strong friendships tend to be more confident and better at handling life challenges.



أهم نقاط على
نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة في نهاية
الوحدة

But hanging out with friends offers more than just health benefits. It's also how we learn important social skills. When we chat with friends, we practice communication, learn to compromise, and develop empathy. These skills help us in school, at work, and in **relationships**⁽¹⁾ **throughout**⁽²⁾ our lives.

However, making plans with friends isn't always easy in today's busy world. Many people **struggle**⁽³⁾ to find time in their **packed**⁽⁴⁾ **schedules**⁽⁵⁾. Technology can be both beneficial and **harmful**⁽⁶⁾ – while it's easier to stay in touch through social media and texting, some people prefer online interaction to face-to-face meetings. Others find it **overwhelming**⁽⁷⁾ to choose from so many entertainment **options**⁽⁸⁾ available today.

Another challenge is that as we get older, our friend groups often change. People move away, start new jobs, or develop different interests. This means we sometimes need to make an effort to maintain old friendships while also being open to **forming**⁽⁹⁾ new ones.

Despite these challenges, the effort to hang out with friends is always worth it. Whether you're having coffee, going to a movie, or just talking on a park bench, these moments of connection are what make life **meaningful**⁽¹⁰⁾. So next time a friend suggests hanging out, remember – you're not just having fun, you're **investing**⁽¹¹⁾ in your health and happiness.

(1) علاقات

(2) طوال

(3) يُعاني

(4) مُضْطَرَّب - مُغْبَأ

(5) جداول

(6) مؤذي

(7) مُرهق جدًا

(8) اختيارات

(9) يُشكِّل

(10) ذو معنى

(11) يُستثمر

• on Lesson 5 SB page 94

The Olive Tree-Great Food, Poor Service

Last weekend, I visited The Olive Tree, an Italian restaurant in Giza. While the food was excellent, the service was **disappointing**.⁽¹⁾

When we arrived, the waiter took a long time to **greet**⁽²⁾ us. After we **ordered**⁽³⁾, it took over 30 minutes to get our drinks. However, when the food arrived, it was hot and **delicious**.⁽⁴⁾

The waiter was polite but seemed very busy and didn't check on us during the meal.

Overall⁽⁵⁾, I enjoyed the food, but I expected better service for the price. I wouldn't **recommend**⁽⁶⁾ this restaurant for a special **occasion**⁽⁷⁾, but it might be okay for a quick dinner if you're not **in a hurry**.⁽⁸⁾



(1) محبط - مخيب للأمل

(2) يحيى

(3) طلب

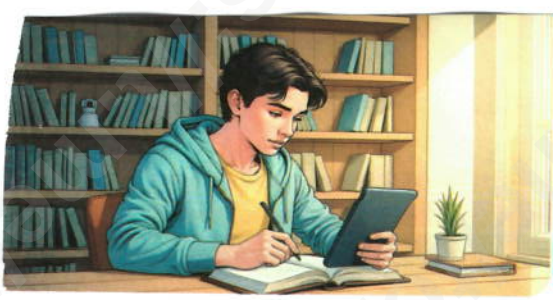
(4) لذيذ

(5) عموماً

(6) يوصى

(7) مناسبة

(8) في عجلة



SKILLS

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية في الملحق

تنويه

WRITING SKILL : REVIEW WRITING

• What is a Review?

ما هو المقال النّقدي؟

- A review is a written opinion about something you have experienced, such as a movie, book, restaurant, product, or place. It is both informative and persuasive.
- المقال النّقدي هو تقييم مكتوب لشيء قمت بتجربته، مثل فيلم، كتاب، مطعم، مُنتج أو مكان. وهو يجمع بين المعلومات والإقناع.

• Purpose of a Review

غرض الغرض النّقدي

1. **To Inform** لإعطاء المعلومة
 - Describe what the item is like: its features, qualities, or atmosphere.
2. **To Persuade** لإقناع القارئ
 - Encourage or discourage the audience to try, buy, or visit it.

بنية الغرض النّقدي Structure of a Review

1. Introduction & Overall Impression المقدمة والانطباع العام

- Introduce the subject (movie, book, restaurant, product, place).
 - Provide basic information: title, author/director, location, type.
 - State your overall impression briefly.
- تقديم الموضوع (فيلم، كتاب، مطعم، منتج، مكان).
تقديم معلومات أساسية: العنوان، المؤلف/المخرج، الموقع، النوع.
ذكر الانطباع العام بإيجاز.

2. Specific Details تفاصيل محددة

- Describe main aspects (e.g., plot, characters, acting, atmosphere, design, performance).
 - Use descriptive adjectives.
- وصف الجوانب الرئيسية (مثل الحبكة، الشخصيات، التمثيل، الجو، التصميم، الأداء).
استخدام الصفات الوصفية.

3. Pros and Cons الإيجابيات والسلبيات

- Explain what you liked and didn't like.
 - Give reasons and support with examples.
- شرح ما أعجبك وما لم يعجبك.
تقديم الأسباب مدعومة بأمثلة.

4. Conclusion & Recommendation الخاتمة والتوصية

- Restate your overall opinion.
 - Recommend or not recommend, and say for whom it is suitable.
- إعادة صياغة الرأي العام.
التوصية بالشيء أو عدم التوصية، وذكر الفئة المناسبة.

إرشادات لكتابة الغرض النّقدي Review Writing Tips

- Be clear and concise. كن واضحًا ومختصرًا.
- Balance fact with opinion. وازن بين الحقائق والرأي الشخصي.
- Use varied vocabulary and adjectives. استخدم مفردات وصفية متنوعة.
- Keep a logical flow from introduction to conclusion. حافظ على تسلسل منطقي من المقدمة إلى الخاتمة.

Review Writing terminology مصطلحات خاصة بكتابة العَرَض النّقدي

Term	Definition
atmosphere (n) التوجه العام	Feeling or mood of a place
cons (n) غيوب	Disadvantages or negative points
descriptive adjectives (n) صفات وُصفِيّة	Words that describe qualities
feature (n) مِيزة - بِيمة	A distinctive quality or characteristic
inform (v) يُعطي معلومة	Provide facts or details
opinion (n) رأي	Personal view or judgement
overall impression (n) إنطباع عام	General feeling or opinion
pros (n) مزايا	Advantages or positive points
recommendation (n) توصية	Advice on whether to try something

1 Write a six-line introduction to a review about a film you have watched.

Last weekend, I watched the action-thriller *Awlad El AM*, directed by Sherif Arafa. The film tells a gripping story of courage, loyalty, and family bonds. Set in both Egypt and abroad, it follows an intense mission filled with suspense and emotion. The acting was powerful, especially from the lead stars Karim Abdel Aziz and Mona Zaki. The cinematography captured every detail, making the scenes feel real and immersive. Overall, my first impression is that this is a must-watch for anyone who loves smart action films.

2 Write a six-line body paragraph of a review about a film you have watched.

The plot unfolds with a clever mix of suspense and emotional depth, keeping the audience engaged from start to finish. Karim Abdel Aziz delivers a strong, convincing performance as the determined intelligence officer. Mona Zaki adds emotional weight to the story, portraying a complex character torn between love and loyalty. The action scenes are well-paced, with realistic stunts and gripping chase sequences. The soundtrack intensifies the tension, perfectly matching the mood of each scene.

3 Write a six-line conclusion to a review about a film you have watched.

In conclusion, *Awlad El AM* is a gripping blend of action, drama, and patriotism. Its powerful performances and well-crafted plot make it stand out among recent Egyptian films. The realistic portrayal of intelligence work adds both excitement and credibility. While a few scenes could have been shorter, they do not take away from the overall impact. To sum up, I highly recommend this film to anyone who enjoys smart thrillers with emotional depth. It's a story that will stay with you long after the credits roll.

General Exercises

I WRITING SKILL

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The main purpose of a review is to the reader about something you experienced.
a. entertain b. confuse c. inform d. hide
- A good review also aims to the audience to try or avoid something.
a. persuade b. ignore c. waste d. mislead
- The first paragraph of a review is called the
a. ending b. plot c. introduction d. summary
- In the introduction, you should give information like the title and creator.
a. false b. useless c. basic d. wrong
- A short sentence like "It's a must-see!" is an example of your opinion.
a. negative b. mixed c. weak d. overall
- The second paragraph usually describes the main of the subject.
a. weaknesses b. aspects c. endings d. titles
- For a film, describing the acting and special effects is part of the section.
a. details b. price c. address d. summary
- For a restaurant review, you might describe the, service, and prices.
a. characters b. plot c. atmosphere d. cast
- For a product review, discussing ease of use and performance means talking about its
a. location b. features c. plot d. menu
- Strong adjectives like "fantastic" or "terrible" are called adjectives.
a. weak b. mixed c. descriptive d. boring
- In the third paragraph, you explain your likes and with reasons.
a. greetings b. endings c. dislikes d. beginnings
- Saying "The acting was terrific" is giving a opinion.
a. positive b. negative c. mixed d. boring
- "However, the service was slow" is an example of a opinion.
a. positive b. negative c. happy d. vague
- A balanced opinion shows both pros and
a. cons b. actors c. scenes d. food
- You should always examples to support your points.
a. hide b. forget c. provide d. skip
- The final paragraph is called the
a. body b. plot c. conclusion d. setting
- In the conclusion, you should your overall opinion.
a. delete b. ignore c. restate d. confuse
- Advising the reader whether to watch or buy something is called a
a. warning b. recommendation c. complaint d. joke
- "I recommend this book for history lovers" is a statement.
a. negative b. boring
c. positive recommendation d. false

20. "I wouldn't recommend this restaurant" is a recommendation.
a. negative b. hidden c. mixed d. neutral
21. Reviews use clear, language to keep readers interested.
a. engaging b. dull c. confusing d. weak
22. Writing only the good points and ignoring the bad makes your review
a. complete b. biased c. fair d. balanced
23. A review should be written for your target
a. enemy b. stranger c. audience d. plant
24. The "pros" of a review refer to its points.
a. weak b. boring c. negative d. positive
25. The "cons" of a review refer to its points.
a. negative b. happy c. best d. long
26. If you write "This film is unforgettable," you are giving a opinion.
a. weak b. strong c. neutral d. false
27. A review of a phone should not include the of the main actor in a film.
a. price b. name c. battery d. features
28. The word "plot" in a film review means the
a. storyline b. actor's salary c. music d. title
29. A restaurant review that talks about the menu is discussing the
a. food b. plot c. characters d. gadgets
30. A review of a concert might mention the singer's
a. cooking b. performance c. parking d. tickets
31. Using both "on the one hand" and "on the other hand" shows ideas.
a. same b. contrasting c. mixed d. repeated
32. "The best thing about the book was its ending" is a point.
a. negative b. hidden c. highlighted d. wrong
33. A quick summary of your opinion belongs in the
a. plot b. menu c. conclusion d. introduction
34. "Fantastic" and "brilliant" are examples of adjectives.
a. positive b. negative c. dull d. weak

II READING SKILL

• Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

In 1911, Charlie Chaplin, a penniless music-hall artist, left England for America. His future was uncertain, but he believed it couldn't be unhappier than his past. He had grown up in the slums of London. His mother's life was hard and got mad. His parents hoped to be stars. Their son was determined to succeed where they had failed.

By 1914 Chaplin was famous in America. He was the king of silent movies. How did he reach the top of the film world? He began to develop the character of the tramp that is connected with his name. He borrowed ideas from many sources. He used his bowler hat to signal secret messages and his walking stick allowed him to cause confusion and punish his enemy from a distance. He got the idea of his famous fat-footed walk from a London taxi driver who had sore feet.

Inside the tramp's clothes, the audience saw a human being who was poor, but dreamt of being rich. The audience would be moved by this, but before they had time to reach for their handkerchiefs, Charlie's feet would get in the way and make them laugh instead. Charlie was the master of mime and as an acrobat, he used to perform dangerous stunts. In 1919, he performed his film and wanted to write about his experiences. In "The kid" Chaplin remembered his fear and unhappiness when separated from his mother. Aged 86, he went to Buckingham to be knighted by the queen.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. According to the passage Charlie Chaplin was
 - a. dependent and satisfied with his life
 - b. ashamed of himself and his works
 - c. determined and had a strong will
 - d. unkind and ungrateful to his parents
2. What happened to Charlie Chaplin at the age of 66?
 - a. The American government allowed Charlie to be a comedian.
 - b. The American government refused to allow Charlie to be a star.
 - c. The British government honoured him.
 - d. The British governorate one neglected him.
3. If Charlie hadn't traveled to America, he
 - a. would have changed his career
 - b. wouldn't have gained fame
 - c. would have defeated his enemies
 - d. wouldn't have been poor
4. Infer what would have happened if Charlie Chaplin had come from a rich family.
 - a. He wouldn't have imitated the taxi driver with sore feet.
 - b. The American government would have given him a re-entry visa.
 - c. He would have been suspected by his political beliefs.
 - d. He wouldn't have struggled to be successful.
5. How did Charlie Chaplin develop the idea of a tramp?
 - a. He set up his own film company and became a director.
 - b. He got ideas from many sources and used his hat to convey secret messages.
 - c. He remembered his sadness when he was separated from his mother.
 - d. He copied the London taxi driver sound feet.
6. The best sentence that can summarize the first paragraph is
 - a. The audience got bored of Chaplin.
 - b. Charlie's parents were very successful.
 - c. Despite his poverty, Chaplin was keen on success.
 - d. Charlie was the master of mime and made a fortune.
7. According to the passage, Charlie Chaplin became famous as an actor in America
 - a. in many years
 - b. at the age of eighty
 - c. within few years
 - d. after his death
8. The best title for the passage..... .
 - a. Charlie Chaplin and his fame
 - b. Charlie Chaplin is an adventurous acrobat
 - c. The American government was unfair to Charlie
 - d. Charlie's parents and their sufferings

III TRANSLATION

• **1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

1. Unity and cooperation are the necessary qualities which we need to succeed in our national projects.

- a. التعاون والتوحد هما الصفتان الضروريان اللتان نحتاجهما للنجاح في مشروعاتنا القومية.
- b. التعاون والوحدة هما الصفتان الضروريان اللتان نحتاجهما للنجاح في مشروعاتنا الدولية.
- c. التعاون والاتحاد هما الصفتان الضروريان اللتان نحتاجهما للنجاح في مشروعاتنا الدولية.
- d. التعاون والاتحاد هما الصفتان الضروريان اللتان نحتاجهما للنجاح في مشروعاتنا القومية.

2. Our educational system is supposed to aim at preparing creative generations. We no longer need those who memorize information, but we are in bad need of innovators.

- a. من المفترض أن يهدف نظامنا التعليمي إلى إعداد أجيال مبتدعة. لم نعد بحاجة إلى من يحفظ المعلومات، بل نحن في حاجة سيئة إلى المبدعين.
- b. من المفترض أن يهدف نظامنا التعليمي إلى إعداد أجيال مبدعة. لم نعد بحاجة إلى من يحافظ على المعلومات، بل نحن في حاجة ماسة إلى المبدعين.
- c. من الافتراضي أن يهدف نظامنا التعليمي إلى إعداد أجيال مبدعة. لم نعد بحاجة إلى من يحفظ المعلومات، بل نحن في حاجة سيئة إلى المبدعين.
- d. من المفترض أن يهدف نظامنا التعليمي إلى إعداد أجيال مبدعة. لم نعد بحاجة إلى من يحفظ المعلومات، بل نحن في حاجة ماسة إلى المبدعين.

• **2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

ا. تعمل الحكومة على إقامة مشروعات اقتصادية تهدف إلى القضاء علي البطالة وتحسين أحوال الصحة والتعليم في مصر.

- a. The government is working on the establish of economic projects which aim at eliminating unemployment and improving health and education conditions in Egypt.
- b. The government is working on the establishment of economic projects which aim at eliminating unemployment and improving health and education conditions in Egypt.
- c. The government is working on the establishment of economics projects which aim at eliminating unemployment and improving health and education conditions in Egypt.
- d. The government is working on the establishment of economic projects which aim at eliminating unemployment and improving healthy and education conditions in Egypt.

ا. إن المشاركة المجتمعية تسهم في حل الكثير من المشكلات، كما أنها تدعم التكامل بين أفراد المجتمع الواحد.

- a. Community participation contributes to solving many problems. It also supports integration among the members of the same community.
- b. Community participation contributes to solve many problems. It also supports integration among the members of one community.
- c. Community participation contributes to solving many problems. It also supports integration among the organs of the same community.
- d. Community participation contributes to solving many problems. It also supports integration among the members of the only community.



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 1 SB page 83

An Embarrassing Moment

1. The text is a personal story about attending a celebration for a friend's promotion at a downtown restaurant.
2. The narrator was feeling confident and sociable until they accidentally knocked over a drink, splashing it all over their friend Sarah's dress.
3. The moment was mortifying, and the narrator felt helpless and embarrassed.
4. Sarah reacted with kindness, went to clean her dress, and reassured the narrator, telling them that such accidents happen.
5. The experience taught the narrator the importance of having true friends who stand by you during difficult moments.

on Lesson 2 SB page 86

The Benefits of Socializing

1. The text explains why hanging out with friends makes people feel good.
2. When we spend time with others, our bodies release hormones that reduce stress and boost our mood.
3. Regular social interaction can strengthen our immune system and help us live longer.
4. Socializing also helps us develop better communication skills, increases confidence, and connects us to our community.
5. The text emphasizes that quality matters more than quantity, and having a few close friends is more beneficial than many superficial connections.

on Lesson 3 SB page 88

A Beautiful Day with Friends

1. The text describes a wonderful day Hend spent with her friends at the park.
2. They had a picnic with sandwiches, fruit, and juice, and played football and took funny photos.

- * The importance of friendship
- * How to spend time with friends

3. Later, they walked by the lake, enjoying the peaceful breeze, and had ice cream at a small café.
4. Hend felt grateful for her caring friends and thought it was the happiest day she had experienced in a long time.
5. The story highlights the simple joy and shared memories that come from spending time with friends.

on Lesson 4 SB pages 90 & 91

The Importance of Friendship

1. Spending time with friends offers more than just fun; it provides essential health benefits for both mind and body.
2. Socializing helps us learn important skills like communication, compromise, and empathy.
3. The text acknowledges that modern life, with its packed schedules, can make it a struggle to find time for friends.
4. Despite these challenges, making an effort to maintain friendships is an important investment in your health and well-being.

on Lesson 5 SB page 94

The Olive Tree-Great food, Poor service

1. This text is a review of a restaurant called The Olive Tree.
2. The writer praises the food, describing it as excellent, hot, and delicious.
3. However, the service was disappointing, as the waiter was very busy, took a long time to arrive at their table, and did not check on them during the meal.
4. The overall conclusion is that while the food is enjoyable, the poor service is a significant drawback.
5. The writer recommends the restaurant only for a special occasion if you are not in a hurry

الجمال السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى :

- * The advantages of socializing

on Unit 6

- Apply

- **Create**

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To make sure you do not touch anything or anyone is to
a. keep my hands to myself b. hit the town
c. take over d. hang out
2. At the party, everyone tried to and meet new people.
a. socialize b. maintain c. hang out d. mortify
3. His rude joke was enough to her in front of the guests.
a. reassure b. hang out c. mortify d. socialize
4. The teacher tried to the worried student before the test.
a. mortify b. reassure c. depress d. affectionate
5. We should plans for the school trip next month.
a. jump b. make c. push d. rest
6. The emergency relief team faced an amount of work after the earthquake.
a. overwhelming b. moderate c. manageable d. minimal
7. The stadium was so that security had to stop admitting fans for safety reasons.
a. packed b. deserted c. empty d. quiet
8. The professor that students read that valuable book.
a. discouraged b. ignored c. recommended d. prohibited
9. "Why did you leave early?" He asked me I had left early.
a. why b. if c. whether d. that
10. "Does he speak French or German?" She asked me he spoke French or German.
a. unless b. whether c. why d. that
11. "I am studying for my exams". She said she for her exams.
a. studies b. studied c. was studying d. had studied
12. "Did you meet our new manager yesterday?" Hossam asked me
a. if I met their new manager the day before
b. if I have met our new manager the day before
c. if I had met their new manager the day before
d. if I had met our new manager yesterday
13. "When are you going to send the documents?" The lawyer asked the client
a. when he is going to send the documents
b. when he was going to send the documents
c. when he was going to send the documents
d. when he goes to send the documents
14. "Will you help me with this report?" She asked
a. if I will help her with that report b. if I would help her with that report
c. if I would help her with that report d. if I would help me with this report
15. "How long have you known each other?" The teacher asked
a. how long we knew each other b. how long we had known each other
c. how long we had known each other d. how long had we known each other

16. "When did you last see my brother?" She asked
 a. when I last saw her brother b. when I had last seen her brother
 c. when I had last seen her brother d. when had I last seen her brother
17. "Can you finish the project by Friday?" The boss asked
 a. if we can finish the project by Friday
 b. if we could finish the project by Friday
 c. if we could finish the project by Friday
 d. if we could finish the project by last Friday
18. "Why are you smiling?" My friend asked me
 a. why I am smiling b. why I smiled
 c. why I was smiling d. why was I smiling
19. "Boring" and "disappointing" are examples of adjectives.
 a. positive b. negative c. interesting d. exciting

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

One day Mr and Mrs Basem went to Cairo to do their shopping. They had a busy day and by about four o'clock, they were both looking forward to having lunch. They found a restaurant but, just before they went in, Mrs Basem remembered that she had to buy some medicine. While she was in the chemist's, her husband noticed a bookshop. He went across to have a look in the window and saw an old novel written by an author who was famous in the last century. He had always been especially interested in this writer, so he went in and bought the book. His wife was waiting for him when he came out. He showed her the book, but she did not look at all pleased. She always used to say that the old novels and books he bought made her house look dirty.

After they had had their lunch, they caught the train back to the town where they lived. Much to their surprise, Ali, an ex-neighbour of theirs whom they had not seen for years, got into the same compartment. They were both pleased to see him and remembered a lot of good memories they had together. However, he happened to notice the book which Mr Basem had bought and he picked it up to examine the title. He opened the book and as he did so, his eyes lit up. He asked Mr Basem how much he had paid for it. Mr Basem told him he had paid only a few pounds. The man said he was very lucky; the book was a rare edition and worth a fortune.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20. According to the story, reading as a hobby of Mr Basem can bring him
 a. good and bad memories b. old ideas and misfortune
 c. knowledge and sometimes money d. good and bad fortune
21. Which of the following sentences summarizes the first paragraph?
 a. Mr and Mrs Basem quarrelled about the price of the old book he had bought.
 b. After a busy day, Mrs Basem bought medicine and her husband got an old book.
 c. The couple enjoyed their meal and had a cup of tea before coming back home.
 d. The couple did their shopping and went back home happily.
22. Mr Basem was keen to buy the old novel as it was written by
 a. his favourite author b. a well-known modern writer
 c. his favourite poet d. an anonymous playwright
23. The suitable title of the passage is
 a. An Expected End b. An Incomplete Trip
 c. Contemporary Literature d. A Pleasant Surprising End

24. The moral of the story is
- Old books have not got any benefits
 - Valuable things always have a good look
 - Never value things only from appearance
 - Contemporary books are more valuable than old ones
25. Unlike her husband, Mrs Basem prefers
- reading literature to watching TV
 - having her house clean to keeping old books
 - moving to a new house to living in an old one
 - listening to music to going shopping
26. Mr Basem was
- fond of reading old novels
 - curious about old antiques
 - interested in selling modern novels
 - keen on buying bookshops
27. Mr and Mrs Basem's ex-neighbour was a/an
- lucky person
 - unbearable librarian
 - boring waiter
 - experienced reader

• **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Labelled as a vegetable for nutritional purposes, tomatoes are a good source of vitamin C and the phytochemical lycopene. The fruits are commonly eaten raw in salads, served as a cooked vegetable, used as an ingredient of various prepared dishes, and pickled. Additionally, a large percentage of the world's tomato crop is used for processing; products include canned tomatoes, tomato juice, ketchup, paste, and "sundried" tomatoes.

Tomato plants need energy to make their fruit. Though growing tomato plants needs much sunlight to grow and produce many fruits, these fruits don't necessarily need sunlight to ripen. Tomatoes ripen because of heat and ethylene gas, not because of sunlight.

The tomato is from South America. When the tomato came to Europe, people did not eat it as doctors said it would make them sick. So, people just grew tomatoes because they looked nice. Now, people from all over the world eat tomatoes.

People do odd things with tomatoes. There is a big tomato event every year in Spain, called "La Tomatina". The origins of this mass tomato battle date back to a fight amongst children in 1945 and it has been celebrated every year since then. A long time ago, people would toss a bad tomato when they saw a show they did not like.

In Canada, many tomatoes are grown on big farms. As the local workers ask for higher wages, the farms bring in poor people from far away to help grow vegetables. Without these foreign workers, the farms couldn't run. But they don't get much money. Canada doesn't let them stay there. Many people say this is not fair.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28. According to the passage, the tomato foreign workers are treated unfairly in Canada as they are
- forced to leave the country
 - sent to prison for their carelessness
 - obliged to live in good conditions
 - paid good wages and salaries
29. The sentence that summarizes the third paragraph is
- The Americans refused to eat tomatoes as they came from Europe
 - Doctors recommended growing tomatoes for their flowers
 - Doctors banned eating tomatoes as they were rich in vitamin C
 - Tomato wasn't edible in Europe when it first appeared

30. The origin of tomato appearance was in
 a. South Africa b. Europe c. South America d. North America
31. The suitable title for the passage is
 a. The variety of tomato products b. The economic benefits of tomatoes
 c. Canada solved the world's food problem d. Tomatoes as or not as you know
32. We can conclude from the passage that tomatoes are
 a. a possible cause of countries' conflicts
 b. a main ingredient in all cooking recipes
 c. annually celebrated worldwide
 d. plants used for many purposes including eating
33. If the big farming companies in Canada decided to hire out local workers,
 a. the price of tomatoes would go up
 b. the government would have to export the tomato crop cheaply
 c. many countries, especially Spain, would ask for more products
 d. the price of tomatoes would come down
34. If there were a lack of tomato crop one year in Spain, people would
 a. export tomatoes to other countries b. stop celebrating "La Tomatina"
 c. use tomatoes in other festivals d. eat more large amounts of tomatoes
35. Audiences used to express their annoyance by
 a. portraying actors' profiles b. cheering up the actors
 c. throwing rotten tomatoes at the actors d. taking their money back

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given :

36. "Shireen felt glamorous in her new dress." The word 'glamorous' here is antonymous with
 a. elegant b. dull c. attractive
 d. unattractive e. stylish
37. "Compromise" is to agree as "recommend" is to
 a. pack b. suggest c. merge
 d. suppose e. advise

Choose the correct Arabic translation answer from a, b, c or d:

38. Responsible tourism entails making careful choices that will not affect the environment negatively.

- a. ينطوي على السياحة المسؤولة اتخاذ خيارات حريصة لا تؤثر بالسلب على البيئة.
 b. تنطوي السياحة المسؤولة على فرض الخيارات متأنية مما يؤثر بالسلب على البيئة.
 c. تنطوي السياحة المسؤولة على اتخاذ قرارات متأنية تؤثر بالسلب على البيئة.
 d. تنطوي السياحة المسؤولة على اتخاذ قرارات متأنية لا تؤثر بالسلب على البيئة.

39. Citizenship is a precious value that we should instill in our children from young age to have generations aware of their rights and responsibilities.

- a. المواطنة قيمة ثمينة يجب ان نغرسها في اطفالنا منذ صغرهم لكي نعيد اجيال مدركه لحقوقها وواجباتها.
 b. الوطن قيمة جميلة يجب ان نغرس اطفالنا فيه وهم صغار كيلا يدركوا حقوقهم وواجباتهم.
 c. المواطنة من القيم الجميلة التي يجب ان نعلمها لأطفالنا منذ صغرهم حتى يكونوا من الاجيال المطالبة بواجباتها.
 d. المواطنة من القيم الثمينة التي يجب ان يتعلمها ابنائنا منذ صغرهم حتى يكونوا من الاجيال المطالبة بواجباتها.

Choose the correct English translation answer from a, b, c or d:

٤. تحاول الحكومة استكشاف آفاق جديدة للمشروعات الخضراء كأحدى ركائز التنمية المستدامة، ولقد وقَّعت العديد من الاتفاقيات لتنفيذ مشروعات جديدة في مجال الهيدروجين الأخضر والطاقة النظيفة.

- a. The government is trying to explore new horizons for green projects as one of the pillar of sustainable development. It has signed many arguments to implement new projects in the field of green hydrogen and clean energy.
- b. The government is trying to explore new horizons for green projects as one of the pillars of sustainable development. It has signed many agreements to implement new projects in the field of green hydrogen and clean energy.
- c. The government is trying to explore new horizons for green projects as one of the pillar of temporary development. It has signed many agreement to implement new projects in the field of green hydrogen and clean energy.
- d. The government is trying to explore a new horizons for green projects as one of the pillars of sustainable development. It has signed many arguments to implement new projects in the field of green hydrogen and clean energy.

٥. الجمهورية الجديدة " ليس مجرد شعار تتبناه الدولة ولكنه دعوة لكل المصريين للمشاركة في بناء مصر جديدة تزدهو بكل أشكال الحداثة.

- a. The New Republic" is not just a slogan adapted by the state but also an invitation for every Egyptian to participate in building new Egypt boasting with all forms of modernity.
- b. The New Public" is not just a slogan adopted by the state but rather an innovation for all Egyptians to participate in building new Egypt flourishing with all firms of modernity.
- c. "The New Republic" is not just a slogan adopted by the state but rather an invitation for all Egyptians to participate in building new Egypt boasting with all forms of modernity.
- d. The New Republic" is not just a slogan adapted by the state but also an innovation for every Egyptians to participate in building a new Egypt flourishing with all aspects of modernity.

• Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

42. Mona wanted to know where the children were playing. ("... are ...?")

43. "Are you coming to school tomorrow?" asked my friend. (asked / if)

Answer the following questions :

44. **SB** What important secret does Abbe Faria share with Edmond ?

45. Why did Edmond swear that he would find the treasure ?

46. **Write (180-200) words about a review of a book you have read:**

Review 2

Based On Units 4, 5 & 6

SB pages 96 : 104

A VOCABULARY

1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Her face looked pale after hearing the shocking news, as if all the color had drained away. The antonym of the underlined word "pale" is
a. strong b. bright c. weak
d. faded e. soft
2. The child was fragile about the strange noise and slowly opened the door to investigate. The synonym of the underlined word "fragile" is
a. frail b. obvious c. delicate
d. cowardly e. silly
3. The new hospital is still under construction, with cranes and workers visible every day. The antonym of the underlined word "construction" is
a. destruction b. demolishing c. structure
d. building e. process
4. The job was so repetitive that he performed the same task hundreds of times each day. The antonym of the underlined word "repetitive" is
a. boring b. varied c. monotonous
d. frequent e. different
5. She wasn't trying to be rude—she was simply ignorant of the local customs. The synonym of the underlined word "ignorant" is
a. known b. respected c. informed
d. unaware e. unfamiliar

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6. The view from the mountain was so that everyone stopped to take photos.
a. mortifying b. innovation c. repetitive d. breathtaking
7. Cairo is known for its nightlife, with music and dancing everywhere.
a. weeknight b. vibrant c. workshops d. dedicated
8. Our city is very, with people from many cultures living together.
a. diverse b. curious c. thrive d. disaster
9. Be careful with that glass vase; it's
a. workshops b. capture c. fragile d. magic
10. Before the exam, students should revision to prepare well.
a. sing b. jump c. do d. walk
11. The painting was full of colors that caught my eye.
a. figuratively b. vivid c. magnificent instead d. entertainment

12. Don't her abilities; she is very talented.
 a. struggle b. flexibility c. clumsiness d. underestimate
13. Coastal is destroying the beaches year by year.
 a. flexibility b. overestimate c. overrate d. erosion
14. Plants will if they get enough sunlight and water.
 a. struggle b. collaborate c. shake d. thrive
15. The melody was so that it stayed in my mind for days.
 a. vibrant b. haunting c. curious d. capture
16. They had to to carry the heavy box up the stairs.
 a. declare b. fragile c. struggle d. agitate
17. The loud noise will the meeting.
 a. entangle b. ease c. distribute d. disrupt
18. She is to helping the poor in her community.
 a. dedicated b. repetitive c. vivid d. breathtaking
19. An ultrasound is a medical test.
 a. cruelly b. non-invasive c. tragically d. weeknight
20. Please pass me the for my fries.
 a. stakeholder b. haunting c. salt shaker d. captivity
21. Let's at the new mall shop after class.
 a. hang up b. hang out c. ensure d. happen
22. The movie's special effects were
 a. mind-blowing b. whispering c. disrupting d. overwhelming
23. He explained the joke , word for word.
 a. literally b. fragiley c. vividly d. figuratively
24. The word "mortifying" means
 a. exciting b. embarrassing c. relaxing d. surprising
25. The opposite of "boring" is
 a. lively b. dull c. quiet d. still
26. The synonym for "mistake" is
 a. success b. plan c. error d. idea
27. The idiom "hit the town" means
 a. visit a small village b. go out and enjoy in the city
 c. hit something physically d. work late
28. Hossam went to the hospital to his uncle after the surgery.
 a. check on b. invest in c. wait in d. look up
29. The word "glamorous" means
 a. unattractive and boring b. dark and scary
 c. casual and plain d. stylish and exciting

B LANGUAGE

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

30. The journey took ten hours. It was a journey.
a. ten-hours b. ten-hour c. ten-hours-long d. ten-hour-long
31. Compound adjectives are often joined by a when they appear before the noun they modify.
a. comma b. hyphen c. space d. dash
32. He is a scientist who is known all over the world. He is a scientist.
a. world-known b. known-world
c. famous-world d. wide-famous
33. My grandmother is nearly seventy years old. My grandmother still loves hiking.
a. seventy-year-old b. seventy-years-old
c. seventy-year-olds d. seventy-years-olds
34. I took a photo of a turtle that moves slowly. I took a photo of a turtle.
a. slowly-moving b. slow-moving c. move-slowly d. slow-move
35. Which sentence is structurally correct:
a. The movie was very bored. b. The movie was very boring.
c. The movie was very bore. d. The movie was very boringly.
36. Which sentence is structurally correct.....
a. The student were very tiring. b. The student was very tired.
c. The student was very tire. d. The student were very tiredly.
37. Today, many companies repetitive tasks done by machines.
a. make b. do c. have d. allow
38. Employers now have staff skills like communication and critical thinking.
Which option shows the correct form of the underlined verb after have?
a. develop b. developing c. developed d. to develop
39. Governments and schools often training programs developed to support workers.
a. let b. make c. have d. allow
40. A friend is designing our website. We are
a. having our website designed b. getting our website designing
c. having a friend designing our website d. get our website designed
41. He asked me where to eat.
a. I want b. did I want c. I wanted d. do you want
42. She asked to go hiking.
a. if I want b. if I wanted c. if do you want d. do you want
43. They asked if meet earlier.
a. they can b. could we c. we can d. they could

44. She asked me why to the party.
 a. I haven't come b. I didn't come c. I hadn't come d. didn't I come
45. Which sentence is structurally correct:
 a. He admitted to break my favorite mug.
 b. He admitted that breaking my favorite mug.
 c. He admitted breaking my favorite mug.
 d. He admitted to have broken my favorite mug.
46. Which sentence is structurally correct:
 a. She suggested going bowling.
 b. She suggested to go bowling.
 c. She suggested that we going bowling.
 d. She suggested us to go bowling.
47. Which sentence is structurally correct:
 a. He is a eight-year-old boy.
 b. He is an eight-years-old boy.
 c. He is an eight-year-old boy.
 d. He is a eight year old boy.
48. Which sentence is structurally correct:
 a. We stayed in a five-star hotel.
 b. We stayed in a five stars hotel.
 c. We stayed in a five-stars hotel.
 d. We stayed in a five star hotel.
49. Which sentence is structurally correct:
 a. He is a self made man.
 b. He is a self-made man.
 c. He is a self-making man.
 d. He is a self-make man.
50. Which sentence is structurally correct:
 a. I had my car clean yesterday.
 b. I had my car cleaning yesterday.
 c. I had cleaned my car yesterday.
 d. I had my car cleaned yesterday.
51. Which sentence is structurally correct:
 a. I will have my teeth check tomorrow.
 b. I will have checked my teeth tomorrow.
 c. I will have the dentist check my teeth tomorrow.
 d. I will have the dentist to check my teeth tomorrow.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 52. He drives a car with four doors. | (four-door) |
| 53. This is a machine that saves time. | (time-saving) |
| 54. She wore shoes with high heels. | (high-heeled) |
| 55. He is a person who thinks only about himself. | (self-centered) |
| 56. He is a boy with curly hair. | (curly-haired) |
| 57. A hairdresser cut my hair this morning. | (I got...) |
| 58. Someone fixed their computer. | (They had...) |
| 59. Someone washed my car yesterday. | (I got...) |
| 60. A mechanic changed the tires. | (I had...) |

61. A cleaner cleaned the office. (We got...)
62. "Are you coming to the party?" he asked. (He asked...)
63. "Where do you live?" the teacher asked me. (The teacher asked...)
64. "Do you like Italian food?" she asked. (She asked...)
65. "Did you watch the match yesterday?" he asked. (He asked...)
66. "What are you doing now?" she asked me. (She asked...)

C TRANSLATION

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

67. Coral reefs, often called "colorful underwater cities," are a breathtaking, vibrant world teeming with thousands of diverse marine species.

- a. الشعاب المرجانية، التي تُعرف غالبًا باسم "المدن المائية الملونة"، عالمٌ خلّابٌ نابضٌ بالحياة، يزخر بملايين الأنواع البرية المتنوعة.
- b. الشعاب الجبلية، التي تُعرف غالبًا باسم "المدن الدفينة الملونة"، عالمٌ خلّابٌ نابضٌ بالحياة، يزخر بالآلاف الأنواع البحرية المتنوعة.
- c. الشعاب المرجانية، التي تُعرف غالبًا باسم "المدن المائية الملونة"، عالمٌ خلّابٌ نابضٌ بالحياة، يزخر بالآلاف الأنواع البحرية المتنوعة.
- d. الشعاب المرجانية، التي تُعرف غالبًا باسم "المدن الدفينة الملونة"، عالمٌ خلّابٌ نابضٌ بالحياة، يزخر بالآلاف الأنواع البرية المتنوعة.

68. Entertainment offers a wide range of benefits, from helping us relax and de-stress to fostering creativity and social connection.

- a. يوفر الترفيه مجموعةً واسعةً من العوائق، بدءًا من منعنا من الاسترخاء وتخفيف التوتر، وصولاً إلى تعزيز الإبداع والتواصل الاجتماعي.
- b. يوفر الترفيه مجموعةً واسعةً من الفوائد، بدءًا من مساعدتنا على الاسترخاء وتخفيف التوتر، وصولاً إلى تعزيز الإبداع والتواصل الاجتماعي.
- c. يوفر الترفيه مجموعةً واسعةً من العراقيل، بدءًا من مساعدتنا على الاسترخاء وتخفيف التوتر، وصولاً إلى تعزيز الإبداع والانفصال الاجتماعي.
- d. يوفر الترفيه مجموعةً واسعةً من الفوائد، بدءًا من مساعدتنا على الاسترخاء وتخفيف التوتر، وصولاً إلى تقويض الإبداع والتواصل الاجتماعي.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

79. مع تطور الوظائف، يجب على العاملين الراغبين في البقاء في الطليعة تبني التعلم المستمر وتطوير عقلية النمو، حيث أصبح الإلمام الرقمي والمرونة أمرًا بالغ الأهمية للتكيف مع الأدوات والأدوار الجديدة.

- a. As jobs revolve, workers who want to stay ahead of the curve must exclude continuous learning and develop a growth mindset.
- b. As jobs evolve, workers who want to stay ahead of the curve must embrace continual learning and develop a grow mindset.
- c. As jobs revolve, workers who want to stay ahead of the curve must embrace continuous learning and develop a growth mindset.
- d. As jobs evolve, workers who want to stay ahead of the curve must embrace continuous learning and develop a growth mindset.

D**READING COMPREHENSION**

- Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

As exams come to an end, students eagerly wait for fun summer camps to relax and enjoy their break. These camps, lasting four to five weeks, offer enjoyable activities like painting, origami, music, crafts, cooking, spoken English, and computer classes. They also keep children active with sports like yoga, cricket, tennis, and swimming.

Parents today want their children to learn while having fun. Unlike in the past, playtime is now seen as a way to develop skills. Summer camps provide the perfect opportunity for kids to explore their interests and talents. Creative activities like art and crafts boost a child's imagination and give them a sense of pride when they show their work to their parents.

These camps help build confidence and independence in children. They are especially helpful for energetic or restless kids, as they direct their energy into positive activities. Camps also improve teamwork and understanding between teachers and students, creating a supportive environment. Overall, summer camps prepare children for a brighter, more confident future.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- According to the passage, the main purpose of summer camps is to
 a. replace school education b. provide fun and learning opportunities
 c. keep children busy all day d. prepare children for exams
- Students eagerly wait for fun summer camps to relax and their break.
 a. extend b. maximize c. enjoy d. shorten
- is NOT mentioned as part of summer camps.
 a. Swimming b. Dancing c. Origami d. Spoken English
- Summer camps are especially helpful for and restless kids.
 a. lazy b. energetic c. shy d. sick
- Parents prefer summer camps today compared to the past because
 a. they are cheaper b. they combine play with skill development
 c. they focus only on sports d. schools force parents to send their children
- Children feel when they show their handmade creations to their parents.
 a. afraid b. bored c. proud d. disappointed
- Summer camps promote among children and teachers.
 a. competition b. strict discipline c. isolation d. mutual understanding
- The camps also help improve teamwork and understanding between teachers and students, creating a environment.
 a. safe and secure b. nurturing c. cooperative d. supportive

E**WRITING**

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When writing a review, phrases like "I really enjoyed..." or "The best thing about..." are used for
 a. giving a negative opinion b. giving a balanced opinion
 c. stating a positive opinion d. making a recommendation

2. The phrase "I wouldn't recommend it to..." is used for
 - a. stating a positive opinion
 - b. highlighting a positive point
 - c. making a recommendation
 - d. giving a negative opinion
3. An idiom is a group of words whose meaning is
 - a. the same as the individual words
 - b. different from the individual words
 - c. always literal
 - d. always used in formal writing
4. A well-written online review should include both positive and negative points to be
 - a. balanced
 - b. biased
 - c. short
 - d. easy to read
5. When writing a story, the beginning should focus on
 - a. the climax
 - b. setting the scene
 - c. the resolution
 - d. the ending
6. Which phrase is a good way to start a sentence when giving a positive opinion in a review?
 - a. "Although it was interesting, I thought..."
 - b. "The best thing about... was..."
 - c. "It was a bit disappointing because..."
 - d. "I wouldn't recommend it to..."
7. The resolution of a story is the part where the main
 - a. problem is introduced
 - b. conflict is at its peak
 - c. character is introduced
 - d. problem is solved
8. Which of the following is an example of an idiom?
 - a. "a brilliant idea"
 - b. "a stitch in time saves nine"
 - c. "a very beautiful sunset"
 - d. "a strong wind"
9. The main purpose of the beginning of a story is to
 - a. surprise the reader with a twist
 - b. describe how the problem is solved
 - c. explain what the character learned
 - d. introduce characters, setting, and the initial situation

2 Write about (180-200) words on one of the following:

a) A narrative essay about "An adventure with friends."

b) Review your favorite book or novel.

3 Write a paragraph of Six lines on the following:

a) A body paragraph evaluating the acting in a movie you recently watched.

b) A hopeful ending to a story about overcoming a challenge.

F THE NOVEL

• Answer the following questions:

1. "Knowledge is power." Do you agree with this idea? Explain with an example.

2. How does Abbé Faria's choice to teach and share his knowledge reveal his personality and values?

Writing Skill

Punctuation

1 The period / Full stop (.) النقطة

تنويه

النقطة (.) تُسمَّى في الإنجليزية البريطانية (full stop) وفي الإنجليزية الأمريكية (period)

تُستخدم النقطة (.) في الحالات التالية:

١. في نهاية الجُملة الخبرية وجُملة الأمر أو النهي:

- I went shopping.
- Do your best at school.
- Don't waste your time.

٢. في نهاية السؤال الذي تم تحويله إلى صيغة الكلام غير المباشر:

- Sama said, "When will you be back?"
- Sama asked when I would be back? (X)
- Sama asked when I would be back. (✓)

٣. في نهاية الجُملة التي تبدأ بأداة استفهام كجزء من فاعل الجُملة أو كجزء من عبارة وصل وليست للاستفهام:

- How he died is unknown? (X)
- How he died is unknown. (✓)
- What he did made me happy? (X)
- What he did made me happy. (✓)

٤. في الاختصارات المُعَارَف عليها:

- September = Sept.
- Pages = pp.
- Monday = Mon.

٥. تُستخدم (.) وليس (o) كعلامة عشرية بين الأرقام والخسور:

- 25.3 = 25 $\frac{3}{10}$. = (twenty-five and three tenths)
- 4.13 = 4 $\frac{13}{100}$. = (four and thirteen hundredths)

٦. في الإنجليزية البريطانية الحديثة لم يعد شائعاً استخدام (o) في اختصارات الأحرف الأولى لأسماء الدول والمؤسسات وكذلك اختصارات الألقاب:

- Arab Republic of Egypt = A. R. E. (American) = ARE (British)
- United States of America = U.S.A. (American) = USA (British)

2 Question mark (?): علامة الاستفهام

وتُستخدم علامة الاستفهام (?) في الحالات التالية:

١. في نهاية السؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة استفهام مثل:

What, Where, When, Why, Which, Who, Whom, Whose, How

- What have you done, Eman?
- How much is a kilo of sugar?

٢. في نهاية الاستفهام الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص مثل:

Am, Is, Are, Was, Were Do, Does, Did Have, Has, Had

Can, Could, Will, Would, Shall, Should, May, Might ...

- Is Nada a doctor?
- Do they live here?
- Can you swim?

٣. لاحظ أن (Do) يمكن أن تُستخدم في بداية الجُملة كفعل أساسي لإعطاء الأمر وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم (.) وليس (?) في نهاية الجُملة:

- Do the shopping before going home? (X)
- Do the shopping before going home. (✓)

٣. في نهاية السؤال المذيّل (question tag):

- Fatma has come first, hasn't she? (X)
- Fatma has come first, hasn't she? (✓)

3 Exclamation mark/point (!): علامة التعجب

تنويه

(أ) علامة التعجب (!) تُسمى فى الإنجليزية البريطانية (exclamation mark) وفى الإنجليزية الأمريكية (exclamation point) (ب) تُستخدم علامة التعجب فى أضيق الحدود فى الكتابات الرسمية.

تُستخدم علامة التعجب (!) فى الحالات التالية:

١. بعد التعبيرات التى تدل على مشاعر قوية مثل الحب أو الخوف أو الغضب:

- What a pity! يا له من أمر مؤسف - Help! - I love you!

٢. بعد التعبيرات التى تدل على الأمر القوي:

- Stop! Police!

٣. بعد التعبيرات التى تدل على التعجب أو الدهشة:

- Oh, my God! - Wow! - Great!

- لاحظ أن:

(أ) علامة التعجب فى نهاية الجملة تحل محل النقطة (.) ولا يُستخدمان معاً:

- You are my best friend! (X) - You are my best friend! (✓)

(ب) قد يبدأ أسلوب التعجب بأداة استفهام، وغالباً ما تعرف أنه تعجب وليس استفهام من عدم وجود فعل مساعد بعد أداة الاستفهام.

- What nice weather? (X) - What nice weather! (✓)

4 The apostrophe ('): الفاصلة العليا

تستخدم (') فى الحالات التالية:

١. فى النفى المختصر لبعض الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة:

- are not = aren't - does not = doesn't - will not = won't

٢. فى اختصارات الضمائر مع بعض الأفعال:

- I am = I'm - We have = we've - there is = there's

٣. فى (s) الملكية إذا كان الاسم المفرد أو الجمع الذى لا ينتهى ب (s):

- The student's book كتاب الطالب - The children's rooms - Men's clothes

٤. للتعبير عن الملكية بعد (s) فى نهاية الاسم الجمع:

- The students' books كتب الطلاب

- لاحظ أن حسب بعض كتب القواعد فإن الاسم المفرد الذى ينتهى ب (s - ss - x) يمكن أن نستخدم (') فقط أو (s) فى نهايته للملكية:

- James' wedding = James's wedding

- the class' work = the class's work

٥. لاحظ أن:

(أ) فى حالة أن أكثر من شخص يخصهم نفس الشيء نستخدم (s) فى نهاية اسم الشخص الآخر فقط:

- I went to Sama, Ahmed and Rodayna's house.

(فى المثال السابق نفهم أن سما وأحمد ورودينا يعيشون فى نفس البيت)

(ب) فى حالة أن أكثر من شخص يخص كل منهم شئ منفصل عن الآخر نستخدم (s) فى نهاية اسم كل منهم:

- I went to Sama's, Ahmed's and Rodayna's house.

(فى المثال السابق نفهم أن سما وأحمد ورودينا يعيش كل منهم فى بيت مستقل عن الآخر)

5 The comma (,): الفاصلة السفلى

تنويه في الكتابة يتم ترك مسافة (space) بعد (,) وليس قبلها

تستخدم الفاصلة السفلى (,) في الحالات التالية:

١. تُستخدم (,) بعد المُخاطَب (الشخص الذي يُوجّه إليه الحديث) إذا جاء في أول الجُملة:
- Sama, I wish that you studied harder.
٢. تُستخدم (,) قبل المُخاطَب إذا جاء في آخر الجُملة:
- I wish that you studied harder, Sama.
٣. تُستخدم (,) قبل المُخاطَب وبعده إذا جاء في سياق الجُملة:
- I wish that you, Sama, studied harder.
٤. تُستخدم (,) قبل كلمة (please) إذا جاءت في آخر جُملة الأمر أو الطلب المهذب:
- Could you wait a bit longer, please?
٥. الفصل بين القوائم (وهي سلسلة من ثلاث كلمات/عبارات أو أكثر في نفس الجُملة) على أن توضع (and) قبل العنصر الأخير في القائمة فقط:
- I bought apples, bananas, mangoes and plums yesterday.
- Ahmed promised that she would be a good boy, that he would not shout at his sister, and that he would not climb the trees in the garden.
- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (,) أو عدم استخدامها قبل (and) في آخر القائمة:
- I searched for my keys in my handbag, on my desk, and under the chair. (✓)
- I searched for my keys in my handbag, on my desks and under the chair. (✓)
٦. تُستخدم (,) في نهاية الجُملة وقبل السؤال المُذيل:
- She likes painting, doesn't she?
٧. تُستخدم (,) لفصل بين الأجزاء المستقلة في الجُملة والتي تربطها الكلمات التالية:
and - but - for - or - nor - so - yet ...
- Omar walked along the street, and then he turned left at the corner.
- You can play computer games with me, or you can go out with your friends.
٨. تُستخدم (,) بين العبارات المستقلة في الجُملة تبدأ بروابط مثل:
after, before, as soon as, when, while, although, in spite of, as, because, since, if, ...
- While I was playing football, I got a cramp.
- Because Mai got up late, she missed the first lecture.
- If you put on weight, you should follow a diet.
- When Esraa cannot understand a lesson, she gets nervous.
- أما إذا كانت هذه الروابط في وسط الجُملة فغالباً لا نستخدم (,) :
- I got a cramp while I was playing football.
٩. تُستخدم (,) لفصل بين الأجزاء المستقلة للجُملة التي تبدأ بعبارات اسم الفعل (ing) واسم المفعول (p.p.) والصيغة المصدرية (To + inf.):
- Having done enough revision, he was sure to pass the exam.
- Punished for being late, Amir was always on time for school afterwards.
- To travel abroad, you have to get a visa first.
١٠. تُستخدم (,) بعد الظروف التي تأتي في بداية الجُملة:

Fortunately, Unfortunately, Luckily, Unluckily, Finally, Unexpectedly, surprisingly ...

- Sadly, my team lost the match.

١١. تُستخدم (,) بعد ظروف الزمان عندما تأتي في أول الجُملة:

- Yesterday, I visited my grandmother.
- Last Sunday, we celebrated my sister's birthday.

١٢. بعد عبارات الموافقة والرفض والاستئذان والاستدراك في أول الجُملة:

yes - no - sure - sorry - excuse me - well - however ...

- No, Mr Mohammed works only for El-Moasser.
- Well, can you recognise the bullies who attacked you?

١٣. تُستخدم (,) قبل الجزء الأخير من الجُملة إذا كان يُعبّر عن شيء من التناقض:

- Rodayna is very tired, not careless.

١٤. تُستخدم (,) لفصل أجزاء عناوين الأماكن:

- Mr father was born in Giza, Egypt but now he lives in London, England.

١٥. تُستخدم (,) لفصل أجزاء التاريخ (ما عدا اليوم والشهر):

- 22nd February, 2011 was the happiest day in my life. (British)
- = February 22nd, 2011 was the happiest day in my life. (American)
- Rodayna was born on 8 March 2012 (= 8 March, 2012). (British)
- = Rodayna was born on March 8, 2012. (American)

تُستخدم (,) بعد كلمة (Dear...) خاصة في رسائل البريد الإلكتروني والخطابات الرسمية (لاحظ أنه في الإنجليزية الأمريكية يمكن أن تُستخدم النقطتان (:)) لنفس الغرض:

- Dear Mr Rashwan, = Dear Mr Rashwan:

١٦. تُستخدم (,) بعد علامات التنصيص ("...") التي تحتوي على جُملة خبرية إذا جاءت في أول الجُملة وقبلها إذا جاءت في آخر الجُملة:

- Rokaya said, "I'm not free these days".
- "I'm not free these days," says Rokaya.

- أما إذا كانت علامات التنصيص ("...") تحتوي على سؤال فنستخدم (,) قبلها فقط وليس بعدها:

- Ashraf said, "Have you sent the file to Ayman?".
- "Have you sent the file to Ayman?" asked Ashraf.

١٧. تُستخدم (,...) لفصل العبارات أو المفردات الاعتراضية التي يمكن الاستغناء عنها في الجُملة دون أن تؤثر على المعنى:

- Friday, which is a public holiday, is the only day when I get up late.

- أما إذا كانت هذه العبارات أو المفردات أساسية ولا يمكن الاستغناء عنها فلا يمكن استخدام (,...):

- The book that I have bought is excellent.
- The oranges that fell out of the basket were damaged.

١٨. تُستخدم (,) للفصل بين صفتين أو أكثر من (coordinate adjectives) وهي الصفات المتساوية في الأهمية أو الدرجة أو من نفس التصنيف:

- He is a strong, healthy man. (✓)
- He is a healthy and strong man. (✓)
- He is a strong and healthy man. (✓)
- He is a strong healthy man. (X)

لكن عندما تكون الصفات التي تسبق الاسم من تصنيفات مختلفة ففي هذه الحالة لا نستخدم (,) أو (and) بينها:

- She is a cheerful, young girl. (X)
- She is a cheerful and young girl. (X)
- She is a cheerful young girl. (✓)

6 النقطتان (:) Colon

وتُستخدم النقطتان (:) في الحالات التالية:

١. تُستخدم (:) قبل القوائم (lists) التي تحتوي على مخونات أو أجزاء (أي يأتي بعدها تفاصيل ما قبلها):

- An essay has three parts: the introduction, the body and the conclusion.
- There are five new members in the staff: Ahmed, Khalid, Karim, Omar and Youssef.
- لكن لا تُستخدم (:) عندما تكون القائمة مُدمجة في بناء الجُملة، لاحظ المثالين التاليين وقارنهما بالمثالين السابقين:
- The essay has: an introduction, a body and a conclusion. (X)
- The essay has an introduction, a body and a conclusion. (✓)

٢. تُستخدم (:) بين العنوان الرئيسى والعنوان الفرعى (subdivisions):

- Punctuation: Colon
- Unit 1: Grammar

٣. في الإنجليزية الأمريكية تُستخدم (:) بدلاً من (,) بعد كلمة (Dear....:) في رسائل البريد الإلكتروني والخطابات الرسمية:

- Dear Mr Rashwan: (American)
- Dear Mr Rashwan, / Dear Mr Rashwan (British)

٤. تُستخدم (:) بعد المُتحدّث في المحادثات والمسرحيات والأعمال القصصية:

- Esraa: What do you think of El-Moasser?
- Leen: It is the best educational book ever.

٥. تُستخدم (:) في التعبير عن النسبة بين عددين (proportion):

- The ratio of married women to the unmarried ones is 3:1.
- = The ratio of married women to the unmarried ones is 3 to 1.

7 الفاصلة المنقوطة (;) Semi-colon

تُستخدم (;) لربط جملتين كاملتين مستقلتين مرتبطتين في المعنى في جُملة واحدة:

- Some people enjoy playing football; others only watch the matches on TV.
- = Some people enjoy playing football. Others only watch the matches on TV.

لا تُستخدم حرف (Capital) في بداية الكلام بعد (;) إلا إذا كانت الكلمة من النوع الذي يبدأ بحرف (capital) مثل (... I, Ahmed, Monday, April, Egypt)

تنويه

- Mai likes spice food; Her brother enjoys sweets. (X)
- Mai likes spice food; her brother enjoys sweets. (✓)

8 استخدام الشرطة الواصلة (-) Using the hyphen

وتُستخدم الشرطة الواصلة (-) في الحالات التالية:

١. للفصل بين الأحاد والعشرات في الأرقام من (٢١) حتى (٩٩):

- I have twenty-three cousins
- There are forty-seven people on the bus.

٢. في الكسور العشرية المكتوبة بالكلمات كالتالي:

... عدد ترتيبي + ordinal number + - + رقم number

- Only two-thirds ($= \frac{2}{3}$) of the students passed the exam.
- Three-fifths ($= \frac{3}{5}$) of my salary is spent on food and clothing.

٣. في الصفات المركبة من كلمتين أو أكثر:

- I use El-Moasser because it is well-prepared book.
- Mr Ayman has a six-year-old son.

٤. بعد البادئات (prefixes) التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك والكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف متحرك:

- You need to co-operate with your team members.

- لاحظ أنه مع تطور اللغة يتم إسقاط الشرطة (-) في أحيان كثيرة، فمثلاً كلمات مثل:

(e-mail / e-book / co-operation ...)

صارت تُكتب هكذا بدون (-):

(email / ebook / cooperation ...)

9 علامات التنصيص ("..."): Quotation marks

هناك مسميات مختلفة لعلامات التنصيص في اللغة الإنجليزية وهي:

تنويه

quotation marks = speech marks = inverted commas

هناك نوعان من علامات التنصيص:

1. Single quotation marks ('...') علامات التنصيص الفردية

- وهي شائعة الاستخدام في الإنجليزية البريطانية.

2. Double quotation marks ("...") علامات التنصيص المزدوجة

- وهي شائعة الاستخدام في الإنجليزية الأمريكية.

وُتستخدم علامات التنصيص في الحالات التالية:

يوضع بينهما نص الكلام المباشر الذي قاله شخص ما (لا بد أن يبدأ الكلام بينهما بحرف كبير):

- "We are busy", said Omar, "so, we can't help you". (✓)

= 'We are busy', said Omar, 'so, we can't help you'. (✓)

10 Capitalization: استخدام الحروف الكبيرة

متى نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة؟ When do we use capitalization?

وُتستخدم (Capital letters) في الحالات التالية:

١. أول حرف في الجملة الخيرية والسؤال وجملة الأمر:

- Most people like football. (جملة خبرية)
- When is she leaving? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)
- Does Sama study medicine? («هل» سؤال بـ)
- Face your problems. (جملة أمر - افعل)
- Don't / Never forget to call me. (جملة نهى - لا تفعل)

٢. أول حرف في الجملة التي تأتي بعد النقطة (.) أو علامة الاستفهام (?) أو علامة التعجب (!):

- Omar is clever. He always comes first.
- Are you sure? It is great news.
- What bad news! My team lost the match.

٣. أول حرف في أسماء الإنسان واللقب المتبوع باسم إنسان، سواء كان موقعه في بداية الجملة أو وسطها أو نهايتها:

- She has a cousin called Sama. - I met Mr Ayman in Dr Mustafa's wedding.

٤. أول حرف في أسماء البحار والبحيرات والمحيطات والأنهار، سواء كان موقعها في بداية الجملة أو وسطها أو نهايتها:

- The Atlantic Ocean is west of Africa. - I want to know where Lake Victoria is.
- The Red Sea is famous for coral reefs. الشعاب المرجانية

- To Egypt, the water of the River Nile is a matter of existence. مسألة وجود.
- I know that France is in Europe.

٥. أول حرف في أسماء التعلّم (مثل أسماء الأماكن والمؤسسات والمعالم)، سواء كان موقعها في بداية الجملة أو وسطها أو نهايتها:

- Lake Nasser is in the south of Egypt.

٦. أول حرف في أسماء الجنسيات واللغات، سواء كان موقعها في بداية الجملة أو وسطها أو نهايتها:

- She is French. She is either British or American.
- I can speak English and Arabic.

٧. أول حرف من الكلمات الهامة في عناوين الكتب والمقالات والأفلام والروايات وغيرها:

- I think 'Great Expectations' is a romantic novel.
- I have read an article entitled 'How to Use Capital Letters'.

- لاحظ كما في الأمثلة السابقة أن حروف الجر وأدوات التعريف والتكثير وأدوات الربط والتخيير مثل (and / or ...) غالباً ليست كلمات هامة ولا تبدأ بحرف (Capital) في العناوين.

٨. أول حرف في أسماء الشهور وأسماء أيام الأسبوع واختصاراتهم، سواء كان موقعها في بداية الجملة أو وسطها أو نهايتها:

- The party used to be on the first Thursday of March.

٩. أول حرف في أسماء القارات والدول والعواصم والمدن، سواء كان موقعها في بداية الجملة أو وسطها أو نهايتها:

- Britain, whose capital London, is in Europe.
- I enjoyed my visit to Dubai.

١٠. أول حرف من أسماء الكتب المقدسة:

- He always carries a copy of the Holy Qur'an القرآن الكريم.
- The Bible الإنجيل is also called the Holy Book.

١١. أول حرف في أسماء الماركات الشهيرة (مثل السيارات والتلفزيونات والهواتف المحمولة):

- I used to have a Nokia, but now I have an Oppo.

١٢. جميع حروف اختصارات الدول والمؤسسات، سواء كان موقعها في بداية الجملة أو وسطها أو نهايتها:

- I am a citizen of the ARE (= A.R.E. = Arab Republic of Egypt).

١٣. جميع حروف اختصارات بعض الكلمات والمصطلحات مثل:

- TV = television
- OK = okay
- CD = compact disc
- IT = information technology
- CV = Curriculum Vitae

١٤. جميع حروف اختصارات الأحرف الأولى (Acronyms) لبعض التعبيرات مثل:

- SOS = Save our souls انقذونا
- LOL = Laugh out loud.

١٥. لابد أن تبدأ الجملة الكاملة داخل علامات التنصيص بحرف (capital):

- Mum said, "Tidy your room, Karim".

- لاحظ أنه إذا كان الكلام داخل علامات التنصيص ليس جملة كاملة فلا يبدأ بحرف (capital) – لاحظ المثال التالي:

- "How are you?" I asked my grandfather. He replied, "old, weak and unable to walk".

- لاحظ أنه إذا كان الكلام داخل علامات التنصيص مقسوم على جزئين فإن الجزء الثاني لا يبدأ بحرف (capital) – لاحظ المثال التالي:

- "Keep quiet," said Malak. "because the baby is asleep".

١٦. لابد من كتابة ضمير المتكلم (I) كحرف كبير، سواء كان موقعه في بداية الجملة أو وسطها أو نهايتها:

- I go to the club once a week.
- Ayman and I like football.



GUIDE

English

IN THIS BOOK ...

- A detailed explanation for each unit divided into lessons (vocabulary, structures & skills).
- Exercises on lessons (vocabulary, structures & skills).
- General Exercises on each unit.
- The Count of Monte Cristo.

يُصَرَفُ مَجَانًّا مَعَ الْكِتَابِ
دليل المعاصر في القصة المقررة
والمهارات اللغوية



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

www.gpseducation.com

15014



NOW

El-Moasser in Maths
for Secondary Stage

FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE



أدخال كود الشيفر
الموجود على ظهر الكتاب

English



6 223007 312530

3rd SEC.
2026
FIRST TERM